

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

#### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + Keep it legal Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

#### **About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/

Educt 21518, 59. 660



# Harbard College Library

FROM

Prof. Ferdinand Bocher,

of Cambridge Mass.

14 Feb, 1888.





•

.

¢

1,

۲

.

•

.

• . . . . . . . . . . . 

# FRENCH

# CONVERSATION-GRAMMAR,

# NEW AND PRACTICAL METHOD OF LEARNING THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

BY

#### Dr. E IIL OTTO,

OF THE "GERMAN CONVERSATION - GRAMMA



0

PARIS DAVID NUTT, 270 STRAND. A. FRANK, 67 RUE RICHELIEU.

HEIDELBERG.

JULIUS GROOS.

1859.

Let 21518.59.660 1.5 / Educ 7 1 1 s . L 15

Prof. Ferdinand Böcher.

of Cambridge Mass. 14 Feb., 1888.

1910 (1910) (191

WERS ALL DOC

:

. . . .

· ... :

PREFACE.

The daily increasing intercourse between England and France, and the greater necessity of understanding and speaking the French language may perhaps justify the publication of a new French Grammar, especially if such a grammar should offer a new and better method of instruction combined with greater practicability, than those hitherto in use: Those books in which theory entirely supersedes the practice, may be excellent for the dead languages, but they will never prove successful with modern languages.

This French Conversation-Grammar, which is based on the same principle as the Author's "German Conversation - Grammar" combines the grammatical and logical exposition of the French language with the constant application of the different forms and rules to writing and speaking.

The book is divided into Lessons, each complete its itself, and containing in systematic arrangement a portion of the grammar, followed by a French Reading exercise, in which the different forms appear applied to various sentences. An Exercise for translation into French, termed "Theme" comes next; the lesson being concluded by an easy and familiar Conversation, re-embodying the matter introduced in the previous exercises.

. It is impossible for a more practical method of acquiring the art of speaking French to be conceived, than for the pupil to be questioned in French by his teacher on subjects already familiar to him by translation, and being required to give a fitting reply. In a short time the ear becomes so familiarized with the strange accents, that the teacher is easily understood; the tongue at the same time acquiring a fluency, to be attained by none of the other methods. The author's

practical experience in teaching French to foreigners, warrants him fully in making this assertion. Besides this, most of the Lessons contain a *Reading-lesson* with the necessary explicative words, so that the pupil may also have constant practice in the French element.

The advantage of *conversational* exercises is evident. Whoever has occupied himself with the study of modern languages, is aware that by far the most difficult thing is, to comprehend the foreign idiom. Accustomed from the vory beginning to understand the easy questions the teacher addresses to him in French, and to answer in the same language on subjects already known to him from the foregoing Reading exercise and translation, the learner exercises equally his *hear* and *tongue*, and will in a short time be enabled to express his thoughts finently and correctly in the foreign idiom.

The First Part contains the complete Etymology, that is, the ten parts of speech, considered in their nature and inflections, including all the *isregular verbs*, with the plainest syntactical rules requisite for doing the exercices.

The Second Part contains the complete Syntax and the more difficult and idiomatical parts of the grammar. This part, as the most essential and difficult, has been systematically explained in clear and accurate rules, all of which are illustrated by the necessary examples, and followed by fitting *Exercises* and *French Reading lessons*, both with the necessary explicative words. *Free Exercises*, *Materials for conversation* and a few French *dialogues* conclude the Grammar.

In respect to the mode of employing this Grammar the author begs, it might be allowed him to offer teachers and pupils a few suggestions. The rules with their examples and the "words" should be first learned by heart, and the French Reading-Exercise turned into English. This done, the *Conversation* should be read, then the Exercise for translation ("theme") translated into French and, when corrected, written out fairly. Finally the *Conversation* should be committed to memory.

Heidelberg, July 1859.

Dr. EMIL OTTO.

# CONTENTS.

•

•

٠

• • 1

•

ŧ٠

. ⊁. ٩1

17

• 3.

# First Part.

			T 086
Of pronunciation. Letters of the Alphabet	• . •	•	3
Signs of punctuation	•		3
Of the accents. Of vowels	•	• •	4
Of consonants	•		7
Of the nasal sounds	•	• •	11
Of the liquid sounds	•	•	
Parts of speech	•	• •	15
First lesson. Of the article	•	• •	15
Second lesson. Of the substantive	•		18
Third lesson. Declension of substantives .	•		21
Fourth lesson. Nouns with prepositions	•	• •	26
Fifth lesson. Of the partitive sense or article	•		28
Sight lesson. Declension of the partitive article			31
Seventh lesson. Of Proper names			34
Eighth lesson. The auxiliary verb avoir, to have			38
Ninth lesson. The auxiliary verb stre, to be	•		41
Tenth lesson. Of the negative and interrogative for	orms (	of the	
auxiliaries	•	•	44
Eleventh lesson. Determinative adjectives .			50
Twelfth lesson. Possessive adjectives			52
Thirteenth lesson. Cardinal numbers .		-	54
Fourteenth lesson. Ordinal numbers			58
Fifteenth lesson. Indefinite numerals			62
Sixteenth lesson. Of adjectives	•	•	65
•	•	•	. 70
·····	•	•	
Eighteenth lesson. Degrees of comparison .	•	•	. 74
Nineteenth lesson. Regular verbs	•	•	77 79
First conjugation: Donner, to give . Reading - lesson: Le chameau et le chat	• .	•	. 79
•	•		
Twentieth lesson. Remarks on the orthography of of the first conjugation	some	19194	. 84
Reading - lesson. Le renard et la sigorne	1	•	. 88

	Page
Twenty first lesson. Second conjugation : Finir, to finish	. 89
Reading-lesson: Le moineau et ses petits	. 98
Twenty second lesson. Third conjugation: Vendre, to sell	· 94
Reading-lesson: Le roi, de Perse Twenty third lesson. Of propond	. 99
Disjunctive personal pronouns	. 99
Reading - lesson: Le rosier	. 102
Twenty fourth lesson. Of conjunctive personal pronouns	. 103
Reading - lesson : Suite' du 'rosier'.	. 108
Twenty fifth lesson. Of demonstrative pronouns	: 108
Interrogative pronouns	. 111
Reading-lesson : La fermière de Chamouni	• 113
Twenty sixth lesson. Of possessive pronouns	. 114
Relative pronouns	···· 114
	. 118
Twenty seventh lesson. Of indefinite pronouns , Reading-lesson: Pouvoir de la concorde	, 11 <del>9</del> , 122
Reading-lesson: Pouvoir de la concorde	. 122
Neuter verbs	125
Reading-lesson: Le bon mattre	127
Twenty ninth lesson. Reflected verbs	. 128
Reading - lesson : Le sonsonnet	. 184
Thirtieth lesson. Of impersonal verbs	. 188
Reading-lesson: Productions de divers climats	. 149
Thirty first lesson. Adverbs of quality Beading-lesson: Crésus et Solon	. 141
Thirty second lesson. Of adverbs	. 145
Reading-lesson: Suite de Crésus et Solon	152
Thirty third lesson. Of prepositions	. 153
Reading-lesson : Intrépidité de Fabricius .	158
Thirty fourth lesson. Of conjunctions	. 159
Reading-lesson: Lafitte	. 168
Thirty fifth lesson. Compound confunctions :	. 163
Reading-lesson: Joseph II.	167
Thirty sixth lesson. Of the interjections Reading-lesson: Vou pour le jour de naissance d'un por	. 168 6 169
Thirty seventh lesson. Of the irregular vorbs	
Irregular verbs of the first class .	. 172
Reading - lesson : La compassion tet l'indifférence.	. 181
Thirty eighth lesson. Irregular verba of the second class	. 182
Reading-lesson: Le corbeau et le renard .	. 186
Thirty ninth lesson. Irregular verbs of the third class	. 187
Reading-lesson: La charité	JI 197

.

1

ł

4

t

# IVII

	Page
Fortieth, lesson. Of the defective weeks in the start and	198
An alphabetical list of all the irregular verbs	200
Promisenous Exercises for translation	208
the second se	
Second Part.	
Signs of punctuation	<b>215</b>
Signs of punctuation	21
Use of the accents	211
Division of syllables	219
Use of the accents Division of syllables Orthography of words similar in both languages,	220
Orthography of homonymous words,	221
First lesson, On the genders of substantives the , or , or , i	228
Reading -lesson : Vasie, generasite,	230
Second lesson. Of the plurel of nowns . I.	233
Reading - lesson: Le, castor mill, ar mill of the Astronomy	
Wird lesson. Of the use of the article, the diama	28
Reading-lessen: Démosthène	24
Fourth lesson. Special use of defanded when we are they	24
Reading - lesson: Magnanimité d'un sauvagening off.	25
With lesson Peculiarities in the use of names of committee etc.	25
Reading-leason: Charles douze Some film ala / .	25
With lesson. Of the possessive affectives in a visited	26
With lesson. Of the possessive affectives	26
Seventh Lesson. Of numerals is the interview of the second second second	26
Reading - lesson: La terre a fill the solution of the second	26
the second s	26
R Diada of the adjusting IT (souther the south of the souther souther	97
D. Adjectives of dimension	··· > 87
Reading - lesson : L'éléphant	27
Ninth lesson. I. Of the personal pronouns	27
The Particular use of en and y mouth thank .	·· • 28
III. Of the supplying prenouns le', log les	28
Reading - lesson : L'Stephant" (Continuetton)	28
Tenth lesson. Of the interrogative pictures we can be at	
Reading - lesson : Servilius ge, defend, depart le peuple .	29
Eleventh lesson, Of celative pronouns	. 29
Reading-lesson: Suite de "Servilius" i	29
Preelfth lesson. Use of the indefinite pronouns: (1999) and 1994	29
Mirteenth lesson. Continuation of the indefinite pronouns .	30
Reading-lesson: Cicéron	31
Fourteenth lesson. On adverbs	81
Reading-lesson: Le connétable de Bourbon et Bayard	81

2

ø'

ŧ

NIII

1

	Page
Fifteenth lesson. Syntax of negations	316
Reading-lesson: Le connétable de Bourbon etc. (Suite)	822
Sixteenth lesson. I. Remarks on some French prepositions.	828
II. How to express some English prepositions .	328
Seventeenth lesson. Different uses of the Conj. que	334
Reading-lesson: Le connétable de Bourbon etc. (Suite)	389
Eighteenth lesson. Government of verbs	340
Verbs governing the accusative	341
Verbs governing the dative	342
Verbs governing the genitive	343
Verbs with different governments	345
Special remarks on some verbs	346
On the verb faire	347
Reading-lesson: Marius dans les marais de Minturnes	348 -
Nineteenth lesson. Use of the tenses of the Indicative	850
Reading - lesson : Alexandre Selkirk	. 362
Twentieth lesson. Of the Subjunctive Mood	363
Subjunctive after conjunctions	371
Reading-lesson: Suite d'Alexandre Selkirk .	374
Twenty first lesson. Of the Infinitive Mood	376
The Infinitive with de	379
The Infinitive with à	888
Verbs with à or de	387
Infinitive with other prepositions	. 389
Infinitive with other prepositions	391
Thenty second lesson Of the Participles	392
I. Of the Participle present	892
	395
Reading-lesson : Gesler conduit Tell & Kusnacht .	397
Fromty third lesson. I. Of the Participle past	399
II, The Participle absolute	404
Reading-lesson: Gesler conduit Tell à K. (Suite) .	407
Twenty fourth lesson. Idiomatical expressions on some	
French verbs	409
Exercises upon some French Idioms	411
Free Exercises for translation	412
Materials for conversation	418
Conversations familières. La rencontre. La visite.	
	-427
Dialogue sur l'Histoire d'Angleterre	428
Index	482

1:40

.

•

## ERRATA.

Page 7	line 7	read : joined, instead of joint.
, 16	, 19	" 3rd Lesson, instead of Lesson.
,, 20	. 12	add the word la noiz, the walnut.
<b>,</b> 20		read: walnuts, instead of nuts.
,, 29		add the word <i>lencre</i> , the ink.
,, 35	22	read: as if it were, instead of as it were.
,, 37	,, 36	" Jeannette, instead of Jeanette.
" 57	" 6	" killed, instead of shot.
" 65	" 25	,, are alike in the masc. and fem. gender.
" 66	<b>"</b> 26	" acute, instead of aigu.
,, 93	" 2	" fountain, instead of spring.
,, 119	<b>"</b> 13	,, the one, instead of one.
,, 127	,, 2	, banished, instead of bannished.
,, 138	, 24	,, leave off, instead of leave of.
,, 138	<b>"</b> 25	" départ, instead of depart.
,, 140	" 3	
,, 143	"4	
,, 148	<b>"</b> 13	, tasks, instead of duties.
,, 208	" 10	, for some, instead of since some.
,, 210	,, 2	,, to work, instead of work.
,, 212	" 2 <b>3</b>	,, curtains, instead of courtains.
,, 217	" 1	" guillemets, instead of guillements.
,, 280	<b>,</b> 26	,, eldest, instead of elder one.
,, 241	, 29	,, lawyer, instead of lawyier.
,, 245	" <sup>2</sup>	makhlan instand of fints
, 245	,, 83	,, <i>peoples</i> , instead of <i>kins</i> . ,, <i>hissed</i> , instead of <i>hissed at</i> .
,, 247	<b>,</b> 20	Talanda instand of Taland
,, 284	"	,, Allez-y, instead of Alley-y.
,, 410	, 3	,, to look into the garden.

.

**`** 

•

•

. . 

# FIRST PART.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar.

ģ

1



# OF PRONUNCIATION.

§. 1. Letters of the Alphabet.

The French alphabet consists of 26 letters, which are represented as follows:

	Name.		Name.		Name.
A, a,	ah	J, j,	zha †	S, s,	<del>ess</del> 🗱
B, b,	bey	$(\mathbf{K}, \mathbf{k})$		T, t,	téy a
C, c,	-etyday	L, 1,	ell	U, u,	(ü) <del>7</del>
D, d,	day a	M, m,	emm	V, v,	VYA
E, e,	<del>éy</del> a ·	N, n,	enn	$(\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{w})$	(voy) (Touble ~)
F, f,	eff	0, o,	0	X, x,	iks
G, g, ::	zshoji +	P, p,	peya	Ү, у,	ee greck
H, h,	ash	Q, q,	(kü) <b>‡</b>	Z, z,	zed.
I. i,	ee	R, r,			•

Of these, a, e, i, o, u and y are vowels, the others are simple consonants. Besides these, there are in French compound vowels, diphthongs and compound consonants. — The letters k and w occur only in foreign words.

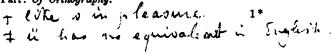
S. 2. Cinger of punctuation. \*)

Here are to be mentioned :

Ł

1) The apostrophe (*l'apostrophe*) (') which denotes the elision of a vowel (a, e or i) before a word beginning with a vowel or h mute, as in: *l'or* for *le or*, (gold); s'il instead of si il.

\*) Further particulars concerning these will be found in the II Part: Of Orthography.



2) The diaeresis (le tréma) (") which is found over the vowels e, i and  $u = \ddot{e}$ ,  $\ddot{i}$ ,  $\ddot{u}$ , shows that these must be pronounced distinct from the other vowels with which they are connected. as: hair, Noël, which are pronounced ha- $\ddot{v}$ ; No- $\ddot{e}h$ .

3) The cedilla (la cédille) (.), which is a kind of comma, placed under the letter c = c, gives it the sound of s, before a, o, u, as in façade, reçu.

4) The hyphen (*le trait d'union*, tiret) (-) + serves to join two words as it were in one, as: as-tu? dit-il.

# §. 3. Of the Accents.

They are marks placed over the vowels, to modify their sounds. There are three different accents:

1) The acute accent (*l'accent aigu*) ("), placed over e alone = e, as in e e, donné.

2) The grave (*l'accent grave*) (`), which is placed over the vowels  $a, e, u = \dot{a}, \dot{e}, \dot{u}$ , as in  $l\dot{a}, d\dot{e}s, o\dot{u}$ .

3) The circumflex (l'accent circonflexe) (\*), may be placed upon any of the vowels, which it makes long, as: âme, rêve, apôtre.

# §. 4. Pronunciation of the vowels.

A, a is sounded as a in father, only sometimes short, sometimes long. Ex. la, bal, mat, ear, table; rare, âme. E. ce.  $\partial e_{i}|e_{1}$  is a ne. que, se x is

*E*, *e*, 1) unaccented, in monosyllabic words, has a short sound very near to the English u in the word c.u.t., or the German 5. Ex. lo, no, to, de. At the end of words of more than one syllable it is always silent, as: table, rare, parole.

2) marked with the acute accent (é) is elosed; as in wafer, Ex. été, malgré, donné, répété, vérité.

3) marked with the grave or circumflex accent (è, ê) is more or less open (as in met or **Satch**), Ex. père, falter mère, frère, après; lête, bits.

In the middle of words the unaccented e has either of these sounds; it has the first, when it closes a syllable, as: regard = re-gard, lever = le-ver, ceci = ce-ci. It has the second, like é, when followed by d, r or zmute, as: pied = pié, donner = donné, assez = assé. It has the third sound, when followed by r sounded or another consonant, as: fer = fère, vert = vère, hier, fier, verre, dessert; belle, bounet, vecé, blessé.

4) e takes the sound of the French a before mm, mn and nn, in the words femme, solemnel, hennir, and in all adverbs ending in emment, as: prudemment.

#### I.

I, i has only one sound, the same as in field or bee, never like i in wise, as: il, fini, mis; somewhat longer in vie, rire, lire, mine, abime.

#### O.

O, o, when long, has the sound of the o in the English words stone, rose, as: dose, rose, osé, côte, le nôtre. When short, it sounds nearly like the English o in loss, as: mot, trop, grosse, ordonne.

2

#### · IJ.

The English have nothing corresponding to this sound \*); it must be heard from the matter. Ex. sur, murmure, mule, ruse, bu.

It is silent when preceded by g, as in guerre, guide, fique, bague etc., except in words ending in guë where the e is marked with the diaeresis, as aiguë, and in a few other words, as: arguer, aiguille, aiguiser etc.

\*) It is exactly like the German it.

The letter y is generally pronounced as i and occurs mostly in foreign words, as: syllabe, physique, analyse. When preceded by another vowel, it is a diphthong. See Ay, oy and uy.

### §. 5. Compound vowels and diphthongs.

#### Ai.

Ai, ai is pronounced like the English a or e in name and there, as: mais, laid, faire, traité; plaine, aile, affaire. When ai without another following letter forms the final syllable of a word, it is sounded é, as: gai, donnai, balai.

#### Au. Eau.

Au and eau sound like the English o in note, as: haute, maux, beau, bateau, bateau.

#### Ay.

Ay, ay is sounded as if it were  $ai \cdot i$ , in  $pays = pai \cdot is$ ,  $paysage = pai \cdot i \cdot sage$ ,  $paysan = pai \cdot i \cdot san$ . When followed by another vowel, that second *i* takes the sound of the English *y* consonant, as:  $rayer = rai \cdot yé$ ,  $essayer = essai \cdot yé$ .

Ei.

Ei, ei has the same sound as ai, as: peine, veine, Seine, pleine.

#### Eu. Oeu.

The sound of *eu* or *œu* approaches the English sound in come or early and is very like the German *ö*, as: *peu*, *peur*, *feu*, *leur*, *peureux*, *cœur*, *bœuf*, *œuer*.

NB. In j'eus, j'eusse, eu and a few **event** words ending in eure, the e is silent and the u sounded as a simple u.

In these two diphthongs the i or e after the o is sounded like a, but so as to form together with the preceding but one sound or one articulation, as: roi (= ro-a), foi, moi, toile, voir. (i has the sound of ira in france. Ou, ou is either short or long, and sounded as oo in for the good, as: mou, cou, mousse, toux; cour, couler, vous, orotte.

#### Qp. Uy.

Here the y has the force of ii or rather of an English y consonant joint to a French *i*. This *i* together with the preceding *corr u* forms the sound of the diphthong *circu ui*, and the second i takes the sound of the English y (in you), Ex. foyer = foa-i-yó; moyenne, appuyer, essuyer, essuyer, result.

Besides these, there are in French other compound vowels, as: *ia*, *ie*, *ieu*, *io*, *oui*, *ua*, *ue*, *ui*; all these do not change their original sound, but are pronounced so as to form but one sound. Ex. *diable*, *papier*, *bière*, *Dieu*, *pioche*, *Louis*, *persuader*, *écuelle*, *lui*.

S. 6. Pronunciation of the consonants.

General rules. 1) Consonants are generally sounded in the middle of words, except when the same consonant is doubled, in which case only one is sounded.

2) Final consonants are generally silent when not followed by a vowel. The principal exceptions to these rules will be given under the particular consonants.

B, b, is sounded as in English, as: bas, belle, bonnes, brosse: It is silent in plomb, aplomb.

C, c, hard like the English k, before a, circu, o,  $\mathbf{x}$ , ..., u and before each consonant (as: car, cricce, course, col, cour, curé, each, clair; it has the same sound at the end of a word: avec, lac, sec, duc. It is silent in tabac, clerc, échecs, estomac, flanc, jonc, tronc, donc, blanc, porc etc. It before e, i, y, as:  $\mathbf{x}$ , ceoi, ici, vice = viss, douce, and when it has the has the sound  $\frac{1}{2}$  cedilla, as: reçu, plaça = plassa, leçon = lesson. In the word second and its derivatives, c is sounded as ghard = s'gon.

cc before  $\dot{e}$  and i like ks or x, as: accès, succès; otherwise like c hard: accabler, accuser.

ch has the sound of sh, as: chez (pronounce shey), chaîne, chose, chaud, verke, archevêque, Achille. It has the sound of k in Christ (= krist), chrétien, christianisme, chœur, and in most words derived from the Greek, as: Bacchus, chaos, Chancen; Chaldée etc.

D, d as in English: datte, dur, donne, admis. It is silent at the end of words, as: bord, chaud, froid; pied; grand. It is heard in sud and in most proper names, as: David, Alfred, Cid etc.

It is sounded like t, when it is carried over to the following word beginning with a vowel or h mute. Ex. un grand homme read gran-tomme; quand il ...; un profond abîme etc.

F, f, as in English: faire, affaire, fort, frapper, flûte, final is silent in la clef (the key) and chef d'œuvre; further in these plurals cerfs, œufs, bœufs, nerfs and in neuf (nine) before a consonant.

G, g, before a, ai, o, an, u and before all consonants is hard as in the English word garden, as: gare, gat, goutte, gros, glace, guide, guame. Before e, i, y, it has the selft sound <u>of a show rather</u> of s in "pleasure", the same as the French j. Ex. gorbe, gémir, gilet, geli, George, Gymnase. It is generally silent when finally es: cang, rang, stang, fourier, long, having etc., further in doigt, finger, ungt, twenty, logs, hat will, and in signet.

gn see p. 13, 2).

gu see the vowel u, p. 5.

H, h is sometimes silent, as in homme, habit, hélas, & cherbe, histoire, honness, honness

### aspirate, as in ta hache, te heros, te hilou; ta haie, ta halle, la honte, te hameau, te hasard, hair, hand, hardi, hurles.

J, j is sounded like a cost of a the letter s in pleasure, but somewhat softer, as: jadis, jour, jour, jaune, joli, jus.

L, l, quite as in English: la loi, leur, aller, balle. It is mute in le fils (pronounce fiss), the son, and le pouls, the pulse. It is further mute at the end of most forme words ending in il, as: le fusil (the gun); le baril, outil, persil, gentil etc. (see also §. 8).

M, m and N, n, as in English: ma, mer, marais, unit, mot; nappe, nette, mid, année.

mn are pronounced nn in automne (automn) and in condamner, to condemn. In other words both letters are articulated, as: Agamennon, calomnie, incomste etc.

For m and n in a sal see §. 7.

P, p corresponds in sound with the same lotter in English: pas, père, part, pelle, apporter, appris. It is not heard at the end of words, as: trop (pronounce tro), too much: heard of (pronounce bok ); much. It is further mute in sept (= set), baptême, compte, dompter, prompt; temps, and some others.

Ph, ph is sounded as f, thus: philosophe, phrase, prophète.

Qu, qu has commonly the sound of k: qui (= ki), que, quatre, quoi. At the end of the two words: le coq (the cock), and cinq (five) it lockses its u, but sounds nevertheless as k.

qua has the sound of koua in a few words of three and more syllables, thus in équateur (equator), quadrupède, aquatique etc. And 5 the profile 5

R, r an in-English: rare, roi, rouge, fairs, mer, for, ther,  $\langle \rangle$  notre, finir. It is silent at the end of words of

\*) bien yesterday, is considered monocyllabic.

cedilla, as: reçu, plaça = plassa, leçon = lesson. In the word second and its derivatives, c is sounded as ghard = s'gon.

cc before  $\dot{e}$  and i like ks or x, as: accès, succès; otherwise like c hard: accabler, accuser.

ch has the sound of sh, as: chez (pronounce shey), chaîne, chose, chaud, vashe, archevêque, Achille. It has the sound of k in Christ (= krist), chrétien, christianisme, chœur, and in most words derived from the Greek, as: Bacchus, chaos, Chancen, Chaldée etc.

D, d as in English: datte, dur, donne, admis. It is silent at the end of words, as: bord, chand, froid; pied, grand. It is heard in sud and in most proper names, as: David, Alfred, Cid etc.

It is sounded like t, when it is carried over to the following word beginning with a vowel or h mute. Ex. un grand homme read gran-tomme; quand il ...; un profond abîme etc.

F, f, as in English: faire, affaire, fort, frapper, flûte, final is silent in la clef (the key) and chef d'œuvre; further in these plurals cerfs, œuts, bœufs, nerfs and in neuf (nine) before a consonant.

G, g, before a, ai, o, an, u and before all consonants is hard as in the English word garden, as: gare, gat, goutte, gros, glace, guide, guame. Before e, i, y, it has the self sound <u>of a short wither</u> of s in "pleasure", the same as the French j. Ex. gorbe, gémir, gilet, geli, George, Gymnase. It is generally silent when final, as: cang, rang, stang, fourier, long, having stap further in doigt, finger, ungt, twenty, logs, last willy and in signet.

gn see p. 13, 2).

gu see the vowel u, p. 5.

H, h is sometimes silent, as in homme, habit, hélas, & c herbe, histoire, honnels, horreur; hamonits, and comptimes  $e_{a}$  hore.

### aspirate, as in la hache, le heros, le hilora; la haie, la halle, la honte, le hameau, le husard, hatr, hand, handi, hunler.

J, j is sounded like a seft choir as the letter s in pleasure, but somewhat softer, as: jadis, joune, jour, jaune, joli, jus.

L, l, quite as in English: la loi, leur, aller, balle. It is mute in le fils (pronounce fiss), the son, and le pouls, the pulse. It is further mute at the end of most some words ending in il, as: le fusil (the gun); le baril, outil, persil, gentil etc. (see also §. 8).

M, m and N, n, as in English: ma, mer, marais, amo, not; nappe, nette, nid, année.

mn are pronounced nn in automne (automn) and in condamner, to condemn. In other words both letters are articulated, as: Agamemnon, calomnie, insumate etc.

For m and n in a sal see §. 7.

as P, p corresponds in sound with the same letter in English: pas, père, part, pelle, apporter, appris. It-is not heard at the end of words, as trop (pronounce tro), too much: how oup (pronounce bok a); much. It is fusther mute in sept (= set), baptême, compte, dompter, prompt; temps, and some others.

Ph, ph is sounded as f, thus: philosophe, phrase, prophète.

Qu, qu has commonly the sound of k: qui (= ki), que, quatre, quoi. At the end of the two words: le coq (the cock), and cinq (five) it losses its u, but sounds nevertheless as k. 1 3 3 1 1 4

qua has the sound of koua in a few words of three and more syllables, thus in équateur (equator), quadrupède, aquatique etc. Amils be rolles

R, r an in English: rare, roi, rouge, faire, mor; for, tier, ) notre, finir. It is silent at the end of words of

\*) him yesterday, is considered monocyllabic.

two and more syllables ending in er and ier, as: donner (pronounced donné), berger, parler, pommier, prunier, ouvrier.

Exception to this rule are the following words in which the final r is sounded: amer, bitter; *l'hiver*, winter; *la cuiller*, the spoons *l'enfer*, kell, and a few others less in use.

Double r is not sounded, when followed by an e mute, as: terre, barre, to nerre, bourre.

S, s has two sounds, a hissing or hard and a soft one. It has the hard or hissing sound, as in English, at the beginning of words and before or after a consonant, as: sel, sur, soir, sable, sort, status, esprit, danser, longue, assez. — But it has the soft sound of a z between two vowels\*): rose, raser, raison, aisé, misère.

Sc before e, i and y are sounded as double ss: scène, Scipion, science. But sc before other vowels and l, r have the sound of sk, as: scabreux, scorpion, esclave, scrupule.

Final 5 15 Stiener are vepair, with , mes, ees, carry les livres \_ tapie - etc.

Exceptions to this rule are: le fils (pronounced fiss), the son; lours, the bear; la vis, the screw; les mours, the manners; gratis, gratis; le lis, the lily, and in most foreign names, as: Mars, Pallas, Vénus, Minos, Régulus etc.

T, t has generally the sound of the English  $\chi$ , as: ta, tasse, table, très, tantot; atteler.

ti however are sounded like si: 1) in the final syllables: -tial, -tiel, -tieux, -tie and -tion (not stion), as: partial (pronounced parsial), minutieux, inertie, Béotie, prophétie, nation, perfection; 2) final -tien is sounded sien, in names of nations and proper names, as: Égyptien, Dioclétien; 3) in the words: initier, balbutier, patient, patience, satiété, insatiable and some others. It-is-mot

<sup>\*)</sup> Except in compound words, in which it has the hard sound, as: entresol, parasol.

1) I preceded by i, when final or double, is ordinarily liquid as in the English word brilliant, only a somewhat softer. As this sound is attended with some difficulty, it must be heard from a teacher. The liquid sound changes according to the preceding vowel. Ex.: ail, aille: travail, bataille, caillou.\*)

eil, eill-: soleil, réveil, merveilleux. euil, euill-: deuil, veuillez, feuillage. œil, œill-: œil, œillet.

\*

Lours Gene

\*\* \*\*

\*

ł

xx: x. x. x. x

ouil, ouill-; fenouil, bouillon, brouillard.

Exceptions: Il and ill are not liquid, but fully pronounced in the following words: il, he; le fil, the thread; *l'exil*, the exile; vil, mean; tranquille, quiet; mil and mille, a thousand; un million, a million etc.; further in all words beginning with ill, mill- and vill, as: illegal, illegal; la ville, the town; le village, the village etc.

2) gn has a liquid sound resembling the last syllable of the English word onion. Ex. signal is pronounced, as if it were spelt sinnial; thus: rogné, compagnon, joignez, poignard, saignée, mignonne; règne, peigne, ligne, digne, Cologne, oignon.

§. 9. Promiscuous Examples.

 La mère, le père, le frère, la sœur, les chats, les chiens, les vaches. Après, avare, porter, fer, boulanger, bannir, dirai, diront, épais, espoir, été, livre. Moi, beau, quand, personne, besoin, faut, peine, cœur, Dieu, bout, tout. Notre, monde, mer, vallée, ancien, cheveu, archer.
 2) Côte, côté, coton, rond, mentir, un, une, brun, brune, jatte, chatte, rouge, muche, chose, rose, rosser, dix, dixaine, péril, sommeil, gille, compagnie, mouillé, gagné, bétail, linge, aigle, longueur, douze, nation, essentiel, ambitieux, profession, jardinage, malheureux, l'hirondelle, choisir, grand, bain, pile.

<sup>\*)</sup> NB. The pupil is requested to observe that the i always stands before the liquid l.

3) Scorpion, calomnie, baptême, cuiller, temps, cinquième, qui, que, quoi, pâte, répété, bonnet, cep, verre, fier, abîme, finirai, bateau, mantelet, paysan, œuvre, ouvrage, montagne. Donc, chrétien, hurler, apprentissage, poison, poison, potion, population, leçon, gâteaux, printemps, reçois, jambon, agneau, Paris, Londres, Vienne, Vénitien.

## §. 10. Of the "liaison".

Euphony being one of the principal conditions of French pronounciation, words ending with a consonant are in reading generally to be joined to the following initial letter of the next word, when this begins with a vowel or h mute. Some words however, especially et (and), which is pronounced  $\ell$ , should never be carried over. Ex.:

#### Reading Exercise.

Les hommes, les enfants, des arbres, nos amis, vos habits, nous avons, ils ont, pas encore, avec un enfant, ses plus cruels ennemis; songez à vos affaires. Vous en souvenez-vous encore? Elles apprenaient à lire. Peu de temps après. Vous êtes un enfant. Les Hollandais sont-industrieux. Cet habit est à moi. Nous aurons eu. Mon malheureux ami. Un grand homme. Ne vous en êtes-vous pas aperçu? A laquelle de vos amies envoyezvous une rose? Cet homme avait été autrefois à Paris.

# ETYMOLOGY.

Parts of speech.

There are in French ten sorts of words, called parts of speech, namely:

- 1) Article, l'article.
- 2) Substantive or Noun, lesubstantif.
- 3) Determinative adjectivé, l'adjectif déterminatif.
- 4) Qualifying adjective, l'adjectif qualificatif.
- 5) Pronoun, le pronon.
- 6) Verb, le verba
- 7) Adverb, l'adyerke.
- 8) Preposition, la préposition.
- 9) Conjunction, la conjonction.
- 10) Interjection, l'interjection.

The first six are variable, the four others are in-

FIRST LESSON.

1 1

#### -Of the article.

In the French language there are only two genders, viz. the masculine and feminine. This distinction applies also to inanimate objects, which are either masculine or feminine.

1) To indicate this distinction of gender the *définite* article is prefixed to substantives, and has a peculiar form for each gender: le before a masculine, la before a feminine substantive; les is the plural for both genders. Ex.:

masc. le roi, the king. le père, the father. fem. la reine, the queen. la mère, the mother.

2) The articles le and la in the singular lose their vowels and take the apostrophe (l'), before a noun beginning with a vowel, or h mute, so as to form but one word. Ex:

musc. l'ami, the friend. l'homme, the man. fem. l'amis, the (female) friend. l'histoire, the history.

3) Besides this definite article (le, la, l', les), there is also an *indefinite* article for the singular, answering to the English a or an, viz.: **un** for the masculine, **une** for the feminine. Ex.:

masc.	un	roi, a	king.	fem.	ùne	reine,	a	queen.
	un	père, a	father.					mother.
	un	ami, a	friend.		une	amie, e	r (	female) friend. 🔔

For the declension of the article see the following  $\mathcal{J}$  Lesson.

Vords. Le livre, the book. un chapeau, a hat, bonnet. le pain, the bread. la rose, the rose. le cheval, the horse. la fleur, the flower. le chien, the dog. la plume, the pen, feather. la tanto, the aunt. *Foncle*, the uncle. Tenfant, the child. une poire, a pear. *For*, the gold. une pomme, an apple. un jardin, a garden. et, and.

S. Jai, I have tu as, thou hast il a, he has sils a, she has Ai-je,\*) have I? as-tu, hast thou? a-t-il, has he? a-t-elle, has she?

\*) Observe this hyphen by which the verb and pronoun are joined in interrogations.

ł

- 17 -

Pl. nous avons, we have { avons-nous, have we? vous avez, you have avez-vous, have you? ils ont, } they have. ont-ils, } L'enfant a-t-il,\*) has the child?

La mère a-t-elle, has the mother?

#### Reading Exercise. 1.

J'ai le livre. Tu as un livre. J'ai la rose. As-tu la rose? Il a le cheval. Elle a le pain. Le père a un cheval. La mère a un jardin. L'enfant a une poire. Nous avons un chien. Avez-vous un chapeau? Ils ont un oncle et une tante. Elles ont une tante. L'enfant a-t-il une plume? La mère a-t-elle la fleur? Le roi a-t-il un cheval? Il a le cheval. Les amis (plur.) ont les livres. Les enfants ont les plumes.

#### Thème. 2.

I have the horse. I have a friend. Thou hast the book. He has a dog: She has the bonnet. The father has a garden. The mother has the rose. The king has the gold. The uncle has a friend. We have the bread. You have a pear. They (masc.) have an apple. They (fem.) have a flower. Has the friend a horse? The friend has a horse and a dog.

UODV	erballon.
Ai-je la rose?	Vous avez la rose.
As-tu le pain?	Oui (yes), j'ai le pain.
A-t-elle la fleur?	Elle a la fleur.
L'enfant a-t-il le livre?	Il a le livre.
Avez-vous <sup>un</sup> cheval?	Oui, nous avons un cheval et un chien.
L'enfant a-t-il une poire?	L'enfant a une poire et une pomme.

\*) When in a question, not beginning with an interrogative pronoun or adverb, the *substantive* is expressed, it must begin the sentence, and the pronoun still be put after the verb.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar.

# SECOND LESSON.

#### Of the substantive or noun.

Besides the gender, in nouns are to be considered the formation of the plural and the cases or declension.

I. Of the plural of simple substantives.

General rule. The plural is formed in French as in English, by the addition of an s to the singular. Examples:

Le roi, Plur	. les	rois.	la pomme;	Plur.	les	pommes.
le livre,	les	livres.	l'enfant,		les	enfants.
Phomme,	les	hommes.	ľami,	•	les	amis.
la plume,	le <b>s</b>	plumes.	la mère,		les	mères.

	E	cc <b>e</b> p <b>ti</b> ons	to t	his rule.	which an ge T
					lar, admit of
no variation	in the	plural,	as:	-	V

Le fils, the son. Plur. les fils, the sons. la voix, the voice. les voix, the voices. le nez, the nose. les nez, the noses.

2) Words ending in au, eau, eu, ieu, eeu form their plural by adding x instead of s, as:

Le chapeau, the hat	er bonnet.	Plur. les	chapeaux.
le feu, the fire.		les	feux.
le lieu, the place.	•	le <b>s</b>	lieux.
le vœu, the wish.	•	les	vœux.

3) The following seven nouns in ou follow also this rule, taking x in the plural:

Le chou, (the) cabbage.	le pou, the louse.
le bijou, the jewel.	le genou, the knee.
le caillou, the pebble, flint.	le joujou, the plaything.
le hibou, the owl.	

Plural: les choux, les bijoux, les cailloux etc.

The others ending in ou, follow the general rule and take s in the plural, as: le clou, the nait, plur. les clous; le trou, the hole; plur. les trous etc. 4) Nouns ending in al tind **W**, change these terminations into aux, to form the plural, as: le cheval, the horse: le cheval, the animal; beast. le travail, the work. Plur. les chevaux, the horses. les animaux, the beasts, les travaux, the works.

NB. This rule however has a few exceptions, which follow the general rule, simply taking s in the plural, as: le bal, the ball; le carneval, the carnival; le portail, the front gate of a church; le gouvernail, the helm; l'éventail, the fan; le détail, the particulars, etc. Plur.: les hals, les carnevals etc.

5) The following words form their plural in an irregular manner:

\*le ciel, heaven. Plur. les cieux, heavens. \*l'œil, the eys. les youx, the eyes. \*l'aïeul, the (great-)grandfather. les aïoux, the ancestors. le bétail, cattle. les bestiaux, the cattle.

6) In nouns of more than one syllable ending in ant, ant, some writers suppress the t, as: les enfans, les commandemens etc.; but this orthography is not adopted by the French Academy. Monosyllables never drop the t in the plural as: la dent, the tooth, plur. les dents, the teeth; les pants, the bridges, etc.

7) As in English, many nouns, from their signification, cannot be used in the pharal, as: l'or, gold; la oire, wax; le bonheur, happiness; la faim, hunger; le song, blood, etc.

8) There are others which have no singular, as: les ancênes, the ancestors. les légumes, vegetables. les débris, the ruins. les légumes, vegetables. les environ, the environs. les mathématiques, mathématics. les épinarde, apinage. les mours, manners. les funérailles, the funeral. les mouchettes, suuffers. les gens, people. les ténèères, darkness.

\*) These three words have also a regular plural with another signification: les ciels signifies the skies in pictures and the testers of a bed; les ceils de boosf means ovals and les cieuls the (great-)grandfathers.

2\*

#### Words.

Le canif, the penknife. le frère, the brother. la sœur, the sister. la porte, the door, gate. la maison, the house. le château, the castle. le palais, the palace. un tableau, a picture. le chat, the cat. le général, the general. le jeu, the play, game. la souris, the mouse. le corail, the coral. le nom, the name. le chameau, the camel. le couteau, the knife. mon, ma, my. vu, seen. ou, or. deux, two. trois, three. quatre, four. cinq, five.

voici, voilà, there is, there are. aussi, also, too.

S. J'avais, I had	Pl. nous avions, we had
tu avais, thou hadst	vous aviez, you had
il avait, he had elle avait, she had	ils avaient, they had.

#### Reading Exercise. 3.

Nous avions un canif. Vous aviez deux canifs. Mon frère a les couteaux. La maison a deux portes. Avais-je les noix? Aviez-vous les joujoux? Oui, nous avions les joujoux. Le roi avait trois châteaux. La reine a les coraux. Elle a aussi les bijoux. Voici quatre souris. Les enfants avaient trois pommes. Mon oncle avait deux chevaux. Ma tante a cinq tableaux. Les chameaux ont une bosse (*kump*). Ma mère a deux sœurs et trois frères.

#### Thème. 4.

I have three brothers. {The} man has two arms. I had four horses. Hadst thou the flowers? I had the roses. There are the apples, the pears and the nuts. There are also the games and the pictures. Have you seen the houses, the castles and the gardens? My uncle has four pictures. I have seen five horses and two camels. The children had three mice. Have you seen the games of the (des) children? Has my aunt three dogs or three cats? She has three dogs and two cats. The eye is blue (est bleu). I have two eyes. Do you know (connaissez-vous) the names of the (des) generals? My brother has two knives, and I have two penknives.

#### 20

#### Conversation.

Avez-vous un canif? Avais-je les couteaux? As-tu vu les chameaux?

Avez-vous aussi vu les châteaux? Avez-vous les bijoux?

Les enfants ont-ils les habits (coats) ou les chapeaux? Avaient-ils vu les feux? La tante a-t-elle les jeux? Avez-vous les tableaux? Mon père a-t-il un chat? Combien de (how many) frères

avez – vous ? Combien de sœurs avez-vous ? Avez – vous vu les amis ? J'ai deux canifs.

Oui, j'avais les couteaux.

Oui, j'ai vu les chameaux et les chevaux.

J'ai vu les châteaux et les palais.

Ma tante a les bijoux et les coraux.

Les enfants ont les habits et les chapeaux.

Oui, ils avaient vu les feux. Non, les enfants ont les jeux. Je n'ai pas (not) les tableaux. Oui, il a un chat et un chien. J'ai trois frères.

J'ai deux sœurs. Nous n'avons pas vu les amis.

1) In French, properly speaking, there is no declension of nouns as in Latin or in German, because the cases do not admit of various terminations. The term "declension", therefore, is to be taken in its wider sense, meaning simply the variation of the cases by prefixing to the substantive some particular words, called *prepo*sitions, together with the article. By these cases, the different relations which substantives bear to one another, are expressed. There are 4 cases:

the Nominative, le nominatif; the Genitive, le génitif; the Dative, le datif; the Accusative, l'accusatif. 2) The nominative: and accusative cases have exactly the same form, as: le père un père, la mère, une mère, les pères, les mères etc., and can only be distinguished by their position in the sentence. In order to find the mominative, we must ask who", for the

accusative whom" or "what". Ex.

Who loves the daughter? The answer is: the motion: la nore then is the nominative case or the subject. Whom or what does the mother love? Answer: the daughter Consequently la fille is the accusative or the object. We see, in the natural construction, the nominative always precedes the verb, the accusative follows it. If we change that sentence into: La fille aime la more, then la fille is, according to its position, the nominative, and la more the accusative case.

3) The genitive or possessive case replies to the question "whose", "of whom" or "of which". It is known by the preposition de (of, from) which appears either unchanged or contracted with the article A contraction takes place whenever de comes to stand before te or tes; in the first case," is takes the form du (singular) in the second des (plaral). - Ex.:

S. du roi (instead of de le roi), of the king or the king's.
du père (inst. of de le père), of the father, the father's.
Pl. des rois (inst. of de les rois), of the kings, the kings'.
des mères (inst. of de les mères), of the mothers.

13 (1 4) Before la and l' de remains unaltered, as:

de la mère, of the mother or the mother's.

de la chambre, of the room.

de l'ami, of the friend, the friend's.

de l'homme, of (the) man, the man's.

5) Before the indefinite article un, une, an apostrophe is put instead of the e of de, as:

d'un roi, of a king. d'une reine, of a queen. d'un ami, of a friend. d'une amie, of a female friend. 6) The dative case answers to the question "to whom", and is formed by putting the preposition  $\mathbf{a}$ before the article, as:

à un roi, to a king. à l'homme, to the man. à une reine, to a queen. à l'ami, to the friend.

7) Before le,  $\dot{a}$  is contracted with this article into au, and in the plural  $\dot{a}$  and les into aux, as:

au roi, to the king. aux rois, to the kings. au frère, to the brother. aux frères, to the brothers.

# Table of declension.

1) with the definite article.

fem. masc. N. ) A. ) la mère, the mother le père, the father G. de la mère, of the mother du père, of the father D. 'à la mère, to the mother. a père, to the father. Plural. **N**. [ les mères, the mothers { les pères, the fathers des mères, of the mothers des pères, of the fathers <del>0</del>. aux pères, to the fathers. D. aux mères, to the mothers. N. ), l'âme, the soul l'ami, the friend A. \ de l'ami, of the friend G. de l'âme, of the soul à l'ami, to the friend. D. à l'âme, to the soul. `Plural

N. les âmes, the souls
G. des âmes, of the souls
D. aux âmes, to the souls.
les amis, the friends
aux amis, to the friends.

#### 2) with the indefinite article.

masc.	Jem.
N. ( un jardin, a garden	une rose, a rose
G. d'un jardin, of a garden	d'une rose, of a rose
D. à un jardin, to a garden.	à une rose, to a rose.

#### Remark.

We think proper to insert here the three following syntactical rules as indispensable for correct translation:

1) The definite article must be used, in French, before all nouns used in a general sense, or denoting a whole species of objects, though in English the article is not employed, as:

man, l'homme.nature, la nature.life, la vie.summer, l'été.fortune, la fortune.dinner, le diner.

Hence the genitives: of man, of life, of fortune etc. are to be translated in French: de l'homme, de la vie, de la fortune etc.; the datives: to man, to life, to nature etc. = à l'homme, à la vie, à la nature.

2) In French, the article is to be repeated before all the substantives of a sentence, as:

The salt, pepper and vinegar = le sel, le poivre et le vinaigre.

The men, women and children = les hommes, les femmes et les enfants.

3) The genitive always follows the other case, in dependance of which it is, both having the article; for example the king's throne must be inverted as If it were, the throne of the king, and translated: le trône du roi. Thus:

The brother's coat = *l'habit du frère*.

The princes' sisters = les sœurs des princes.

The queen's apartments = les appartements de la reine.

#### Words.

Dieu, God. la plante, the plant. le créateur, the creator. la fenêtre, the window. le monde, the world. le cousin, the cousin. Cennemi, m. the enemy. la cousine, the cousin, f. le sommeil, (the) sleep. la fille, the daughter. limage, f. the image. la ville, the town. la mort, (the) death. je donne, I give. la noix, the le voisin, the neighbour. [nut. la feuille, the leaf. à qui, to whom? whose? est, is. sont, are.

#### Reading Exercise. 5.

Le père de l'enfant. La mère des enfants. La porte de la maison. Les portes des maisons. Les fenêtres du palais. Le chat est un animal. Les chats sont les ennemis des souris. Le sommeil est l'image de la mort. Le château est au roi et à la reine. Je donne la plume à l'enfant. Je donne le jeu aux enfants. Le jardin est (bslongs) aux frères et aux sœurs. Les images des rois. Les feuilles des arbres et des plantes. Les fenêtres de la maison.

#### Thème. 6.

The father of the son. The mother of the daughter. The mother of the children. The door of the house. The gates of the town. The houses of the towns. The windows of the houses. God is the creator of the world. The dog is the enemy of the cat. I give the book to the brother. I give the coats to the brothers and (to the)<sup>\*</sup>) sisters. The dog is the friend of (the) man. The feathers of the birds. The leaves of the plants and (of the)<sup>\*</sup>) trees. My cousin's bonnet. My cousins' bonnets (the bonnets of my cousins). (The) sleep is the brother of (the) death. Of the trees of the garden. The eyes of the horses are large (grands). The friend's name. The windows of the castle. The neighbour's house and garden.<sup>\*</sup>) I give the roses to the sister of the count (comte). Give (aonnez) the pen to the father.

#### Conversation.

Ai-je le livre du cousin?	Tu as le livre du cousin.
As-tu l'image de la tante?	Oui, j'ai l'image de la tante.
A-t-il vu le jardin du roi?	Non, il a vu le château du roi.
Les enfants ont-ils les jeux?	Oui, les enfants ont les jeux.
Qui (who) a les ciseaux	Voici les ciseaux de votre sœur.
<i>(scissors)</i> de ma sœur?	
A qui sont les noix?	Elles sont à l'enfant.
A qui sont les poires?	Elles sont aux enfants du voisin.
A qui est ce (this) jardin?	Il est au roi et à la reine.
Avez-vous vu le chien de l'oncle?	Voilà le chien de l'oncle.
A qui sont ces (these) roses?	Elles sont à ma cousine.

\*) In French, the article must always be repeated.

# FOURTH LESSON.

## Nouns with prepositions.

Prepositions so frequently occur. that they ought to be learned as early as the nouns. We give here the most usual, observing at the same time that in French, as in English, the simple prepositions govern no particular case. - Then a a link of the forma for ( down

à, at, in. après, after. avant, before (time). avec, with. ches, at, with. contre, against. dans, in, into. de, of, from. po devant, before (place). pe derrière, behind. po en, in. sa entre, between. so envers, towards. su par, through, by.

parms, among. pendant, during. pour, for. sans, without. sous, under. sur, on, upon.

٤.

As to the contraction of  $\dot{a}$  and le into au, of  $\dot{a}$  and les into aux, of de with le into du, of de with les into des, see p. 22 and 23.

#### Words.

La cour, the court, yard.	<i>l'oiseau</i> , the bird.
l'école, the school.	la chambre, the room.
le maître, the master, teacher.	l'église, f. the church.
l'eau, f. the water.	la nuit, the night.
la main, the hand.	le jour, the day.
la pluie, the rain.	la cuisine, the kitchen.
	la poche, the pocket.
<i>l'arbre</i> , the tree.	demeure, lives. notre, our.
Louis, Lewis. où, wh	ere? qui, who? whom?

S.	Je suis, I am	Suis-je, am I?
	tu es, thou art	es-tu, art thou?
	il set, he is	
	elle est, she is	est-elle, is she?
Р.	nous sommes, we are	sommes-nous, are we?
	vous êtes, you are	êtes-vous, are you?
	ils sont, they are.	sont-ils, sont-elles, are they?
	ettes sont, y	sont-elles,

# Reading Skortisp. 7.

Je suis dans la cour. L'oiseau est sur le toit. La porte est à la maison. Es-tu au (for à le) jardin (dans le jardin)? Louis est chez mon père. Les chevaux sont devant la porte. Après la pluie. Pendant la nuit. Avant le jour. L'enfant est sous l'arbre. Parmi les enfants. Nous sommes derrière les arbres. Ils sont entre la porte et la fenêtre. Ce livre est pour mon frère. Ma tante est à l'église. Sans argent (money). Avec les chevaux de mon oncle. Contre l'ememi. Notre ami demeure à Paris dans la maison de sa tante.

# Thème. 8.

×.

In the yard. During the night. I am before the house. Lewis is in the garden. Are you in the yard (court)? Before (the) night. The birds are on the roof. I speak (je parls) of the house, — of the coat, — of the flowers, of my father, — of my mother. The two knives are in my pocket. Where are the cats? They are in the kitchen. The three children of my cousin (m.) are in (the) town. Against the rain. With my father. Without a master. Lewis is in his (sa) room. The book is for my sister. Between the two windows. Under the roof of the house. Are they before the door of the church? No, they are behind the church. The children are at (the) school.

Conversation.				
Où est Louis?	Il est dans la cour.			
Où est mon fils?	Il est au jardin.			
Où sont les enfants?	Ils jouent (play) devant la maison.			
De quoi (of what) parlez-vous	Je parle des chevaux du roi.			
	Je parle du roi et de la reine:			
Où sont les fenêtres?	Elles sont à la maison - au			
· · · · ·	château au palais.			
Votre cousine est-elle à l'école?	Non, elle cst à l'église.			
Qui est allé (gone) à l'église?				
	Non, nous sommes sous le toit.			
Ton père est-il au jardin?				
Sont-ils à la fenêtre?	Oui, ils sont à la fenêtre.			
Avez-vous vu les canards	Nous avons vu les canards et			
(ducks) dans la cour?	les oies (geese).			
Avec qui (whom) - êtes - vous	Joneuis allé avec ma sour.			
ull6?				

.

# FIFTH LESSON.

Of the partitive sense or article.

56

1) This form is used to denote a part of a totality, but without specifying precisely have much or how many It answers to the English some or  $any^*$ ) before a noun, and is expressed in French by du before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant, by  $de \, la$  before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant, and by  $de \, l'$ before a noun of either gender beginning with a vowel or h mute. Ex.:

du pain, some (or any) bread. de la bière, some beer. du vin, some (or any) wine. de la viande, some meat. de l'argent, some money (silver). de l'huile, some oil.

In the plural, the partitive article is des for both genders, as:

des livres, (some) books. des fleurs, flowers. des enfants, children. des roses, poses.

2) In questions, the English use any instead of some; in French it must be rendered by the same article, as:

Have you any bread, avez-vous du pain?

Is there any water, y a-t-il de leau?

3) The partitive article must be used whenever in English some or any is expressed or understood before a substantive; it must be repeated before every substantive in a sentence, as:

Have you bread and cheese, avez-vous du pain et du fromage?

Bring me some mustard, oil and vinegar, apportez-mol de la moutarde, de l'huile et du vinaigre.

4) However, when the substantive is preceded by an adjective, the simple preposition de or d' takes the

\*) Some is hardly ever used in English, whereas du, de la, de l, des, must always be expressed.

place of the partitive article, in the singular as well as in the plural, as:

and a start that Singular! - date the	•
N! ) de bon vin, some or any good wine.	• •
Ac. ( de bonne viande, some or any good me	at.
and de mauvais café, some or any bad coff	ee.
". G. ) d'excellente bière, some or any excellent	beer.
Plural.	
N ). de bons livres, some or any good book	8.
Ac. ¿ de belles seurs, some or any beautiful	flowers.
G. ) d'excellents vaisseaux, some or any excell	ent vessels.
and the second	
Words. 199	
La farine, the flour. le café, the coffee.	• • •
le fer, (the) iron. la prune, the plum.	
For, gold. le fromage, the chee	
Fargent, silver. le crayon, the penci	
le plomb, lead. le beurre, the butter	•
le sél, (the) salt. le garçon, the boy.	. 1
le canard, the duck. le soulier, the shoe.	14 e e e
louf, the egg. le bas, the stocking	
le fruit, the fruit. acheté, bought.	
le marchand, the merchant. que, what? mais,	but. 👓
le sucre, the sugar. Id, there. six, six,	
il y a, there is, there are. c'est, this is, th	at is.

S. Jaurai, I shall have Aurai-je, s

- tu auras, thou wilt have il aura, he will have elle aura, she will have
- P. nous aurons, we shall have vous aurez, you will have ils auront, they will have. elles auront,

١

Aurai-je, shall I have? auras-tu, wilt thou have? aura-t-il, will he have? aura-t-elle, will she have? aurons-nous, shall we have? aurez-vous, will you have? auront-ils, auront-elles, will they have?

#### 🐘 Reading Exercise. 9.

J'avais de la farine et du sel. Aviez-vous aussi du sel? Le roi a de l'or et de l'argent. Il a aussi des bijoux. Tu auras du fromage. Louis a acheté du papier et de l'encre. Nous aurons des livres, des plumes et des crayons. Avaientelles des fleurs et des fruits? Je donne à ton cousin des noix et des pommes. Dans la cour il y a des oies et des canards. Mon cousin avait des chevaux et des chiens. Ma cousine aura des chats, mais ma tante aura des oiseaux. Dans les jardins il y a des arbres, des fruits et des figurs.

## Thème, 10.

We had some butter and (some) cheese. You had butter and eggs. Here is (voici) the bread. There is some bread. My father had bought lead and iron. The child had (some) My cousin (f.) will have some flour and bread. flowers. There are eggs and fruits. The merchant has sugar and coffee. The queen had gold and silver. I give (to) the boys books, pencils and pens. They will also have some paper and ink. Lewis has horses and dogs. We have seen horses and camels. My sister will have shoes and stockings. I give (to) the boys stockings, clothes (habits) and hats. Have you (any) friends (m.)? They (f.) will have friends (f.). At (chez) my uncle's there are books and pictures. Will you have (voulez-vous) some money? No, give me (-moi) some bread. Read (lisez) good books. This is bad coffee., We have seen beautiful roses.

#### Conversation.

Avons-nous de la farine? Avons-nous aussi du sel? Aurons-nous du beurre et du pain?

A-t-elle des crayons? Les enfants ont-ils des poires? Qu'as-tu sous le bras (arm)? Pour qui sont ces livres? Ta sœur a-t-elle du sucre? Ton cousin a-t-il du papier?

Qui a du fromage? Y a-t-il des fruits?

Qu'y a-t-il chez mon oncle?

. 5

Nous avons de la farine. Nous avons aussi du sel. Non, mais vons aurez des fruits.

Acres

١. 1.

Qu'avez-vous là (there)? Nous avons de la viande et du pain.

> Non, mais elle a des plumes. Non, mais ils ont des pommes.

> J'ai des livres.

Ils sont pour mon maître. Elle a du sucre et du café.

Mon cousin a du papier, des plumes et de l'encre.

Le marchand a du fromage.

Oui, il y a des fruits.

Il y a des livres et des images.

# SIXTH LESSON.

# Declension of the partitive article.

The partitive article, too, it liable to declension, that is, he has a peculiar form for the genitive and dative.

1) The dative is formed by the addition of à before the nominative, but it is seldom used, as à du pain, to bread; à de l'argent, to money; à des livres, to books.

Tu penses toujours à du vin et à de la bière.

You always think of wine and seer.

masc.

2) The genitive consists of the noun alone, to which the preposition de(d) is prefixed, as: de viande, of meat; d argent, of money; de livres, of books.

#### Table of declension.

#### Singular.

fem.

N. du pain, (some) bread de la viande, (some) meat G. de pain, of (some) bread de viande, of (some) meat D. à du pain, to (some) bread. à de la viande, to (some) meat. Thus: du beurre, some butter. Thus: de la farine, some flour.

#### Masculine and feminine.

N. { de l'argent, (some) money { de l'encre, (some) ink
G. d'argent, of money d'encre, of ink
D. à de l'argent, to money. A de l'encre, to ink.
Thus: de l'or, some gold. Thus: de l'esu, some water.

#### Plural.

#### (The plural is the same for both genders.)

N. { des livres, (some) books
G. de livres, of (some) books
D. à des livres, to (some) books.
Thus: des pays, some countries.
M. { des livres, (some) pens
des plumes, of (some) pens
des plumes, to (some) pens.
Thus: des pays, some countries.

The article - miller a the of my not & Ju, de l' de los a Pas 4) As it appears from the foregoing table, the genitive case of the partitive article in all the genders and numbers is simply the word de. This genitive (de alone) is used without any distinction of gender or number:

> a) as in English, after nouns expressing measure, weight, number, as:

Une bouteille de vin, a bottle of wine. Un morceau de pain, a bit of bread. Une livre de sucre, a pound of sugar. Une paire de bas, a pair of stockings.

b) after the following adverbs of quantity spece h L bien. asses, enough.

beaucoup, much, many, a great many, a great deal. combien, how much, how many. peu, little, few. plus, more.

moins, less. rien, nothing. quelque chose, something. trop, too, too much, to many. trop peu, too little, too few. iant, so much, so many. autant, as much, as many.

"" " - " and / In 3 and me me ) - fear carl

## Examples.

Assez de vin, wine enough (assez before the noun). Combien d'argent, how much money? Tant de fleurs, so many flowers. Trop de fautes, too many mistakes.

c) after adverbs of negation, as: point. Ex.:

Je n'ai pas de sucre, I have no sugar.

Navez-vous point d'encre, have you no ink? The partitive granting in French is also used in the place of adjectives denoting a material, as:

Une bague d'or, a gold ring. Une cuiller d'argent, a silver spoon. Une bourse de soie, a silk purse. Un chapeau de veloure, a velvet bonnet. Une table de bois, a wooden table.

5) After numerals no article at all is used, as: Deux enfants, two children. — Dix écoliers, ten pupils.

#### Words.

Une feuille, a sheet. un verre, a glass. le thé, tea. une boîte, a box. la montre, the watch. le drap, the cloth. Caune, f. the ell, yard. une douzaine, a dozen. la botte, the boot. le soulier, the shoe. la personne, the person. le bois, the wood. que, than.

#### Reading Exercise. 11.

Voici une bouteille de vin. Nous avons trois livres de sucre. Nous aurons aussi deux livres de café. La reine avait beaucoup de bijoux. Aviez-vous assez d'argent? Je pense à de l'or et à de l'argent. Mon oncle aura une douzaine de bas. Avez-vous reçu la boîte de crayons? Vous aurez une feuille de papier. Ils avaient plus de viande. Aviez-vous assez de pain? Louis aura autant de pommea. Les enfants avaient moins de poires que de noix. Je donne assez d'argent à mon fils. Combien de personnes sont-elles? Elles sont trois. Il a bu trop de vin. Nous aurons une chaîne d'argent. Vous aurez une montre d'or. Ils avaient acheté une boîte de bois. Ma mère a un chapeau de velours.

#### Thème. 12.

I have a dozen (of) pens. Thou wilt have a sheet of paper. She will have more bread; she has cheese and butter enough. We had a glass of wine. I shall have also a bit of meat and two glasses of beer. He had a bottle of oil. We had two pounds of sugar, six pounds of coffee and five pounds of tea. You will have a great many (of) pencils and (of) books. I have bought a dozen (of) stockings and two pair of shoes. In this (cette) box are six yards of cloth. I had a silver watch and a gold ring. This is a wooden table. How many persons have you seen? We have seen few persons. My cousin had a wooden box. Have you drunk a bottle of wine? No, the boys have drunk too much beer. Give me a sheet of paper. My brother will have something. My sister has bought two gold rings and three silver spoons. The child has as many pears as (que de) apples.

#### Conversation.

Qu'avez-vous là? Qu'avez-vous acheté, Monsieur? Nous avons un verre d'eau. J'ai acheté deux livres de sucre.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar.

3

Avez-vous aussi du café? Avez-vous de l'argent, mon fils? Combien d'argent avez-vous? Est-ce assez pour vous? Avaient-ils reçu la boîte de crayons? Où avez-vous vu le maître de musique? Avait-il des fleurs? Avez-vous du drap?

Combien d'aunes voulez vous?

Penses-tu à du vin?

Où trouve-t-on (do they find) de l'or et de l'argent?

- Combien de chevaux avezvous?
- Avez-vous une paire de bottes?

Our, Monsieur, j'ai du café. Oui, mon père, j'ai de l'argent.

J'ai six florins.

C'est assez pour moi (me).

Je ne sais pats (I do not know).

- J'ai vu mon maître de musique au jardin.
- Oui, il avait des fruits et des fleurs.

Oui, Madame, nous avons toutes sortes (all sorts) de draps.

Donnez-moi (give me) cinq aunes.

Non, je pense à de la bière.

Dans ce pays on trouve beaucoup d'argent, mais peu d'or. Nous avons trois chevaux.

J'ai une paire de bottes et deux paires de souliers.

# SEVENTH LESSON.

# Of Proper Names.

A proper name is the name of any particular person or place. A distinction must be made: 1) between proper names of persons and towns; 2) Aames of countries, provinces /mountains, rivers, lakes,

The former admit of no apticle; to form their genitive case, they take de, and for the dative à.

# Table of declension.

Charles / Charles

Marie , Mary

G. de Charles, of or from Charles de Marte, of or from Mary D. à Charles, to Charles.

à Marie, to Mary.

1 person & tuno In nol Longres, London

A. / Paris, Paris G. de Paris, of or from Paris D. à Paris, to or at Paris.

Such are:

Frédéric, Frederick. Guillaume, William. Henri, Henry. George, George. Robert, Rebert. Jean, John. François, Frank. Élice, Eliza, Lizzy. , de Londres, of or from L. Londres, to or at London.

Hélène, Helen, Ellen, Sophie, Sophie. Caroline, Caroline. Jane, Jeannette. Vienne, Vienna. Genève, Geneva. Lyon, Lyons. Kome, Rome.

Remarks.

1) We must except from the showende: a) the names of several Italian authors before which the article is used: le Tasse, Tasso (Gren. du Tasse etc.); l'Arioste, Ariosto; is Dante, Dante; b) titles of books or plays, as: le Télémaque de Fénélon, l'Athalie de Racine etc.; c) some names of towns, as: le Havre, Havre; le Caire, Cairo; la Mecque, Mekka.

2) In English the Genitive is often put first. This transposition of words is not allowed in French, for ex.: Henry's hat must be translated as it were: the hat of Henry = le chapeau de Henri; Byron's works = les œuvres de Byron.

3) Before proper names of countries, provinces, rivers and mountains, the definite article is used in French, as:

La France, France. la Prusse, Prussia. la Belgique, Belgium. l'Europe, Europe. l'Angleterre, England. l'Afrique, Africa. la Russie, Russia. les Indes, India. l'Italie, Italy. l'Amérique, America. la Suisse, Switzerland. la Seine, the Seine. la Tamise, the Thames. l'Allemagne, Germany. l'Espagne, Spain. le Rhin, the Rhine. la Suède, Sweden. les Alpes, the Alps, etc.

These are declined as common names: Fen. de la France; of France; Dat. à la France, to France.

3\*

4) Nevertheless, the names of countries take no article, when they are preceded by the preposition en, which corresponds both with to and in. Ex.:

Je vais en Italie, I am going to Italy.

Il demeure en Allemagne, he lives in Germany.

5) To and at or in, before names of cities, torons and villages, are rendered by à. Ex.:

Nous allons à Londres, — à Paris, — à Bade etc. We go to London, — to Paris, — to Baden etc. Mon oncle demeure à Berlin, — à Lyon etc.

My uncle lives at (in) Berlin, — at (in) Lyons etc. (Further explanations will be given in the second Part.)

#### Words.

Le eahier, the copy-book. le carte, the map. la fable, the fable. le manteau, the cloak. le gant, the glove. le pays, the country. la ville, the city, town. le cours, the course. Monsieur, Mister. Madame, Madam. Mademoiselle, Miss. Foncle, the uncle. la tante, the aunt. la capitale, the capital. regu, received, got. donnez, give. votre, your.

. où, where. lu, read. était, was. étiez-vous, were you?

#### Reading Exercise. 13.

J'ai le cahier de Frédéric. Voici les fables de Lafontaine. J'ai vu le château du roi de Belgique. Donnez la boîte à Sophie. Donnez la plume à Henri. Où est Monsieur Muller? C'est le chapeau de Mademoiselle Élise. C'est le canif de George. Nous sommes à Paris. Étiez-vous à Vienne? Mon cousin est en Amérique. Le cours du Rhin est long. Voici une carte d'Allemagne. Louis Philippe, roi de France, est mort (*died*) en Angleterre. Voici les chevaux de Charles. Avez-vous lu les œuvres (*the works*) de Corneille? Donnez ces gants à Henri.

#### Thème. 14.

William is my friend. I am William's friend (the friend of W.). Here is John's brother. Where is my sister Ellen? She is with Caroline. Where are Eliza's gloves (the gloves of E.)? Speak (parker) to Henty and (to) Frank. I have received the book from Paris. Were you at Paris? I was not<sup>1</sup> at Paris, but I was at London. Brussels<sup>2</sup> is the capital of Belgium. Florence is a city in Italy. I am going to Switzerland. My uncle lives in Germany. Are you going (allez-vous) to Berlin or to Vienna? I am going to Frankfort and to Vienna. Paris is the capital of France. Is your aunt in America? Yes, she is in New-York. I know Spain and Italy. My brother has travelled (voyagé) in Russia, in Sweden and in Germany. This is Frederick's hat. I have seen Geneva, Lyons and Rome. Give me Mary's copy-book and George's pencil.

#### Conversation.

Où étiez-vous? Et ton frère, où était-il?

Où sont les gants d'Hélène?

Quel (what) pays est-ce là?

Quelle ville est-ce là?

Quelle est la capitale de la Belgique?

- Quelle est la capitale de la C'est Berlin. Prusse?
- Qui est là?

A qui donnez-vous ces livres?

A qui est ce chapeau?

Quel manteau est-ce là?

Où trouve-t-on (is found) beaucoup d'or?

Où trouve-t-on de bon fer? ъ т, . .

Quels pays avez-vous vus?

Avez-vous la les poèmes de Béranger?

----

Combien de crayons Caroline a-t-elle achetés?

Où sont les enfants de Ma- Ils Sont au jardin. dame Lebeau? ·· ·

Il était aussi à Paris. Ils sont sur la table. C'est l'Allemagne. C'est la ville de Londres.

C'est Bruxelles.

J'étais à Paris.

Les enfants de Madame Brée. Je les (them) donne à Marie. Ce chapeau est à Guillaume. C'est le manteau de Frédéric. En Californie.

En Suède (Sweden) et en Angleterre.

J'ai vu la Suisse et l'Italie.

Non, Monsieur, mais j'ai lu les poèmes de Victor Hugo.

Caroline a acheté quatre crayons et Jeanette a acheté 6 plumes.

..... 1) Je n'étais pas; see p. 45. – 2) Bruxelles.

# EIGHTH LESSON.

Auxiliary verbs.

# Avoir, to have.

# Indicative Mood (Indicatif).

Present Tense (Présent).

 $J^{a}ai$ , I have tu as, thou hast il a, he has elle a, she has on a, one has nous avons, we have vous avez, you have ils ont, / they have. elles ont, /

Imperfect (Imparfait).

J'avais, I had tu avais, thou hadst il avait, he had nous avions, we had vous aviez, you had ils avaient, they had.

Preterite (Défini).

J'eus, I had tu eus, thou hadst il eut, he had nous eûmes, we had vous eûtes, you had ils eurent, they had.

Future (Futur).

J'aurai, I shall have tu auras, thou wilt have il aura, he will have nous aurons, we shall have vous aurez, you will have ils auront, they will have.

#### 1st Conditional (Cond. Présent).

J'aurais, I should have tu aurais, thou wouldst have il aurait, he would have

nous aurions, we should have vous auries, you would have ils auraient, they would have.

# Compound Tenses.

#### Eu, had.

#### Perfect (Passé indéfini).

J'ai eu, I have had tu as eu, thou hast had il a eu, he has had elle a eu, she has had nous avons eu, we have had vous avez eu, you have had ils ont eu, ) they have had. elles ont eu, )

#### Pluperfect (Plusqueparfait).

Javais eu, I had had tu avais ou, thou hadst had il avait eu, he had had

nous avions eu, we had had vous aviez eu, you had had ils avaient eu, they had had.

2nd Pluperfect (Passé antérieur). Jeus eu, I had had nous sûmes eu, we had had tu eus eu, thou hadst had vous entes eu, you had had il eut eu, he had had ils curent cu, they had had.

> 2nd Future (Futur antérieur ou passé). Jaurai eu, I shall have had tu auras eu, thou wilt have had il aura eu, he will have had nous aurons eu, we shall have had vous aures eu, you will have had ils auront eu, they will have had.

2nd Conditional (Cond. Passé). J'aurais eu, I should have had tu aurais eu, thou wouldst have had il aurait eu, he would have had nous aurions eu, we should have had vous auriez eu, you would have had ils auraient eu, they would have had.

Imperative Mood (Impératif). Aie, have qu'il ait, let him have

ayons, let us have ayez, have (you).

Subjunctive Mood (Subjonctif).

Present.

Que j'aie, that I (may) que tu aies, that thou 14 qu'il ait, that he

que nous ayons, that we (may) que vous ayez, that you (8 qu'ils aient, that they

1

#### Imperfect.

Que j'eusse, that I had or might have que tu eusses, that thou hadst qu'il cût, that he had or might have que nous eussions, that we had or might have que vous eussiez, that you had qu'ils cussent, that they had or might have.

#### Perfect (Passé).

Que j'aie eu, that I (may) have had que tu aies eu, that thou (mayest) have had qu'il ait eu, that he (may) have had que nous ayons eu, that we (may) have had que vous ayes eu, that you (may) have had qu'ils aient eu, that they (may) have had.

#### Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse eu, that I (might) have had que tu eusses eu, that thou (mights) have had qu'il eût eu, that he (might) have had que nous eussions eu, that we (might) have had que vous eussiez eu, that you (might) have had qu'ils eussent eu, that they (might) have had.

Infinitive Mood (Infinitif). Present. Past. Avoir, d'avoir, a avoir eu, d'avoir eu, d'avoir eu, b to have had. P articiples (Participes). Present. Past.

Ayant, having

eu, f. eue, had ayant eu, having had.

Note 1. Avoir also means to receive, to get, especially in the Future, as: J'aurai de l'argent, I shall get some money.

Note 2. It would be a good plan to conjugate the whole verb avoir together with a noun, as: J'ai une pomme, j'avais une pomme etc. After that, with the pronouns i' (le), it, and les, then, as: Je Fai, I have it; tu Fas, if ia etc.; — je les avais, je les aurai, tu les auras etc.

#### Words.

Le courage, the courage. le plaisir, the pleasure. la voinure, the carriage. la bourse, the purse. *Pencrier*, m. the inkstand. la règle, the ruler. le cahier d'écriture, the copybook. perdu, lost. aujourd'hui, to-day.

#### Thème. 15.

Pres. I have a book. He has a hat. We have a house and (a)\*) garden. They (masc.) have a horse. They (fem.) have beautiful flowers. — Imperf. I had a friend. Thou hadst also a friend. Louisa had two cats. You had money enough. The children had little bread. — Pret. He had the courage. We had fine weather (beau temps). You had the pleasure. The son of the king had a carriage. — Fut. and Cond. I shall have apples. He would have seen the castle. We shall have some coffee to-day. We should have some sugar. You will have (get) two horses. They would have an inkstand and a ruler.

Compound Tenses. I have had a mistake. We have had much trouble (peine). You have had a great (grand) pleasure. She had had [a great]\*) many nuts. They had had two copybooks. I shall have had paper and pens. You will have had my horse. Charles' sisters will have had beautiful flowers. — I should have had a great deal of (beaucoup de) trouble. Thou wouldst have had more pleasure. You would have had a good friend. The boy would have had a penknife. The boys would have had a holy-day (un jour de congé) to -day.

# NINTH LESSON. Conjugation of the auxiliary Étre, to be.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je suis, I am tu es, thou art il est, he (it) is elle est, she is nous sommes, we are vous êtes, you are ils sont, elles sont, they are. ۰ ١.

Imperfect.

J'étais, I was tu étais, thou wast il était, he was elle était, she was nous étions, we were vous étiez, you were ils étaient, { they were. elles étaient, {

<sup>\*)</sup> The pupil is requested to take notice that brackets [...] signify "leave out", whilst a parenthesis (...) encloses a word to be translated or an annotation.

Preterite.

Je fus, I was tu fus, thou wast il fut, he was nous filmes, we were vous filtes, you were ils furent, they were.

#### Future.

Je serai, I shall be tu seras, thou wilt be il sera, he will be nous serons, we shall be vous serez, you will be ils seront, they will be.

#### 1st Conditional.

Je serais, I should be tu serais, thou wouldst be il serait, he would be nous series, we should be vous seriez, you would be ils seraient, they would be.

# Compound Tenses.

#### Etć, been.

#### Perfect.

Jai été, I have been tu as été, thou hast been il a été, he has been elle a été, she has been

nous avons été, we have been vous aves été, you have been ils ont été, { elles ont été, }

## Pluperfect.

J'avais été, I had been nous avions été, we had been tu avais été, thou hadst been vous aviez été, you had been il avait été, he had been ils avaient été, they had been.

#### Compound of the Preterite.

Jeus été, I had been nous eûmes été, we had been tu eus été, thou hadst been il eut été, he had been ils eurent été, they had been.

#### 2nd Future.

J'auras été, I shall have been tu auras été, thou wilt have been il aura été, he will have been nous aurons été, we shall have been vous aurez été, you will have been ils auront été, they will have been.

#### 2nd Conditional.

Journis été, I should have been tu aurais été, thou wouldst have been is aurait été, he would have been nous aurions été, we should have been vous auriez été, your would have been ils auraient été, they would have been.

#### Imperative.

Sois, be soyons, let us be soyez, be.

200 - N (F

#### Subjunctive Mood.

#### Present.

Que je sois, that I (may) be que nous soyons, that we be que tu sois, that thou (mayest) que vous soyez, that you be qu'il soit, that he be [be qu'ils soient, that they be.

#### Imperfect.

Que je fusse, that I were que tu fusses, that thou werest qu'il fit, that he were qu'il fit, that he were qu'il fit, that he were

Perfect.

Que j'aie été, that I (may) have been que tu aies été, that thou (mayost) have been qu'il ait été, that he (may) have been que nous ayons été, that we (may) have been que vous ayez été, that you (may) have been qu'ils aient été, that they (may) have been.

#### Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse été, that I (might) have been que tu sustes été, that thou (mightst) have been qu'il cût été, that he (might) have been que nous eussions été, that we (might) have been que vous eussiez été, that you (might) have been qu'ils eussent été, that they (might) have been.

# Infinitive Mood.

Present. *Étre*, (to) be *Étre*, of being, to be. *Avoir été*, *to* have been *d'avoir été*, *to* having been *d'avoir été*, *to* have been. Pantefie i pilles.

Present. Past.

Étant, being.

ayant été, having been.

#### Words.

Malade, ill.paresseux, idle, lazy.appliqué, diligent.heureux, happy.malheureux, unhappy.jeune, young. sage, good.content, contented.le marchand, the merchant.

#### Thème. 16.

I am ill. Thou art young. Charles is my friend. We are happy. You are also happy. The child will be good (sage). Louisa was ill. William and Julius have also been ill. This boy has been idle. This girl was very good. He will be contented. You would also be contented. She has been at Paris. Her (son) brother has been in London. We have been in France. Your mother may (peut) have been ill. Yes, indeed (en effet) she has been ill long. Who was (has been) with (chez) your father? A merchant has been with your father. He had been before (auparavant) with my uncle.

# TENTH LESSON.

in the

## Of the negative and interrogative forms, of the auxiliaries.

Whereas in English The negation is simply expressed by the particle not, the French make it of two negative words, wiz, ne and pas, the first of which is placed before the simple verb, the other after it, as: Je ne suis pas, I am not. In compound tenses, the participle follows pas, as: Je n'ai p as eu, I have not had.

In interrogations, the pronoun, which is the subject of the verb, is placed after it, and they are joined by a hyphen, as: *as-tu, avez-vous*? When the third person singular ends with a vowel, -t- is placed between the verb and *il*, elle or on: *a-t-il*? *a-t-elle*? *aura-t-on*? -Jhi is called emphanic t

## Table, 1., 1., 2

1) Negative form of the auxiliaries. 12200 1. A. Chart Indicative Mood. 1.1

#### Present Tense.

Je n'ai pas, I have not tu n'as pas, thou hast not il n'a pas, he has not elle n'a pas, she has not vous n'avez pas, you have not ils n'ont pas, they have not.

1 ... 11

- 1 A .

1 ...

Je ne suis pas, I am not tu n'es pas, thou art not il n'est pas, he is not elle n'est pas, she is not ... nous n'avons pas; we have not nous ne sommes pas, we are not vous 'n'étes pas, you are not ils ne sont pas, they are not.

#### grade the track of Imperfect.

Je n'avais pas, I had not etc. Je n'étais pas, I was not etc.

Preterite.

Je n'eus pas, I had not etc. Je ne fus pase, I was not etc.

#### Future.

Je n'aurai pas, I shall not Je me serai pas, I shall not be etc. have etc.

#### 1st Conditional.

Je n'aurais pas, I should not Je ne serais pas, I should not be etc. have etc.

#### Perfect.

Je n'ai pas eu, I have not Je n'ai pas été, I have not had etc. been etc.

#### Pluperfect.

Je n'avais pas eu, I had not Je n'avais pas été, I had not had etc. been etc.

2nd Future.

Je n'aurai pas eu, I shall not Je n'aurai pas été, I shall not have had etc. have been etc.

2nd Conditional.

Je n'aurais pas eu; I should Je n'aurais pas été, I should not have been etc. not have had etc. - . •

# Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

.

•

Que je n'aie pas, that I (may) Que je ne sois pas, that I (may) not have etc. not be etc.

Preterite.

Que je n'eusse pas, that I Que je ne fusse pas, that I were not etc. (might) not have etc.

. Perfect.

Que je n'ais pas eu, that I Que je n'ais pas été, that I (may) 

Pluperfect.

Que je n'eusse pas eu, that I Que je n'eusse pas été, that K (might) not have had etc. (might) not have been etc.

#### Imperative Mood.

Naie pas, have not n'ayons pas, let us not have Ne sois pas, be not ne soyons pas, let us not be n'ayez pas, have not. ne soyez pas, he not.

# Infinitive Mood. Present.

Nétre pas, ! not to be. Navoir pas, (not to have. ne pas être, 🐧

Perfect.

N'avoir pas eu, not to have had. N'avoir pas été, not to have been.

Participles.

Present.

N'ayant pas, not having. N'étant pas, not being.

Past.

N'ayant pas eu, not having had. N'ayant pas été, not having been.

2) Interrogative form of the two auxiliaries. Indicative Mood.

#### Present.

Ai-je, have I? as-tu, hast thou? a-t-il, has he? a-t-elle, has she?

Suis-je, am I? es-tu, art thou? est-il, is he? est-elle, is abe? avons-nous, have we? aves-vous, have you? ont-ils (-elles), have they? sommes-nous, are we? êies-vous, are you? sont-ils (-elles), are they?

Imperfect.

Avais-je, had I? etc.

Étais-je, was I? etc.

Fus-je, was I? etc.

· ,

Preterite.

Eus-je, had I? etc.

Future.

Aurai-je, shall I have? etc. Serai-je, shall I be? etc.

1st Conditional.

Aurais-je, should I have? etc. Serais-je, should I be? etc.

Perfect.

Ai-je eu, have I had? etc. Ai-je été, have I been? etc. Pluperfect.

Avais-je eu, had I had? etc. Avais-je été, had I been? etc. 2nd Future.

Auraije eu, shall I have had?. Auraije été, shall I have been? 2nd Conditional.

Aurais-je eu, should I have Aurais-je été, should I have had? etc. been? etc.

3) Negative and interrogative form.

Indicative Mood.

#### Present.

Nai-je pas, have I not? N'as-tu pas, hast thou not? n'as-tu pas, hast thou not? n'a-t-il pas, has he not? n'avons-nous pas, have we not? etc. etc. etc. etc. No suis-je pas, am I not? n'es-tu pas, art thou not? n'es-tu pas, is he not? n'es-tu pas, is he not? ne sommes-nous pas, are we not? etc. No suis-je pas, am I not? n'es-tu pas, art thou not? n'es-tu pas, is he not? n'es-tu pas, is he not? n'es-tu pas, art thou not? n'es-tu pas, art thou not? n'es-tu pas, is he not? ne sommes-nous pas, are we not? etc. etc.

Imperfect,

Navaisje pas, had I not? etc. N'étaisje pas, was I not? etc. Preterite.

N'eus-je pas, had I not? etc. Ne fus-je pas, was I not? etc.

1st Future.

Naurai je pas, shall I not Ne serai je pas, shall I not have? etc. be? etc.

1st Conditional.

Naurais-je pas, should I not Ne serais-je pas, should I not have? etc. be? etc.

#### Perfect.

Nai-je pas eu, have I not had? Nai-je pas été, have I not been?

Pluperfect.

Navais-je pas eu, had I not Navais-je pas été, had I not had? etc. been? etc.

2nd Future.

N'aurai-je pas eu, shall I not N'aurai-je pas été, shall I not have had? etc. have been? etc.

2nd Conditional.

Naurais-je pas eu, should I N'aurais-je pas été, should I not not have had? etc. have been? etc.

#### Words.

La nouvelle, the news.	paubre, poor.
la lettre, the letter.	mécontent, discontented.
le chagrin, the grief.	hier, yesterday.
les parents, the parents.	demain, to-morrow.
le tailleur, the tailor.	reçu, received.
le bottier, the boot-maker.	mangé, eaten.
la cerise, the cherry.	autrefois, formerly.
riche, rich. très, very.	longtemps, long, a long time.

#### Thème. 17.

I have a friend. Hast thou also a friend? We have  $(some)^1$  friends. Have you also friends? I am happy. I am not happy. Are you happy? Are you not happy? No, we are not happy; we are poor.<sup>2</sup>) Formerly we were very happy. You are not rich.<sup>2</sup>) Thou hast been poor. She has been rich. Have you had  $(any)^1$  cherries? Have you had the pleasure of seeing (de voir) your father? No, we have not

ς...

<sup>1)</sup> See the foot-note p. 41.

<sup>2)</sup> These adjectives take s in the plural (pauvres - riches).

had this pleasure; we shall have at  $(l)^*$  to-morrow. You have not been industrious.\*\*) You have been idle. Hast thou been ill? I have not been ill long. They (fem.) have not received the letter. Were you (have you been) at (chez) the tailor's? I have not been at the tailor's; I have been at the boot-maker's; but (mais) he was not at home (à la maison). How many horses had you? I had two horses. Charles would not have been ill, if he had not eaten too, much (trop). Be contented. Take (have) care of your books.

#### Conversation.

Avez-vous une visite? Eûtes-vous hier une visite?

- Quand (when) avez-vous été au spectacle (theatre)?
- Charles, seras-tu content?
- Avez-vous un ami?

1

Avoz-vous recu une lettre?

Où était ton ami Louis?

Vos parents sont-ils riches?

N'êtes-vous pas contents?

Où avez-vous été hier?

- Où serez-vous demain?
- Ta sœur a-t-elle été malade?
- Où avez-vous vos habits (clothes)?
- Avez-vous des affaires (business)?
- Pourquoi (why) êtes vous mécontents?
- Pourquoi avez-vous du chagrin?
- Serais-tu content, si tu avais beaucoup de livres?

Oui, nous avons une visite.

- Non, Monsieur, j'aurai demain une visite.
- Nous avons été hier au spectacle.
- Oh! oui, Monsieur, je serai content.
- Nous avons beaucoup d'amis.
- J'ai reçu une lettre de Paris.

Il a été à Berlin.

- Non, Madame, ils sont pauvres.
- Non, nous sommes mécontents.
- Nous avons été à l'église.
- Nous serons à l'école.
- Oui, elle a été longtemps malade.
- Nos (our) habits sont chez le tailleur.
- Oh! oui, nous avons beaucoup d'affaires.
- Nous avons eu une triste (sad) nouvelle.
- Notre mère est très malade.
- Oui, Monsieur, je serais bien content.
- \*) Put this pronoun before the verb == *laurons*.
- \*\*) See the foot-note 2. page 48.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar.

# ELEVENTH LESSON.

Determinative Adjectives.

These words always take their place before a substantive and are declined with de and à. They are divided into four classes: demonstrative, interrogative, possessive and numeral adjectives.

1) Demonstrative adjectives.

These are:

Ce, fem. cette, this; plur. ces, these.

Ue...ci, fem. ostte - ci, this (here); plur. ces - ci. Ce...la, fem. oette - la, that; plur. ces - la, those. Le même, fem. la même, the same; plur. les mêmes.

## E **x** a m p l e s.

Ce chapeat, this hat. cette ville, this town. Ce garçon-ci, this boy (here). cette femme-ci, this lady (here). ces arbres-ci, these trees (here). ces arbres-là, that lady. ces arbres-là, those trees.

#### Declension.

G. de ce chapeau, of this hat. Dat. à ce chapeau, to this hat,

NB. Before a masculine noun, which begins with a vowel or h mute, *cet* is used instead of *ce*; in the plural there is no difference. Ex.:

cet arbre, this tree (instead of ce arbre).

cet habit, this or that coat (instead of ce habit).

pl. ces arbres, these trees. -- ces habits, these coats.

2) Interrogative adjective.

This is in the singular quel, fem. quelle, — plur. quels, quelles, which? or what? Ex.:

Quel livre, which book? pl. quels livres, which or what Quelle feur, which or what flower? [books?

It answers also to the exclamative what a -! Ex.: Quel beau tableau / what a beautiful picture!

#### Words.

La plante, the plant. le champ, the field. la couleur, the colour. la fille, the girl. le bouf, the ox. la vache, the cow. *Cheure*, f. 'the hour.

l'œuf, m. the egg. haut, f. haute, high. beau, f. belle, beautiful. grand, f. grande, large, great. bon, f. bonne, good. trop, too. mais, but. connaissez-vous, do you know?

### Reading Exercise. 18.

Ce verre. Cette pomme-ci. Cet homme. Ces bas. Ces bottes-là. Cette boîte est haute. Ces enfants sont pauvres.\*) Le frère de ce garçon. Deux livres de ce café. Je donne ces poires à cette fille-ci. La même couleur. Nous avons acheté les mêmes plumes. J'ai vu ces chiens-là. Quels chiens avez-vous vus? Quel beau cheval! Quelle belle maison!, Le fils de cet homme-là est très grand. Quelle heure est-il? Il est trois heures (o'clock). Il est une heure.

#### Théme, 19.

This king is rich. This queen is also rich. This man is poor. These men are poor.\*) That child is not good (sage). That woman is not contented. This tree is very high. Those trees are not very high.\*) Whose (à qui) is this pencil? Whose are these pens? The colour of that dress is beautiful (belle). The field of that man is large. These oxen are bigger (plus grands) than those cows. I give the bread to this boy. I give these flowers to those girls. The parents of those children are very good. Which boy? Which apples? What a beautiful picture! The pleasure of those girls was not very great. What o'clock is it (transl.: which hour is it)? It is four o'clock (transl.: four hours). We have read (lu) the same books.

#### Conversation.

A qui est ce canif? A qui sont ces gants? Où est la fille de cette femme? Connaissez-vous cette fleur? Connaissez-vous le père de ce garçon-là?

Il est à ma sœur. Ils sont à Mademoiselle Julie. Elle est au jardin.

C'est une rose.

Non, mais je connais (I know) sa mère.

# \*) These adjectives take an s in the plural; see 16th Lesson, B.

4\*

- 52 --- '

Quel papier voulez-vous?

Ces plumes - ci sont - elles bonnes?

Cette eglise est-elle haute? Quelle est cette lettre?

A qui donnez-vous ces fleurs? A qui donnez - vous ces cravons?

Trouve-t-on de l'or dans ce pays?

Voulez-vous (will you have) ces bas-ci ou ces gants-là?

Trouvez-vous ces couleurs belles?

Quelle heure est-il?

Donnez-moi ce papier-là. Oui, elles sont très bonnes.

Oui, elle est très haute. C'est une lettre de ma tante. Je les donne à cette fille-ci. Je les donne à ce garçon-là.

Oui, Monsieur, ce pays-ci est riche en or.

Donnez-moi ces gants-là.

Oui, ces couleurs sont très belles.

Il est quatre heures. .

# TWELFTH LESSON.

# Possessive adjectives.

These are called in most other grammars conjunctive possessive pronouns. They are:

mon,	fem.	ma,	plur.	<i>mes</i> , my.
ton,	"	ta,	"	tes, thy.
son,	".	sa,	"	ses, his, her, its.
notre,	n	notre	, "	nos, our.
votre ,	"	votre,	, ,,	vos, your.
leur,	"	leur,	"	leurs, their.

#### Examples.

Mon père, ta mère, ses frères, notre livre, ves chats, leurs parents. In de mon père, de ta mère, de tes frères etc. Dat. à mon-père, à ta sœur, à leurs parents etc.

#### Remarks.

1) The possessive adjectives are repeated in French before each substantive, and agree with it in gender and number:

Mon frère et ma sœur, my brother and sister.

2) Nevertheless mon, ton, son are used instead of ma, ta, sa, before feminine words beginning with a vowel or h mute, in order to avoid the hiatus which would result from the meeting of the two vowels. Ex.:

Mon amie, my (female) friend. — son âme, his soul.

8) Son, sea, sea, mean both his and her and agree in both meanings with the following noun, as:

Le père aime son fils, the father loves his son.

La mère aime son fils et sa fille, the mother loves her son and her daughter.

4) In French votre is, from politeness, often preceded by the words Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle; plur. Messieurs, Mesdames, Mesdemoiselles, which are not expressed in Englicht, as:

Monsieur votre père, your father. Mademoiselle votre sœur, your sister. Messieurs vos frères, your brothers.

#### Words.

La bourse, the purse.	la grandmère, the grandmother.
la montre, the watch.	la poche, the pocket.
la tante, the aunt.	arrivé, e, arrived.
la canne, the stick.	parti, e, departed.
la casquette, the cap.	perdu, lost.
le grand-père, the grandfather.	trouvé, found.

#### Reading Exercise. 20.

Mon père est bon. Ma mère est bonne.\*) Ton frère est grand. Ta sœur n'est pas grande. Notre oncle a été riche. Votre tante est pauvre. Leurs parents seront contents.\*) Mes cousins et mes cousines sont arrivés. Les pères aiment leurs enfants. Notre grand'mère a perdu sa bourse. J'ai trouvé la bourse de votre grand'mère. Mon amie est arrivée. Madame votre mère est-elle ici (here)? Non, elle n'est pas ici; elle est à Londres. Mesdemoiselles vos sœurs sont parties.

\*) In French, the adjective must always agree in gender and number with its substantive, see p. 67, C.

#### Thème. 21.

My dog is old. Thy book is good. My book and (my) pen. My books and pens. Our fields are large (pl.). Your garden is beautiful. Your flowers are beautiful (belles). His uncle is arrived. Her aunt is departed (f.). My sister has lost her watch. Our sisters have found their letters. These children have lost their father. These parents have lost their children. Here is (voici) thy stick. Your cousins (f.) have been in our garden. My soul is immortal (immortelle). We have received this letter from our aunt. Our uncle's horse (invert the horse of our uncle) is old. Where is your father? Where is your sister? I have found the purse of your mother.

#### Conversation.

Où est mon frère? Il est allé au jardin. Où est ton livre? Le voilà sur la table. Qui a perdu sa casquette? Charles a perdu sa casquette. Qui a trouvé nos crayons? Henri les (them) a trouvés. De qui est cette lettre? Elle est de notre grand-père. Que cherchez-vous (do you Je cherche mes plumes. look for)? A qui est cette canne? Elle est à Monsieur votre oncle. A qui sont ces gants? Ils sont à Mademoiselle votre sœur. Voulez-vous mes crayons? Non, merci (thank you). Connaissez-vous mon amie? Oui, je la connais (know her). Où était Monsieur votre père? Il a été à Berlin. Où as-tu trouvé ta bourse? Elle était dans ma poche. Qu'ont perdu nos voisins? Ils ont perdu leur argent. Qui est arrivé aujourd'hui?

La fille de mon oncle.

Non, Monsieur, nous avons été dans notre jardin.

C'est un cadeau (present) de ma grand'mère.

# THIRTEENTH LESSON.

Avez-vous été dans votre

De qui avez-vous reçu cette

champ?

belle canne?

## Of numbers.

There are in French three kinds of numeral adjectiver viz cardinal, ordinal and indefinite numerals.

# 7. Cardinal Numbers. are -

55

Un, une, one. deux, two. trois, three. quatre, four. cinq, five. *six*, six. sept, seven. huit, eight. neuf, nine. dix, ten. onze, eleven. douze, twelve. treize, thirteen. quatorze, fourteen. quinze, fifteen seize, sixteen, dix - sept, seventeen. dix-huit, eighteen. dix-neuf, nineteen. vingt, twenty. vingt-et-un, twenty one. vingt-un, vingt-deux, twenty two. vingt-trois, twenty three. vingt-quatre, twenty four. vingt-cinq, twenty five etc. trente, thirty. quarante, forty.

cinquante, fifty. soigante, sixty. soixante-dix, seventy. soixante-anze, seventy one. soixante-douze, seventy two. soixante treize, seventy three. soixante-quatorze, seventy four. soixante-quinze, seventy five. soixante-seize, seventy six. soixante-dix-sept, seventy seven. soixante-dix-huit, seventy eight. soizante-diz-neuf, seventy nihe. quatre-vingts, eighty. quatre-vingt-un, cighty one. quatre - vingt - deux, eighty two. quatre-vingt-dix, ninety. . : . ) quatre-vingt-once, ninety one. quatre-vingt-douze, ninety two. quatre-vingt-treize, ninety three, cent, a hundred. etc. cent un. a hundred and one. cent et un, ) cent deux, a hundred & two etc. deux centr, two hundred. trois cents, three hundred, etc. quinze cents, fifteen hundred, etc. mills, mil, a thousand. (un million, a million.)

Examples.

Cinq enfants, five children. Trente-six chevaux, thirty six horses. Trois cent quatre-vingt-quinze.aunes, 395 yards. L'an mil huit cent cinquante 224, the year 1851.

### Remarks.

1) The cardinal numerals do not admit of a change in their terminations, except cent and quatre-vingt. Cent takes an s, when several hundreds, not followed by another number, are mentioned, as:

Trois cents frames, 300 frances quatre vingto écoliers

80 Scholars

Sept cents personnes, 700 persons. — But: Sept cent vingt personnes, 720 persons.

(jub) Guante-vingt loses its s, when followed by another numeral. Ex.:

Quatro-vingto écoliere, 80 pupile; but

Quatre-vingt-deux aunes, 82 yards.

3) Cont and mills are never accompanied by the indefinite article as in English. Ex.:

A hundred or a thousand pounds, cent oy mille livres.

4) When one thousand is used for dates, it is rendered in French by *mil*, with one *l* only, thus:

L'an or en mil huit cent cinquante-huit == in the year 1858. 5) The expression: "I am 20, 30, 40 etc. years old", cannot be rendered literally, but must be expressed thus: J'ai vingt ans, trente ans etc. How old are you? is translated: Quel âge avez-vous? Ex.:

Quel âge a votre frère, how old is your brother? Il a dix huit ans, he is eighteen years old.

6) Collective numbers are:

Une huitaine, a series of eight, or alrut eight Une dixaine, a series of ten, half a score. Une douzaine, a dozen. — Une containe, the hundred. Une vingtaine, a score.

Un millisr, the thousand. — Un million, a million.

#### Words,

La fille, the daughter.	le jour, the day.
le veau, the calf.	la nuit, the night.
le cochon, the swine.	le mois, the month.
la brebis, the sheep.	la fièvre, the fever.
le lièvre, the hare.	l'an, m. & l'année, f. the year.
le chevreuil, the deer.	l'heure, f. the hour.
né, f. née, born, in t	la minute, the minute.
la rue, the street.	le florin, the florin.
	le pied, the foot.
Tâge; m. the age."	vivait, lived. mourut, died.
la semains, the week.	combien, how much, how many.
	es. sont, make. ou, or.

#### Reading Exercise. 22.

J'ai trois fils. Vous avez quatre filles. Mon oncle a ea dix enfants. Il a perdu cinq fils et deux filles. Demain nous aurons 35 bœufs, 42 vaches, 88 veaux 76 cochons. Notre voisin a eu 495 brebis. Combien de lièvres avez-vous tués (shot)? Nous avons tué 23 lièvres et 14 chevreuils. Sept et huit font quinze. 24 et 36 font 60. 4 fois 8 font 82. 7 fois 9 font 63. 21 fois 82 font 672. Je suis né en 1814, et mon frère en 1818. Ma mère est née en 1799. La ville de Londres compte 10,000 rues, 600 églises, 249,500 maisons et plus de (more than) deux millions d'habitants. Lyourgue vivait en 880 avant Jésus-Christ. Quel âge avez-vous? J'ai quinze ans.

#### Thème. 23.

I have had three horses and five dogs. My cousin has 34 sheep. My neighbour (m.) had 36 oxen; he has sold 18. A week has 7 days. 30 days make a month. 12 months or 52 weeks make a year. A year has 365 days. I was  $(je \ suis)$  born in the year (en) 1828. I am 30 years old. My sister was born (f.) in the year 1841; she is 17 years old. How much is (font) three times nine? 3 times 9 make 27. 6 times 8 is 48. 35 and 42 are 77. How much is 125 and 264? My mother has had the flever daring 6 weeks. A (the) day has 24 hours,' an (the) hour 60 minutes. Give to Charles 32 florins and to Lewis 33 florins. Here are 200 pounds of sugar. The city of (d.) Heidelberg had in 1850 18,502 inhabitants.

#### Conversation.

Combien de fils votre oncle Il a encore trois fils a-t-il? Combien d'enfants a-t-il eus? Il a eu sept enfants. Où sont vos deux cousines? 'Elles' sont à l'église. Combien de maisons a la ville Elle a environ 5400 maisons. de Strasbourg? Combien d'habitants a la ville Elle a plus de deux millions de Londres? d'habitants. Quelle est la hauteur (the Elle a 327 pieds de hauteur. height) de cette église? Combien font 5 et 7? 5 et 7 font 12. Combien font 15 et 25? 15 et 25 font 40. Combien font 20, 35 et 45? 20 et 35 et 45 font cent. Combien font 6 fois 8? 6 fois 8 font 48.

Combien font 12 fois 24.9 11: 12 feis 24 font 288. Quel âge avez-vous? J'ai quatorze ans. Quel âge a wotre sœur? Elle a 18 ans. Dans quelle année est-elle née? Elle est née en 1840. Combien de florins avez-vous J'ai reçu 50 florins. recus de votre père? Combien de jours a une an- Une année a 365 jours et six nee? Da la contrato cheures. Alternation of the . Combien de semaines font un Quatre semaines et deux ou mois? Out of the mois of the sector of the sector in mois. Combien de mois font une Douze mois font une année. année? ; / - · · , . Avez-vous été hier à la Oui, Monsieur, toute la journée chasse? (all day). Avez-vous tué beaucoup de Nous avons tué 35 lièvres. lièvres? Avez-vous aussi tué des On en a tué 5 ou 6. chevreuils? Charles a-t-il assez d'argent? Oh oui, il a 22 florins. . .. .,

# FOURTEENTH LESSON.

· 11 - 14

# Ordinal Numbers.

Except le premier and le second, the ordinal numbers are formed from the cardinal by changing e mute into *idme*; and by adding this syllable to those which end in another consonant. Among these, however,  $cin\bar{q}$  takes u before *idme* (cinquidme) and neuf changes the f into v(neuvidme). They are as follows:

le premier, ( the first.	le septième, the seventh.
<b>1</b> /	te huitième, the eighth.
le second,	le neuvième, the ninth.
ld seconde, { the second.	le dixième, the tenth.
le, la deuxième, )	le onzième, the eleventh.
le troisième, the third.	le douzième, the twelfth.
le quatrième, the fourth.	le treizième, the thirteenth.
le conquième, the fifth.	le quatoreième," the fourteenth.
le sixième, the sixth.	le quinzième, the fifteenth.

(GR))

le seizième, the 16th. le soixante-douzième, the 72nd etc. le dix-septième, the 17th. le quatrè-vingtième, the 80th. le dix-huitième, the 18th. le quatre singt-unième, the 81st. le dix neuvième ; the 19th. le quatre-vingt-dixième, the 90th. le vingtième, the 20th. le centième, the 100st. le vingt-unième, the 21st. le cent et unième, the 101st. le vingt-deuxieme, the 22nd etc. le cent deuxième, the 102nd etc. le cent vingtième, the 120th. le trentième, the 30th. le quarantième, the 40th. le-deuit centième, the 200th. le six cent soixante - quinzième, le cinquantième, the 50th. le soixantième, the 60th. the 675th. le soixante-dixième, the 70th. le millième, the 1000th. le dernier, the last. le soixante-onzième, the 71st. 4.11.14 set to 2 con GF Remarks. ·· · · · · · 1) Unième is used only after vingt, prente, quarante etc., as: Charles est le vingt-unième de sa classe 2) Days of the month (except le premier and le dernier) are expressed by cardinal numbers, as: The first of April, le premier Avril. - The 2nd, 3rd, 4th etc. of May, le deux, trois, quatre etc. Mai (or de Mai). The eleventh of March, *le onze* (without apostrophe) Mars. The twentieth of Juin, le vingt Juin. The question: "What day of the month is it to-day?" is translated : Quel quantième avons-nous aujourd'hui! To the English "on the sixth" etc. answers the French le six etc. 3) Proper names of princes, too, take in French the cardinal numbers, without the article, except the first and sometimes the second; as: Henri premier, Henry the first. Henri second or deux, Henry the second. Henri quatre, Henry the fourth. Louis quatorze, Lewis 'the 14th. Note. The German emperor Charles V bears in French the name of Charles-Quint, and the Pope Sixtus V that of Sixte-Quint. 4) The distinctive numbers (adverbs of number) are formed from the ordinal by adding ... inent or -ement to the final, as:

Premièrement, first. Deuxièmement, secondly. Troisièmement, thirdly etc.
5) Fractional numbers are expressed by ordinal numbers, as
in English, but only from five upwards, as:
Un cinquième, a fifth. — Un sizième, a sixth.
Un huitième, an eighth. — Un divième, a, tenth.
The others are as follows:
A half = un demi, f. une demie. The half = la moitié. A third = un tiers. A quarter or fourth, un quart.
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
6) The hours of the day or night are expressed thus:
Two o'clock, deux heures. A quarter past two, deux heures et (un) quart. Half past two, deux heures et demis.
A quarter to three, trois hourse moins un quart.
At twelve o'clock (noon), à midi.
At twelve o'clock (midnight), à minuit.
6) <i>Broportional</i> numbers which express a quantity multiplied, are:
simple, simple. quadruple, fourfold. double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold. Words. Janvier, January. Dimanche, Sunday.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold. Words. Janvier, January. Février, February. Lundi, Monday.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold. Words. Janvier, January. Février, February. Mars, March. Janvier, January. Janvier, January. Mars, March.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold. Words. Janvier, January. Février, February. Mare, March. Avril, April. Mai, May. Janvier, January. Jumanche, Sunday. Jumanche, Sunday. Mardi, Tuesday (& on Tuesday). Mercredi, Wednesday. Jeudi, Thursday.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold. <b>Words.</b> Janvier, January. Féorier, February. Mars, March. Avril, April. Juin, June. Juin, June. Juint, July. Septembre, September. Octobre, October. Novembre, November. Dimanche, centuple, a hundred fold. <b>Words.</b> Jimanche, Sunday. Lundi, Monday. Mardi, Tuesday (& on Tuesday). Mardi, Tuesday. Jeudi, Thursday. Jeudi, Friday. Samedi, Saturday. La partie, the part, portion. Ia place, the place. Décembre, December. Janvier, the class.
double, double, twofold. centuple, centuple, a hundred triple, triple, threefold. fold.

60 --

•

#### Reading Exercise. 94.

Je suis dans ma soixante-unième année. Hier ce fut le six Mai, aujourd'hui c'est le sept. Charles est le premier de sa classe. Louis est le neuvième, Henri le dix-huitième et Jules le dernier. Le pape (*pope*) Grégoire VII était l'ennemi de Henri IV. Nous vivons dans le dix-neuvième siècle. Romulus fut le premier, Numa Pompilius, le second roi de Rome. Pierre premier fut surnommé (*was surnamed*) le grand. Avril est le quatrième, Juin le sixième et Décembre le dernier mois de l'année. La semaine est la cinquante-deuxième partie de l'année. Ma sœur Élisabeth est née le vingt-huit Juillet, mil huit cent trente-cinq. J'ai reçu trois livres et demie de café et cinq livres et un quart de sucre. Charles XII était roi de Suède. Le 27 (de) Septembre 1829, un incendie détruisit (*destroged*) à Constantinople 12,000 maisons; 7000 personnes périrent (*perisked*) dans les flammes.

#### Thème. 25.

A month is the twelfth part of a year. What day of the month is it to-day? We have to-day the 24th [of] June. I am the third, my cousin John the seventh. January is the first, February the second, March the third month of the year. Napoleon died at St. Helena (Ste Hélène) the 5th of Mai 1821. My grandmother is at present in her 78th year. What o'clock (quelle heure) is it? It is four o'clock or half past four. Lewis the sixteenth, king of (de) France, was beheaded (fut décapité) at Paris the 21st January 1793. Frederick the second was king of Prussia. Peter the great of Russia died at St. Petersburgh (St Petersbourg) the 8th of February 1725 in the 53rd year of his age. We have received 61/2 pounds of coffee, 11/2 pounds of sugar and 21/4 pounds of tea.

#### Conversation

Quelle place as-tu?	J'ai la vingtième place.
Quelle place a ton frère?	Il est le dix-septième de la classe.
Dans quelle classe est Richard?	Il est en seconde.
Quand êtes-vous arrivé?	Je suis arrivé Dimanche, pre- mier Juin.
Quand avez-vous vu votre mère?	Ce fut hier à cinq heures.
Mademoiselle Sophie est-elle la première ou la deuxième?	Je crois ( <i>I think</i> ) qu'elle est la deuxième.
Quel âge a-twelle?	Elle a quinze ans.

Dans quelle année est-elle née? Elle est née en 1843. Au mois d'Octobre. Dans quel mois? . Quel jour? ٠ · Le onze. 1 Nous parlons de Louis XVI. De quel roi parlez-vous? En 1793. Quand mourut-il? Quelle heure est-il? Il est sept heures et (un) quart 'ou sept heures et demie. A quelle heure êtes - vous Je suis parti à huit heures

parti? Quel quantième avons-nous (Nous avons le vingt-cinq.

aujourd'hui?

Quand mourut Charlemagne? Il mourut en 814, le 28 Janvier.

moins un quart. C'est le vingt-cinq.

Combien d'aunes voulez-vous? Donnez-moi seize aunes et trois quarts.

Quel âge a votre grand-père? Il est à présent dans sa quatrevingtième année.

# FIFTEENTH LESSON.

Indefinite numerals.

These words are classed by some grammarians among the pronouns; but they are not such. Some of them may be used without a substantive, and then they are used pronominally. The indefinite numeral adjectives take their place always before a noun substantive, and must agree with it in gender and number. They are as follows:

Chaque, m. & f. { every. quelques, pl. some. tout, f. toute. certain, e, a certain. aucun, e, i not one, no. plusieurs, pl., m. & f. several. divers, f. -es, différents, f. -tes, pl. different. nul, nulle, maint, e, many a. quelque, some, any.

#### Examples.

Chaque maison, every house. nulls règle, no rule. toute ville, every town. aucun pays, no country.

maint homme, many a man. quelque argent, some money. quelques pommes, some apples. certains mots, certain words. plusieurs écoliers, several pujels. entreprises.

## Remarks,

1) Tout has the double meaning of every and all or whole; in the latter case, it is accompanied by an article or a possessive adjective. Whereas toute ville (without article) signifies every town, toute la ville means all the' town or the whole town. The plural of tout is masc. tous, fem. toutes. Ex.:

Tous les hommes, all men. Toutes les lettres, all the letters. Tous ses emfants, all his children.

It is thus declined:

Singular.

#### Plural.

5

. ...

N. ▲.		toute	la	ville	.'		)	tous.	les	hommes
				villa .			de	tous.	les	hammes
D.	à	toute	ła	ville.		•.1	à	tous	las	hommes.

2) Aucun and nul can only be used of individual things, and answer to the English not one. They require the particle ne to be added to the verb. (In most cases, however, the English no is translated *point de* or *pas de*; see the 32nd Lesson: of Adverbs.) Ex.:

Je n'ai aucune faute, I have not one mistake.

Je n'ai p as de (or point de) faute, I have no mistake. 3) Quelconque, whatever, is not to be considered as a numeral adjective, because it takes its place after the noun:

Un livre quelconque, a book whatever.

#### Words.

L'épine, f. the thorn.	le payson, the peasant.
la leçon, the lesson.	prêtez, lend. la faute, the fault.
la chose, the thing.	<i>Verreur</i> , f. the error, mistake.
le temps, time, weather.	la version, the translation.
la nouvelle, the news.	mortel, -le, mortal.
le nom, the name.	la femme, the woman.

le motif, the motive. rare, rare. froid, e, cold. l'ennemi, m. the enomy. le même, the same.

depuis, since. aime, loves. quelque chose, something.

#### Reading Exercise. 26.

Nulle rose n'est sans épines. Notre maître de musique donne chaque jour six leçons. Plusieurs personnes sont arrivées de Vienne. Dieu est le père de tous les hommes. Chaque âge a ses plaisirs et ses chagrins. Tous les hommes sont mortels. Tout ce pays est pauvre. Toute chose a son temps. Je n'ai aucune nouvelle de mon frère. Je connais quelques familles riches dans cette ville. Nous avons reçu aujourd'hui diverses lettres. Plusieurs hommes ont le même nom. Maint paysan est très pauvre. On a parlé (spoken) de différentes entreprises. Prêtez-moi quelques livres. Nul homme n'est toujours (always) heureux. Mon père est malade depuis quelques semaines.

#### Thème. 27.

Every child likes playing (le jeu). Each town has a church. You have several faults in your translation. Charles has no fault. Many a woman has lost her child. Every man is liable (sujet) to error. My brother has found some pencils, whose (à qui) are they? The whole night was cold (froide). All the houses of this town are very high (hautes). I do not know the names of all animals. John has lost several pens. The king had different motives. This father has lost all his children. No rule without exception (exception). Certain books are not good for young people (la jeunesse). I have not one enemy. Every mother loves her children. All the children love (aiment) their parents. It is rare to have several good friends.

Conversation.

•Ai-je des fautes dans ma version?	Oui, mon ami, tu as plusieurs fautes.
Quelles sont les fautes?	Les voici.
Qui a dit cela (said so)?	Tous les enfants l'ont dit.
Où trouve-t-on cette plante?	On la ( <i>it</i> ) trouve dans tous les pays de l'Europe.
A qui sont ces maisons?	Toutes ces maisons sont à mon oncle.
Quels motifs avez-vous eus?	Nous avons eu divers motifs.

- A-t-on toujours plusieurs amis?
- Qui a perdu son enfant?
- As-tu beaucoup de fautes?
- Qui est mortel?
- A-t-elle trouvé quelque chose?
- Les enfants ont-ils trouvé des fieurs?
- Où as-tu été la semaine dernière?
- A quoi (to what) les hommes sont-ils sujets?

Non, c'est rare.

Mainte mère a perdu son enfant. Non, je n'ai aucune faute.

- Tous les hommes sont mortels.
- Oui, elle a trouvé une bourse. Oui, ils ont trouvé différentes fleurs.
- J'ai été dans plusieurs villes.

Ils sont sujets à l'erreur.

# SIXTEENTH LESSON.

## Of Adjectives.

Adjectives are liable to the changes of gender and number.

A. Of the feminine of French adjectives.

General rule. The feminine of adjectives is formed by adding an e to the masculine termination, if this does not end in e. Ex.:

petit, small, little; fem. petite.

grand, great, large; fem. grande.

poli, polite; fem. polie. appliqué, diligent, f. appliquée.

Particular rules. 1) Adjectives which end in e mute, are alike in the feminine gender, as:

facile, easy, fem. facile. sage, wise, fem. sage.

2) Adjectives ending in el, eil and n, further, monosyllables ending in s and t double their final consonant before e mute of the feminine, as:

masc.	fem.	mase.	fem.
cruel, cruel, pareil, like, such,	cruelle. pare <b>i</b> lle.	gros, big, bas, lo₩,	grosse. basse.
bon, good,	bonne.	sot, stupid,	sotte.
Otto, French ConvGramm	nar.	5	

3) Adjectives which end in f, become feminine by changing f into ve, as:

masc.	fem.	masc.	fem.
vif, quick, lively,	vive.	actif, active,	active.
neuf, new,	neuve.	<i>bref</i> , short,	brève.

4) Adjectives ending in x, change this x into se, as: masc. fem. masc. fem. heureux, happy, lucky, heureuse. jaloux, jealous, jalouse. faux, false, fausse. paresseux, lazy, paresseuse.

5) Adjectives which end in er and et, take in the feminine the accent grave, as:

masc. fem. masc. fem. léger, light, *Légère.* complet, complete, complète. amer, bitter, amère. inquiet, uneasy, inquiète.

6) Of the adjectives ending in c, the three following change this c into che, as:

blanc, white; fem. blanche. franc, frank; fem. franche. sec, dry; fem. seche.

The others ending in c take -que, as:

turc, turkish; fem. turque. grec, greek; fem. grecque. public, public; fem. publique.

7) The following adjectives do not quite agree with the foregoing rules:

, masc	fem.	. masc.	fem.
long, long,	longue.	exprès, express,	expresse.
aigu, sigu	i <b>aiguë.</b>	muet, dumb, mute,	muette.
frais, fresh,	fraîche.	sujet, subject,	sujette.
épais, thick,	épaisse.	malin, wicked,	maligne.
doux, sweet, s	oft, douce.	<i>bénin</i> , benign,	bén <b>igne.</b>

8) The following are more irregular in the formation of their feminine, as:

beau (bel), beautiful; fem. belle. nouveau (nouvel), new; fem. nouvelle. mou (mol), soft; fem. molle. fou (fol), foolish; fem. folle. vieux (visil), old; fem. vieille. Note. The above words in parenthesis bel, nouvel etc. are used before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or h mute, as: un bel arbre, a fine tree; un nouvel ordre, a new order; un fol espoir, a foolish hope.

B. Of the plural of adjectives.

The rules given for the plural of substantives apply also to adjectives. Ex.:

grand, f. grands; plur. grands, f. grandes. appliqué, f. appliqués; plur. appliqués, f. appliqués. gras, f. grasse, fat; plur. gras, f. grasses. royal, f. royale, royal; plur. roy a u x, f. royales. beau, f. belle, heautiful; plur. beaux, f. belles. vieux, f. vieille, old; plur. vieux, f. vieilles.

Fou, mou and bleu make in the plural fous, mous and bleus.

## C. Declension of adjectives.

#### Singular.

N. *le bon livre*, the good book
G. *du bon livre*, of the good book
D. *au bon livre*, to the good book.

#### Plural.

 $\mathbf{N}$ . (les bons livres, the good books

G. des bons livres, of the good books

D. aux bons livres, to the good books.

D. Concord of adjectives.

The adjective must agree in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun which it qualifies,\*) as:

La grande maison, the large house.

La maison est grande, the house is large.

La jolie rose, the pretty rose.

Ces roses sont très jolies, these roses are very pretty.

5\*

<sup>\*)</sup> To practise this rule, the Exercises 19, 20 and 21 should be repeated.

# - 68 --

#### Words.

La médecine, the medecine. la gloire, the glory. la dent, the tooth. l'ivoire, m. ivory. la justice, justice. la paix, peace. François, Francis. la montagne, the mountain. la liberté, liberty. la robe, the dress, gown. Cherbe, f. the grass.

la voix, the voice. utile, useful. agréable, agreeable. amer, amère, bitter. jeune, young. mûr, e, ripe. aimable, amiable. immortel, -le, immortal. paresseux, -se, idle, lazy. cher, chère, dear. malheureux, se, unhappy. obéissant, e, obedient. précieux, se, precious.

#### Reading Exercise. 28.

Cet arbre est très gros. Voici deux gros arbres. La médecine n'était pas bonne; elle était très amère. Nos enfants sont heureux. Vos filles ne sont pas heureuses; elles sont très malheureuses. Nous ne sommes pas malheureux, nous ne sommes pas malades. La gloire de Christophe Colomb sera immortelle. Vous seriez aimable, si (if) vous étiez appliquées. Voici une très jolie maison, elle est encore neuve. Cette église est vieille. Vos chevaux sont vieux. Les châteaux royaux sont très beaux. Les dents longues et blanches de l'éléphant fournissent (*furnish*) l'ivoire. La fille de notre voisin est muette. Léopold et François sont deux écoliers très paresseux. Ils ne sont pas obéissants. J'avais une oie qui (*which*) était grosse et grasse. La justice est la mère de la paix publique.

#### Thème, 29.

The rose is pretty; the violets are also pretty. My room is small; your house is large. This news is not true. My father is good; my mother is also good. These geese are big and fat. What beautiful houses! Henry's books are useful and agreeable. Your windows are very small and low. My body is mortal, but my soul is immortal. Our town is very old. My little cousin (f.) has been (est) dumb since her fourth year. Her sister is not handsome. This house is well situated (*bien située*).

This apple is not ripe, but these pears are too (*trop*) ripe. Is this butter fresh? The butter is fresh, but the water is not fresh. The grass is very thick. (The) ivory is

white; my teeth are not so (sf) white. Her voice is very' sweet. I have received a long letter from my father. What a foolish (§. 8. Note) hope! That medecine was very bitter. Louisa's dress is beautiful, but her bonnet is not very beautiful. My shoes are very old. The leaf is dry. My mother is happy; my sisters are also happy. Your letter was too short. That girl is very stupid and idle.

#### Conversation.

- L'âme de l'homme est-elle Non, elle est immortelle. mortelle?
- Qui est malade chez vous?
- Prend-elle (does she take) de la médecine?
- Qui est arrivé?
- A-t-il apporté quelque chose?

Étes-vous heureux?

- Pourquoi (why) êtes vous malheureux?
- Comment (how) trouvez-vous cette rose?
- Avez-vous apporté mes chemises (shirts)?
- Votre robe est-elle vieille ou neuve?

Notre version est-elle longue ?

Où trouve-t-on cette jolie plante?

Lc petit Charles n'est-il pas un très bel enfant?

Comment trouvez-vous ces deux écoliers ?

- Sont-ils obéissants?
- Avez-vous perdu quelque chose?

C'est ma tante qui est malade. Oui, elle prend une médecine

très amère.

Mon oncle Richard.

- Il a apporté un bel oiseau, un perroquet (parroi).
- Oh! non, nous sommes malheureux.
- Nous avons perdu nos bons parents.

Je la trouve très belle.

Oui, les voilà (there they are), elles sont sèches.

- Elle n'est pas vieille; elle est toute neuve.
- Non, elle n'est pas bien longue.
- Elle se trouve (is found) dans nos champs derrière la maison.

Oui, il est un très bel enfant.

Ils sont très paresseux.

Non, ils ne sont pas obéi sants. Oui, Monsieur, j'ai perdu ma vieille casquette.

# SEVENTEENTH LESSON.

## The place of Adjectives.

The place of adjectives is not, as in English, always before the noun; on the contrary, most of them are placed after it. The following are the principal rules:

A. Adjectives placed before the substantive.

beau, fine. beau, fine. ben, good. grand, great, large. gros, big. beauvais, bad. mauvais, bad. meilleur, better. better. meiueux, old. beauvais, bad. meilleur, better. beauvais, bad. meilleur, better. beauvais, bad. meilleur, better. beauvais, bad. meilleur, better. beauvais, bad. beauvais, beauva

Examples.

- Un beau pays, a fine country. Un bon ami, a good friend. Une grande ville, a large town or city. Un jeune lion, a young lion. Un mauvais lit, a bad bed. Un meilleur avis; a better advice. Un vieux soldat, an old soldier etc.

Note. Grand is placed after its noun, when it signifies tall: un homme grand, a tall man.

NB. It is to be observed, that substantives preceded by an adjective, when used in the partitive sense, take only de before them, for both genders and numbers, instead of du, de la or des. (See p. 28, 4.) Ex.:

de bon vin, (some) good wine.

de mauvaise encre, (some) bad ink.

de belles fleurs, beautiful flowers.

de grands vaisseaux, large vessels.

Note. Exceptions to this rule are: du bon sens, good sense; des jeunes gens, young men; des petits pois, sweet pees.

B. Adjectives placed after the substantive.

1) Those which denote a figure, colour or taste. Ex.: Une table ronde, a round table.

Un habit noir, a black coat.

Une robe blanche, a white dress.

De l'eau chaude, warm water.

Un fruit amer, a bitter fruit. Le ciel bleu, the blue sky.

2) Those of nations. Ex.:

La langue française, the French language. Un vaisseau anglais, un English vessel, Un soldat prussien, a Prussian soldier.

3) The participles used as adjectives. Ex.: Un livre amusant, an amusing book. Ma fille chérie, my beloved daughter. Des fleurs flatmies, withered flowers.

4) Those which end in al, ile, ule, ique, able, ible and esque. Ex.:

Un pas egal, an equal step.

Un thème facile, an easy exercise.

. . Une chose incroyable, an incredible thing.

Un insecte nuisible, a hurtful insect.

Note. With these, however, the rule does not always hold; some of them come under the head of C.

C. Adjectives which may be placed before or after the substantive.

1) Many adjectives may take either place, according as they are taken in their *literal* sense or in a *figurative* one. When taken in **their** literal sense, they follow, when taken figuratively, they precede the substantive. as:

Figuratively.

#### Literally.

Une tendre amitié, a tender Une viande tendre, a tender meat. friendship.

mon pauere enfant, my poor un enfant pauere, a poor (indichild. gent) child.

un profond silence, a deep un fossé profond, a deep ditch. silence.

2) Many adjectives take their place sometimes before, sometimes after the noun, without changing their signification, simply for the sake of euphony or stress; therefore, many of those mentioned under B. 4), as coming *after*, may be placed *before* their noun, especially when the adjective refers to something which is expressed or stated in the foregoing sentence. This is mostly to be seen, when the adjective is preceded by the *definite* article or by *ee*, *cette*. We say for instance: *une vérité affreuse* but l'*affreuse* or *cette affreuse vérité*:

L'inflexible dureté des riches.

The inflexible hardness of the rich.

Cette affligeante nouvelle se répandit dans la ville. This afflicting news spread (soon) in the town.

3) The following adjectives have a different meaning, according as they stand *before* or *after* their noun:

Mon cher ami, my dear friend Un livre cher, a dear book (denoting affection). (denoting the price).

- un brave homme, an honest man.
- un honnête homme, an honest man.
- une fausse clef, a double key, a picklock.

une sage-femme, a midwife.

la dernière année, the last year

(of a certain space of time.\*)

- un homme brave, a brave (= courageous) man.
- un homme honnête, a civil or polite man.

une clef fausse, a wrong key.

une femme sage, a wise woman. l'année dernière, last year (the past year).

#### Words.

Les gens, people. attentif, ve, attentive. vert, e, green. aveugle, blind. la musique, the music. noir, e, black. romain, e, Roman. l'armée, f. the army. le malheur, misfortune. le vaisseau, the vessel. américain, e, American. simple, simple. vertueux, se, virtuous. modeste, modest. laborieux, se, laborious. naturel, le, natural. le sentiment, the sentiment. la fumée, the smoke. incroyable, incredible. l'application, the application.

#### Reading Exercise. 30.

J'ai des raisins doux. Ce sont des jeunes gens attentifs. La couleur verte est la couleur de la nature. Notre voisin

<sup>\*)</sup> For instance: He spent the last year of his life at Paris, il passa la dernière année de sa vie à Paris.

a un habit bleu et une casquette rouge. Voici une jeune fille aveugle. Voulez-vous cette petite boîte? Elle a reçu une lettre amusante de sa vieille cousine. Le mois dernier, mon frère était à Stuttgart. Avez-vous de bonne encre? J'aime la langue française. J'aime aussi la musique italienne. Voici deux aunes de drap vert et quatre aunes de drap noir. Les soldats romains étaient très braves. Un été sec est très nuisible aux plantes. Mon maître de musique est un brave homme. L'armée française fut vaincue (was defeated) à Waterloo. Voici de grands vaisseaux américains. Le vrai malheur est aussi (as) rare que le vrai bonheur. Les colibris (the humming-birds) sont de beaux petits oiseaux. J'aime les jeunes filles douces, simples et modestes.

#### Thème. 31.

France is a fine country. We have a large house. Henry has a bad pen. My aunt is a virtuous woman. She is also very active and laborious. Frank is an attentive boy. Miss Bell is an amiable young lady. Is Mr. A. a polite man? Yes, he is very polite. The wasp (*la guêpe*) is a hurtful insect. Our neighbour has three small horses. This is a natural sentiment. There was (*il y avait*) a thick smoke in the room. The young man studies (*étudie*) with (an) incredible application. I have bought a round table. Give me some red paper and four black pencils.

#### Words.

La traduction, the translation. la cerise, the cherry. le thème, the exercise. le soldat, the soldier. difficile, difficult. les fruits, fruit. le lis, the lily. bleu, e, blue.

## Thème: 32

Yesterday, we had an easy translation, but our exercise for to-morrow is difficult. I like the blue sky, (the) high trees and (the) green fields. Have you ripe pears? No, Sir, the pears are not yet (*pas encore*) ripe, but we have ripe cherries. The Italian music is very agreeable. The French soldiers under Napoleon [the] first were very brave. We have good wine and good beer. Here are beautiful flowers and beautiful fruit (*pl.*). The English have large vessels. The rose and (the) lily are beautiful flowers. The last year was a bad year. I have taken (*pris*) the wrong key.

#### Conversation.

Avez-vous des noix mûres?	Elles ne sont pas encore mûres.
Quand seront-elles mures?	Dans huit jours.
Aimez-vous la musique alle- mande?	J'aime mieux (better) la mu- sique italienne.
Connaissez - vous la langue française?	Oui, je la ( <i>it</i> ) connais. Elle est très agréable.
Avez-vous des leçons d'an- glais?	J'ai tous les jours une leçon.
Ce marchand a-t-il de bon beurre?	Son beurre n'est pas frais, mais sa crême (cream) est fraiche.
Comment trouvez - vous ces jeunes lions?	Ils sont très beaux.
Votre thème est-il difficile?	Non, Monsieur, il est facile.
Combien coûte cet habit?	Il coûte trente florins. C'est un habit cher.
Où est mon cher ami Lucien?	Il est allé au concert.
A qui est ce livre amusant?	Il est à mon oncle.
A qui sont ces gants noirs?	Ils sont à Mr. Richard
Qui a perdu une casquette rouge?	C'est Jules qui l'a perdue.
Connaissez-vous un insecte nuisible?	Je connais la guêpe.
Avez-vous de bon pain et du fromage?	Voici un gros morceau de pain et un quarteron de bon fro-
Avez-vous déjà été à Stutt- gart?	mage. Oui, mon cher ami, j'y (there) fus l'année dernière.

# EIGHTEENTH LESSON.

## Degrees of comparison.

The two degrees of comparison are the comparative (le comparatif) and superlative (le superlatif).

1) The comparative is formed by placing the adverb plus, more, — the latter by placing *le plus*, fem. *la plus*, before an adjective, as:

haut, e, high; comp. plus haut, e, higher; sup. le plus haut, f. la plus haute, the highest. ٢

attentif, ve, attentive; comp. plus attentif; more attentive; sup. le plus attentif, f. la plus attentive, the most attentive.

mauvais, e, bad; comp. plus mauvais, e, worse; sup. le plus mauvais, f. la plus mauvaise, the worst.

petit, e, little, small; comp. plus petit, e, smaller; sup. le plus petit, f. la plus petite, the smallest.

Note. When a possessive adjective is placed before the superlative, the article le, la, les, is dropped, as:

Mon plus jeune frère, my youngest brother.

2) There is in French also a *lower* and *lowest* degree which is effected by the words *moins*, less, for the comparative degree, and *le moins*, f. *la moins*, the least, for the superlative, as:

- cruel, -le, cruel; comp. moins cruel, f. moins cruelle, less cruel
  - or not so cruel; sup. le moins cruel, f. la moins cruelle, the least cruel.
- laid, e, ugly; comp. moins laid, e, less ugly; sup. le moins laid, f. la moins laide, the least ugly.

3) The following adjectives have an irregular comparison:

bon, f. bonne, good; comp. meilleur, e, better; sup. le meilleur, f. la meilleure, the best.

(mauvais, e, in the meaning wicked) comp. pire, worse; sup. le pire, f. la pire, the worst.

(petit, e) comp. moindre, less; sup. le moindre, f. la moindre, the least.

4) As before an adjective is rendered *aussi*; as after it, and than are both translated *que*. Ex.:

Il est aussi heureux que moi, he is as happy as I am. Charles est plus fort que son frère, Charles is stronger than his brother.

#### Words.

La Hollande, Holland. l'abeille, f. the bee. le fou, the fool. le métal, the metal. pesant, e., heavy. fort, e, strong. encore, still. toujours, always.

l'éléphant, the elephant.	Fautre, the other.
fidèle, faithful.	le matin, the morning.
peuplé, e, peopled.	le soir, the evening.
le pays, the country.	court, short. Jean, John.

## Reading Exercise. 33.

L'Europe est plus petite que l'Asie. L'Allemagne est plus fertile que la Hollande. L'abeille est l'insecte le plus utile. Le sage est plus heureux que le fou. L'or est le métal le plus pesant. Ta robe est moins belle que la robe de ta sœur. Monsieur Schmidt est un homme très fort. Son frère aîné (*elder*) est encore plus fort; c'est l'homme le plus fort que (*that*) je connaisse. L'éléphant est le plus grand de tous les animaux terrestres. Le cheval est moins haut que le chameau. Les livres d'Émilie sont plus amusants que les nôtres (*ours*). Les chats sont moins fidèles que les chiens. Ces pommes-ci sont meilleures que vos poires. Les nôtres sont les meilleures. Votre tante est plus laborieuse que sa fille. La ville *de* Dresde est moins peuplée que la ville de Berlin. Londres et Paris sont les villes les plus grandes et les plus peuplées de l'Europe.

#### Thème. 34.

The morning was warm; the evening was warmer. That (c') was the warmest night of the year. This church is higher than the other. Mary is the happiest girl in the world (du monde). She is prettier than Louisa; she is the prettiest of her sisters. This house is not so (si) old as (que) the other. This mountain is very high, higher than all the other mountains of this country. The 22nd\*) [of] June is the longest, the 22nd\*) of December the shortest day of the year. The rose is the finest of all (the) flowers. This wine is worse than water. Have you any (de) better wine? Yes, the red wine is better. My wine is the best. John is my best friend.

#### Conversation.

Mademoiselle Marie, êtes- Oh! oui, je suis très heureuse, vous heureuse? plus heureuse que ma sœur

Votre voisin est-il malheu- Il est moins malheureux que reux? son frère qui est en Amérique,

<sup>\*)</sup> See p. 59, Remark 2).

Quel est le métal le plus utile?

- Quels métaux sont les plus pesants?
  - Comment trouvez-vous cette bière?

Avez-vous de meilleure bière?

- Qui est le plus appliqué de vos deux écoliers?
- Quelle est la plus attentive de toutes vos écolières?
- Quel est le plus fort des animaux terrestres?
- Connaissez-vous un meilleur moyen (*means*)?
- Quel est le mois le plus froid de l'année?
- Votre robe est-elle aussi belle que la robe de Julie?
- Le tigre est-il cruel?
- Comment trouvez-vous l'air (the air) ce soir?
- Qui est votre meilleur ami?
- Où trouve-t-on le meilleur

fer?

- C'est le fer.
- L'or, le platine et le plomb sont les plus pesants.
- Elle est plus mauvaise que de l'eau.
- Non; Monsieur, je n'en ai pas d'autre (no other).

C'est François.

- C'est Madeleine, la fille de Monsieur B.
- C'est l'éléphant; c'est le plus grand et le plus fort de tous les animaux terrestres.
- Non, Monsieur, c'est le meilleur que je connaisse.
- C'est le mois de Janvier.

Non, elle est moins belle.

- Oui, c'est le plus cruel de tous
- Il est plus chaud que ce matin; il est moins agréable.
- C'est mon père.
- Le meilleur fer se trouve (is found) en Suède.

## NINETEENTH LESSON.

## Regular verbs.

§. 1. Principal or real verbs, in opposition to the auxiliaries, are divided

- 1) according to their form, into regular and irregular verbs;
- 2) according to their terminations, into the first, second and third Conjugation;
- 3) according to their signification, into active, passive, neuter, reflective and impersonal verbs.

§. 2. There are, in French, only three regular conjugations, viz. those ending in er, ir and re. Verbs in -oir belong to the irregular ones, as their root undergoes manifold changes. The Infinitive Mood is to be considered as the radical part or ground-form, on which the conjugation depends. What precedes the termination -er, ir or re, is the root, which, with regular verbs, always remains unaltered. To this are added the different terminations\*), by which persons, tenses and moods are distinguished and which are common to all the verbs of that same conjugation.

§. 3. Formation of the Tenses of the regular verbs.

There are primitive tenses and derived tenses. The primitive tenses are 1) the infinitive (l'infinitif), 2) the participle present (le participe présent), 3) the participle past (le participe passé). 4) the present (le présent), 5) the preterite (le défini).

1) From the present infinitive are formed: The Future (le futur), by adding ai, and the Conditional (le conditionnel) by adding ais, as: Inf. donner, Fut. je donnerai and Cond. je donnerais; from finir. Fut. je finirai, Cond. je finirais. In the third conjugation the final e is dropped: from vendre, Fut. je vendrai, Cond. je vendrais.

2) From the participle present: The present of the subjunctive, by changing ant into e, as: from donnant: que je donne; from finissant: que je finisse, from vendant: que je vende.

3) With the participle past are formed all the compound tenses, by means of the auxiliaries avoir or être, as: Part. past.: donné, fini, vendu —: j'ài donné, j'avais fini, j'aurai vendu etc.

<sup>\*)</sup> In this grammar all the variable terminations of regular verbs are printed in larger Italics.

4) From the present of the Indiantive, viz. from its first person singular and the first and second persons plural, the Imperative is formed, by suppressing the pronouns je, nous, vous, as: donne (give); donnons, donnez; finis (finish), finissons, finissez etc.

5) From the preterite is formed the Subjunctive imperfect, by changing the final ai into asse, for the verbs of the first conjugation, and is into isse for the second and third conjugation. Ex. from je donnai: que je donnasse; from je finis: que je finisse; from je vendis: que je vendisse.

## First Conjugation: Donmer, to give.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je donne, I give	nous donnons, we give
tu donnes, thou givest	vous donnes, you give
il donne, he gives	ils donnent, elles donnent, they give.
elle donne, she gives	elles donnent, i they give.

## Imperfect.

Je donnais, I gave		nous donnions, we gave
tu donnais, thou gavest		vous donniez, you gave
il donnait, he gave	•	ile donnatient, they gave.

#### Preterite.

Je donnai, I gave	nous donnâmes, we gave
tu donnas, thou gavest	vous donnâtes, you gave
il donna, he gave	ils donnèrent, they gave.

#### 1st Future.

Je donnerai, I shall give nous donnerons, we shall give tu donneras, thou wilt give vous donneres, you will give il donnera, he will give ils donneront, they will give.

#### 1st Conditional.

Je donneràis,	I should give	nous donnerions,	we should give
tu donnerais	etc.	vous donneriez	etc.
il donnerait	etc.	.ils donneraient	etc.

#### Imperative Mood.

Donne, give (donnes-en),\*) give of it donnons, let us give donnez, give.

## Infinitive Mood.

Donner, to give

de or à donner, to give.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que je donne, that I (may) give que nous donnions, that we (may) que tu donnes etc. que vous donniez etc. [give qu'il donne etc. qu'ils donnent etc.

#### Imperfect.

Que je donnasse, that I (might) que nous donnassions que tu donnasses etc. [give que vous donnassiez qu'il donnât etc. qu'ils donnassent.

## Participles.

Present. Past. Donnant, giving Donné, f. donnée, given. en donnant, by giving etc.

## Compound Tenses.

In active verbs, these are formed with the Part. past and the auxiliary *avoir*, to have.

## Infinitive Mood. Avoir donné, to have given.

## Indicative Mood.

Perfect.

J'ai donné, I have given tu as donné, thou hast given il a donné, he has given nous avons donné, we have given etc.

Pluperfect.

J'avais donné, I had given etc.

\*) The Imperative mood of the first conjugation takes an s when followed by en (of it, of them), or y (to or of it, to them), Ex.: offres-en, offer of it; penses-y, think of it.

Compound of the Preterite. J'eus donné, I had given etc.

2nd Future.

J'aurai donné, I shall have given etc.

2nd Conditional.

J'aurais donné, } I should have given.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect.

Que j'aie donné, that I (may) have given Que tu aies donné, that thou (mayest) have given etc.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse donné, that I (might) have given etc.

Participle.

Ayant donné, e, having given.

#### Remarks.

1) There is but one way to render the expressions I give, I do give, I am giving, viz. je donne; I was  $giving = je \ donnais, etc.$ 

2) In the interrogative and negative form, the auxiliary to do is not expressed. (See also the 10th Lesson). Ex.:

#### Present.

#### Interrogatively.

Est-ce que je donne, do I give? donnons-nous, do we give? donnes-tu, dost thou give? donnez-vous, do you give? donnent-elles, do they give? donne-t-il, does he give? donne-t-elle, does she give?

#### Negatively.

Je ne donne pas, I do not give tu ne donnes pas, thou dost not give il ne donne pas, he does not give etc.

#### Negative-interrogatively.

Est-ce que je ne donne pas, do I not give? ne donnes-tu pas, dost thou not give? ne donne-t-il pas, does he not give? etc. Otto, French Conv.-Grammar.

6

#### Perfect.

Ai-je donné? as-tu donné? a-t-il donné? etc. Je n'ai p as donné, tu n'as pas donné etc. N'ai-je pas donné? n'as-tu pas donné etc.

Conjugate in the same manner: parler, to speak; porter, to carry, to take; admirer, to admire; aimer, to love etc.

#### Words.

Le prochain, the neighbour. magnifique, magnificent. apporter, to bring. manger, to eat. tomber, to fall. chercher, to look for. *lescalier*, the stairs. trouver, to find. la prairie, the meadow. penser, to think. la santé, the health. jouer, to play. le cœur, the heart. pleurer, to cry. le canif, the penknife. prier, to pray. la chasse, the chase. l'autre, the other. le chasseur, the hunter. déjà, already. la poste, the post-office. pas encore, not yet.

#### Reading Exercise. 35.

Aimez Dieu et votre prochain. Les parents aiment leurs enfants. Aimerez-vous aussi votre père? Portez cette lettre à la poste. Tu porteras cette robe à ta sœur. J'apporterai ces livres à mon maître. Apportez-lui (him) aussi cette boîte. Les premières montres portèrent le nom d'œufs de Nuremberg. L'enfant tomba de l'escalier. J'ai pensé à mon • ami. Pensezvous à votre cousin? Jouons. Les enfants jouent dans la prairie. Nous cherchions longtemps votre chien. Vous ne le (him) trouverez pas. Les jeunes gens parlaient souvent de leurs amis. Les chasseurs parlèrent de la chasse. Tu ne mangeras pas cette poire-ci; elle n'est pas mûre. Qui a mangé l'autre? Nous admirions les grands vaisseaux des Anglais. N'admirez-vous pas cette magnifique couleur?

#### Thème. 36.

I love my father. Thou lovest thy mother. He loves his sister. We love our parents. Do you like (the) flowers? I give an apple to my brother. Thou givest him\*) a pear. Charles gives \*) him two nuts. We were speaking of your

<sup>\*)</sup> him is translated *lui* and placed before the verb. See 24th Lesson, 2) p. 104.

aunt. I admired the beautiful palace of the king. I played with Emily. We played yesterday. The child cried. The children cried. The boy will look for his copy-book. The boys will look for their copy-books. I have found my gloves. Have you found your gloves? We have not found our gloves. Play, my child. Bring me (-moi) a bottle of wine. Eat these apples. Do not eat these pears; they are not ripe. I should cry; you would play. She would fall. We should admire your garden. They would have eaten some bread and butter. I do not think that our friends will arrive to-day. They will arrive to-morrow. Will you take this letter to the post-office. Pray [to] God every morning and every evening. Why do you cry? Why have you not brought your money? I have not brought my purse.

#### Conversation.

- Avez-vous cherché votre Je la (*it*) cherche encore. montre d'or?
- Qu'avez-vous apporté?
- Voulez-vous (will you) manger du pain?
- Parlez-vous français?
- Votre mère parle-t-elle francais?
- Quel commandement Jésus-Christ a-t-il donné?
- Qui est notre prochain?
- Qui portera cette lettre à la poste, Antoine ou Théodore?
- Qu'apporte le chasseur?
- Avez-vous aussi été à la chasse?
- Pourquoi pleurez-vous?
- A quoi pensez-vous?
- A quel jeu jouerons-nous demain?
- Que cherchez-vous?
- Qu'admirez-vous là?

- J'ai apporté les gants de Mademoiselle Mathilde.
- J'ai déjà mangé un gros morceau de pain avec du beurre.
- Non, je ne parle pas encore.
- Oui, elle parle français et anglais.
- Il a dit: Aimez Dieu et votre prochain.
- Tous les hommes.
- Ce sera Théodore.

Il apporte deux lièvres.

- Oui, Monsieur, nous avons été hier à la chasse.
- Parce que je suis tombé.
- Je pense à mon thème français.
- Nous jouerons à la pelote (ball).

Je cherche mes gants.

Nous admirons ce magnifique vaisseau anglais.

6\*

## Reading-lesson.

Le chameau et le chat.

Le chat au chameau. Soyez le bien-venu, mon frère.

Le chameau. Comment, moi (I) ton frère!

Le chat. Oui, certes. Voyez un peu (see a little): ne puis-je pas (cannot I) faire une aussi jolie bosse que vous? Le chameau. Cela peut (can) être; mais peut-elle aussi

porter autant que la mienne (mine)?

Le chat. La sotte demande! donnez-moi seulement (only) votre petit paquet, je le porterai, comme si ce n'était rien.

Le chameau. Mais penses-y bien: n'est-il pas trop gros pour toi (you)?

Le chat. Ah! quel conte! donnez-moi, vous dis-je, donnez. Le chameau. C'est bien: approche un peu, le voilà.

Le chat. Ah! quelle charge! je suis écrasé!

Le chameau. Tu as ce que (what) tu mérites!

Celui qui veut (*is going to*) entreprendre de grandes choses, doit (*must*) auparavant éprouver ses forces.

Le chameau, the camel. le chat, the cat. le bien-venu, e, welcome. comment, how. certes, to be sure. faire, make. une bosse, a hump. la demande, the question. le paquet, the pack. comme si, as if. y, of it (see p. 80, the foot-note). le conte, the tale. approcher, approach. la charge, the weight. écrasé, crushed. mériter, to deserve. entreprendre, to undertake. auparavant, before. éprouver, to try. la force, the strength.

# TWENTIETH LESSON.

# Remarks on the orthography of some verbs of the first conjugation.

Some regular verbs in *-er* are, for the sake of euphony, liable to the following modifications:

1) Some verbs ending in *-ter*, as: jeter, to throw, rejeter, to throw back: and those polysyllabic verbs

ending in *eler*, as: *appeler*, to call; *renouveler*, to renew etc., double the *t* or *l*, when they are followed by an *e mute*. This is the case in some persons of the Present, Future and Imperative, *viz*.

Present.	Imper.	Future.
Je jette — nous jetons	Jette	Je jetterai
tu jettes — vous jetez	<i>pl.</i> jetons	tu jetteras
il jette — ils jettent.	jetez.	etc.
J'appelle — nous appelons	Appelle	J'appellerai
tu appelles — vous appelez	<i>pl.</i> appelons	tu appelleras
il appelle — ils appellent.	appelez.	etc.

Except the verb *acheter*, to buy, which never doubles the t, but takes the grave accent  $\dot{e}$ :

Pres. J'achète, tu achètes, il achète, nous achetons, vous achetez, ils achètent.

Fut. J'achèterai. Imper. achète, pl. achetez.

2) Dissyllabic verbs ending in *-eler*, as: geler, to freeze, and all others that have an *e* mute in the last syllable but one, such as: *semer*, to sow, *mener*, to lead, *lever*, to lift up, take the grave accent, when the final consonant of the root is followed by an *e* mute:

Infinitive: mener, to lead.

Pres. Je mène — nous menons Impf. Je menais, tu menais. tu mènes — vous menez Fut. Je mènerai, tu mèneras. il mène — ils mènent. Imp. mène, menons, menez.

The same change takes place with those verbs which have on the last syllable but one the *accent aigu*. They, however, retain the  $\ell$  in the Future and Conditional.

Infinitive: espérer, to hope. Pres. J'espère — n. espérons Impf. J'espérais. tu espères — v. espérez Imp. Espère, espérons, espérez. il espère — ils espèrent. Fut. J'espérerai.

3) In verbs ending in *-ger*, as: *juger*, to judge; *partager*, to share, partake, the e is retained in those tenses where q is followed by the vowels a or o, in order to

give the g the same soft sound as in all other tenses and persons. Ex.:

Infinitive: manger, to eat.

Pres. Je mange, - pl. nous mangeons. P. pr. Mangeant.

Impf. Je mangeais, tu mangeais, il mangeait, nous mangions, vous mangiez, ils mangeaient.

Pret. Je mangeai, tu mangeas, il mangea, nous mangeâmes, vous mangeâtes, ils mangèrent. Imp. Mangeons etc.

4) In verbs ending in *-cer*, as: commencer, to begin, a cedilla must be placed under the c, when this letter is followed by a or o. Ex.:

Infinitive: placer, to place.

Pres. Je place, tu places etc. - pl. nous plaçons etc.

Impf. Je plaçais, tu plaçais, il plaçait, nous placions, vous placiez, ils plaçaient. Imper. Plaçons etc.

Pret. Je plaçai, tu plaças, il plaça, nous plaçâmes etc.

5) Verbs ending in *-ayer*, *-oyer*, *-uyer* change the y into i, whenever the letter y is immediately followed by an *e* mute. Such are:

payer, to pay. employer, to employ. effrayer, to frighten. essuyer, to wipe.

Pres. Je paie, tu paies, il paie, pl. nous payons, vous payez, ils paient. Part. pr. Payant.

J'emploie, tu emploies, il emploie, *pl.* nous employons, vous employez, ils emploient. *P. pr.* Employant. J'essuie, tu essuics etc. — *pl.* ils essuient.

Impf. Je payais etc. — pl. nous payions, vous payiez etc. J'employais etc. — pl. nous employions etc.

J'essuyais etc. — pl. nous essuyions etc.

Fut. Je paierai etc.; j'emploierai etc.; j'essuierai etc.

Imper. Paie - payez. Emploie - employez. Essuie - essuyez.

6) Verbs which in the Infinitive end in *-ier*, as: prier, to pray, crier, to cry, are in some cases spelt with a double *ii*. This takes place in the first and second persons plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative, and of the Present of the Subjunctive:

Ind. Imperf. pl. nous oubliions, vous oubliiez, ils oubliaient. Subj. Pres. pl. que nous priions, que vous priiez etc. - 87 -

#### Words.

La vertu, virtue.	la force, strength.
la beauté, beauty.	le bruit, the noise.
préférer, to prefer.	ba servante, the servant.
l'amitié, f. friendship.	la chambre, the room.
le vent, the wind.	le chemin, the way, road.
la pluie, the rain.	nettoyer, to clean.
la terre, the earth.	la pierre, the stone.
<i>élever</i> , to bring up, to educate.	la cuisinière, the cook
la jeunesse, youth.	posséder, to possess.
la visillesse, old age.	le jardinier, the gardener.
sécher, to dry. bien, well.	si, if. me (m'), me.

#### Reading Exercise. 37.

Le sage préfère la vertu à la beauté. L'amitié se paië (is paid) par l'amitié. Les parents élèvent leurs enfants. Où mènes-tu ce chien? Je le (him) mène à la chasse. Il gèlera cette nuit. Il a gelé. Elle achète un livre. Les vents sèchent la terre trémpée (wei) par la pluie. Nous achetons des fruits. Vous achèteriez cette maison, si elle n'était pas si chère. Appelez Jean. Je l'appellerai tout de suite (directly). Qui ne préférerait la jeunesse à la visillesse? Nous partageons avec nos amis tout ce que (all that) nous avons. Où sont mes pommes? Nous les mangeâmes hier, mon frère et moi (I). J'espère que cela n'arrivera (will happen) plus. Ce jeune homme emploie bien son temps. Nous emploierons toutes nos forces. Cela m'effraie. Ce bruit m'a effrayé. La servante nettoie les chambres. Les maîtres aiment les écoliers qui emploient bien leur temps. Nous criions longtemps.

#### Thème. 38.

The boy throws a stone. You always throw (thr. alw.) stones. Call thy brother. Call the servant. I shall call John. The cook buys eggs. I buy a horse. My father will also buy a horse. Where dost thou lead this horse? I lead it to the stable (à *l'écurie*). I hope to see you (vous voir) to-morrow. What do you hope? We hope nothing. What are you eating there (la)? We eat cherries. The child ate an apple. You ate the nuts. Frederick began to (à) cry. I placed the books on the table. I pay everything (tout). Thou payest nothing. Let us well employ our time. My sons pay [for] what (*ce que*) they buy. My uncle possesses a large garden. The gardenne cleans the ways. Wipe your tears (*larmes*). The dog frightens the children. We wiped the table. I prefer (the) coffee to (the) tea ( $th \epsilon$ ).

Convers	atio	n.		
	Γon	père	8	appelé.

Qui a appelé?

- Avez-vous nettoyé les chemins?
- Qui me protégera (protect)?
- Préfères tu la vieillesse à la jeunesse?
- Nettoie-t-il la chambre?
- Avez-vous payé ces livres?
- Combien coûtent-ils (cost)? Trouvez-vous cela cher?
- Que mangeais-tu?
- Où mène-t-on ce cheval?
- Crois-tu (do you think) qu'il gèle cette nuit?
- Achèterez-vous du thé ou du café?
- Où achetez-vous cette farine?
- Qui a jeté cette pierre?
- Cet homme paie-t-il son vin? Que fit (did — do) un jour un père?

Dieu te protégera. Je préfère la jeunesse à la vieillesse.

toierai ce soir.

- Il nettoie toute la maison.
- C'est mon père qui paie tous mes livres.

Pas encore; je les (them) net-

- 'Ils coûtent sept florins.
- J'appelle cela très cher.
- Je mangeais des noix.
- On le mène chez le maréchalferrant (farrier).
- Il a déjà gelé.
- Je n'aime pas le thé, j'achétorai du café.
- Chez le meunier (miller).
- Je crois que c'est Richard.
- Oui, il paie tout ce qu'il achète.
- Il partagea ses biens entre ses trois fils.

## Reading-lesson.

## Le renard et la cigogne.

"Tu as beaucoup voyagé, disait (said) le renard à la cigogne, raconte-moi donc quelque chose des pays que tu as vus." La cigogne se rengorgea et lui nomma chaque marais, chaque prairie, où (where) elle avait mangé les vers les plus délicats et les grenouilles les plus grasses.

"Je vois que tu as bien employé ton temps," répondit le renard.

Le renard, the fox.	se rengorger, to bridle up.
la cigogne, the stork	le marais, the marsh, pool.
voyager, to travel.	le ver, the worm.
raconter, to relate, to tell.	délicat, delicions, delicate.
vus, seen, from voir, to see.	la grenouille, the freg.

# TWENTY FIRST LESSON.

~

,

## Second Conjugation : Fimir, to finish.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

	It I CHSC.
Je finis, I finish	nous finissons, we finish
tu finis, thou finishest	nous finissons, we finish vous finissez, you finish
	the finite of the strict
elle finit, she finishes	elles finissent, { mey miss.
Imp	perfect.
Je finissais, I finished	nous finissions, we finished
tu finissais etc.	vous finissiez etc.
<i>il finissait</i> etc.	ils finissaient etc.
Pre	terite.
Je finis, I finished	nous finîmes, we finished
tu finis etc.	vous finîtes etc.
il finit etc.	ils finirent etc.
1st	Future.
Je finirai. I shall finish	nous finirons, we shall finish
tu finiras etc.	vous finirez etc.
il finira etc.	ils finiront etc.
1st Co	nditional.
Je finirais. I should finish	nous finitions, we should finish
tu finirais etc.	nous instrice etc.
il finirait etc.	ils finiraient etc.
Infiniți	ve Mao'd.
Finir, to finish	de or à <i>finir</i> , to finish.
Imperat	ive Mood.
Finis, finish	finissons, let us finish finissez, finish.
Subjune	tive Mood.
•	esent.
	que nous finissions, that we finish
que tu finisses etc.	
qu'il finisse etc.	

Que je finisse, that I (might) fi- que n. finissions, that we (might) que tu finisses etc. [mish que vous finissies etc. [finish qu'il finît etc. qu'ils finissent etc.

## Participles.

Present.

Fini, f. finie, finished.

Finissant, finishing en finissant, by finishing.

Compound Tenses.

Infinitive Mood. Avoir fini, to have finished.

#### Indicative Mood.

Perfect.

*Fai fini*, I have finished tu as fini, thou hast finished il a fini, he has finished nous avons fini, we have finished etc.

**Pluperfect.** 

Javais fini, I had finished etc.

Compound of the Preterite. J'eus fini, I had finished etc.

2nd Future.

Jaurai fini, I shall have finished etc.

2nd Conditional.

Jaurais fini, { I should have finished etc.

Subjunctive Mood.

#### Perfect.

Que j'aie fini, that I (may) have finished etc.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse fini, that I (might) have finished etc.

Participle.

Ayant fini, having finished etc.

Conjugate in the same manner: bâtir, to build; choisir, to choose; remplir, to fill etc.

## Remarks.

1) The verb hair, to hate, looses in the present and imperative singular its *diaeresis*. Otherwise it is quite regular and retains the two dots.

Pres. Je hais, tu hais, il hait, nous haïssons, vous haïssez etc. Imper. Hais, pl. haïssons, haïssez. Pret. Je haïs, I hated.

2) The verb *fleurir*, to flourish, has a second form for the imperfect tense: *je florissais*, and also a second for the part. present: *florissant*, *e*, both of which are only used in a figurative sense, as: *une ville florissante*, *etc*.

#### Words.

Nourrir, to feed, nourrish. obéir, to obey. remplir, to fulfil. bâtir, to build. embellir, to embellish. punir, to punish. le vice, vice. le devoir, the duty. toujours, always. la flatterie, flattery. le menteur, the lyer.

1

saisir, to seize. rendre, to render, return. la tâche, the task. le thème, the exercise. la version, the translation. la pomme de terre, the potato. loccasion, f. the opportunity. salir, to soil. le palais, the palace. choisir, to choose. la couleur, the colour.

#### Reading Exercise. 39.

Le pain nourrit les hommes. Les bons enfants obéissent à leurs parents et à leurs maîtres. Remplis ce verre. Remplissez ces verres. Qui a rempli les bouteilles? Romulus et Rémus bâtirent la ville de Rome, l'an 753 avant Jésus-Christ. Les fleurs embellissent les jardins et les prairies. On punira les enfants qui n'obéissent pas à leur maître. Notre voisin bâtit une grande maison. Nos voisins bâtissent de grandes maisons. Je bâtirais aussi, si j'avais plus d'argent. Je hais le vice, j'aimerai toujours la vertu. Haïssez le vice, il vous rend malheureux. J'ai toujours haï le vice. Nous haïssions la flatterie. J'espère que vous aurez puni ce méchant garçon. Le maître a puni le petit menteur. On a saisi les voleurs (*thiefs*). Ne salissez pas vos habits. Les sciences nourrissent la jeunesse et réjouissent la vieillesse.

#### Thème. 40.

I finish my exercise. The pupils finish their translations. We seize the opportunity. We seized the opportunity. Why have you not seized the good opportunity? The children soil their clothes. The bread and (the) potatoes nourrish a great many (beaucoup d') men. Have you punished the lazy boys? I shall punish them after the lesson. Do not punish Henry; he has been ill. Fill the glasses. We should fill the bottles, if we had enough wine. The king builds a new palace. Will you build a house? I should build a large house, if I were rich. Here are two colours: choose. Which (laquelle) will you choose? I shall choose the blue. If I had to (a) choose, I should choose the green colour. Obey your (à vos) parents and (your) masters. I hate nobody (ne ... personne). Hate nobody. We hate (the) vice. We have always hated (the) vice.

#### Conversation.

Voici deux couteaux: un grand et un petit. Lequel (which) choisirez-vous?

Je choisirai le petit qui est le plus joli.

- Cet homme remplit-il ses devoirs?
- Avez-vous rempli toutes les bouteilles?

Qui bâtit cette belle maison?

Ne bâtirez-vous pas aussi?

Pourquoi ne bâtissez-vous pas à présent (now)?

Qui a sali ce livre?

Comment as - tu fait (done) cela?

Avez-vous fini votre thème?

Qui a bâti la ville de Rome?

Qui a puni mon fils?

- Pourquoi avez-vous puni mon fils, Monsieur?
- Ai-je bien fait, Monsieur?

Non, Monsieur, je n'avais pas assez de vin pour les remplir.

C'est mon voisin qui la bâtit.

Oui, je bâtirai aussi l'année prochaine (next).

Je bâtirais encore cette année, si j'avais assez d'argent.

C'est Martin.

Pas toujours.

La plume est tombée dessus (upon it).

Nous le (it) finirons ce soir.

Romulus et Rémus.

Le maître de musique.

Parce qu'il (because he) n'a pas obéi à mes ordres.

Oui, il obéira la prochaine fois.

Ne trouvez-vons pas que j'ai Ocitainement, ce jet d'eau embelli mon jardin? (spring) embellit beaucoup

**votre jard**in.

Haïssez-vous le vice?

Oui, je hais tous les vices.

Pourquoi haïssez-vous votre . Je ne le (him) hais pas; je hais voisin? seulement ses flatteries.

## Reading-lesson.

#### Le moineau et ses petits.

Un moineau avait placé son nid dans le trou d'un mur. Il élevait tranquillément sa famille. Il aurait été bien heureux, si ses petits eussent voulu l'écouter: mais à chaque instant, ils venaient sur le bord du nid. Le pauvre oiseau tremblait dans la crainte de les voir tomber. Il leur disait de rester dans le fond du nid, mais ils ne le voulaient point (would not do it).

Un jour qu'il était sorti, ils profitèrent de son absence et s'avancèrent tant qu'ils tombèrent à terre. Ils n'avaient pas encore de plumes aux ailes; ainsi ils ne purent (could not) se sauver. Un gros chat, qui passait par-là, les vit (saw them); il n'avait pas dîné, il les saisit, et les mangea sur-le-champ. C'est ainsi qu'ils furent punis de leur désobéissance.

Mes jeunes amis, vous devez (*ought to*) obéir à vos parents et à vos maîtres. Pensez toujours qu'ils ne vous défendent rien sans de bonnes raisons (*reasons*).

Le moineau, the sparrow. les petits, the young ones. le nid, the nest. le trou, the hole. le mur, the wall. tranquillement, quietly. écouter, to listen, ohey. l'instant, m. the moment. ils venaient, they came. la crainte, the fear. rester, to remain. le fond, the bottom. tant, so much. l'aile, f. the wing. sauver, to save, se —, to fly away. passer, to pass by. par - là, there. diner, to dine. sur-le-champ, at once, immediately. la désobéissance, disobedience. le maître, the master. défendre, to forbid.

# TWENTY SECOND LESSON.

## Third Conjugation: Wendre, to sell.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je vends, I sell	nous vendons, we sell
tu vends, thou sellest	vous vendez, you sell
il vend, he sells elle (on) vend, she (one) sells	ils vendent, they sell.

#### Imperfect.

Je vendais, I sold	nous vendions, we sold
tu vendais, thou soldst	vous vendiez, you sold
il vendait, he sold	ils vendaient, they sold.

#### Preterite.

Je vendis, I sold tu vendis etc. il vendit etc. nous vendîmes, we sold vous vendîtes etc. ils vendirent etc.

#### 1st Future.

Je vendrai, I shall sell tu vendras etc. il vendra etc.

nous	vendrons,	we	shall	sell
vous	vendrez		etc.	
ils v	endront		etc.	

1st Conditional.

	e vendrais,	Ι	should	sell		s vendrions,	we	should	sell
tu	vendrais		etc.			s vendriez		etc.	
il	vendrait		etc.	•	ils	vend <b>raien</b> t		etc.	

## Imperative Mood.

Vends, sell

vendons, let us sell vendez, sell.

## Subjunctive Mood.

#### Present.

Que je vende, that ]	(may) sell	que nous vendions, th.w	e(may)sell
que tu vend <b>e</b> s	etc.	que vous vendiez	etc.
qu'il vende	etc.	qu'ils vendent	etc.
	Imp	erfect.	
Que je vendisse, th.1	(might)sell	que nous vendissions	
que tu vend <b>isse</b> s	etc.	que vous vendissiez	
m'il nendît	etc	mile mendissent	

#### Participles. Past.

Present.

Vendant, selling en vendant, by selling. Vendu, f. vendue, sold.

Compound Tenses.

Infinitive Mood.

Avoir vendu, to have sold.

#### Indicative Mood.

#### Perfect.

J'ai vendu, I have sold tu as vendu, thou hast sold il a vendu, he has sold nous avons vendu, we have sold etc.

#### Pluperfect.

J'avais vendu, I had sold etc.

#### Preterite.

J'eus vendu, I had sold etc.

#### 2nd Future.

J'aurai vendu, I shall have sold etc.

#### 2nd Conditional.

J'aurais vendu, { I should have sold etc.

#### Subjunctive Mood.

#### Perfect.

Que j'aie vendu, that I (may) have sold etc.

#### Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse vendu, that I (might) have sold etc.

### Participle.

Ayant vendu, having sold.

Conjugate after this model: perdre, to lose; attendre, to wait, to expect; répondre, to answer etc.

#### Remarks.

1) The verb battre, to beat, is regularly conjugated, only in the singular of the present indicative and in the imperative mood it loses one of its two t.

Pres. Je bats, tu bats, il bat, nous battons, vous battez etc. Imper. bats. Part. battu.

2) The verb rompre, to break, is conjugated in the pres. indicative as follows:

Je romps, tu romps, il rompt, nous rompons etc. (All the rest is regular.)

3) The verb rire, to laugh, is conjugated after the third conjugation: Pres. Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rions etc. But the Part. past is ri, and the Pret. Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rimes, vous rites, ils rirent. Fut. Je rirai etc.

4) Conclure, to conclude, is regular, as: Pres. Je conclus, tu conclus, il conclut, nous concluons etc. Fut. Je conclurai. Only in the Preterite, it makes je conclus (not je concluis).

#### Words.

La vallée, the valley. gauche, left. droit, e, right. descendre, to go or come down. les armes, the arms. la bague, the ring. la sagesse, wisdom. répandre, to spread, to shed. la Grèce, Greece. le bruit, the report, the noise. *Chonneur*, m. the honour. la mort, death. les gens, people. défendre, to forbid, to defend. perdre, to lose. entendre, to hear. attendre, to wait for, expect. fumer, to smoke. un peu, a little. répondre, to answer. le tonnerre, the thunder. le sang, the blood. le travail, the work. l'æil, the eye. désirer, to wish.

#### Reading Exercise. 41.

J'ai vendu mon cheval. Nous avons vendu nos chevaux. Je perdis hier ma bourse. Vous perdîtes votre bague. La vieille femme vendait des cerises. Nous vendions du fromage et du beurre. On a répandu le bruit de la mort du roi. Il est défendu de fumer ici. Qui défend cela? Entendez-vous le bruit? Qui a battu mon chien? Ne bats pas cet enfant. Il bat son cheval. Répondez-moi (me), mon fils. Réponds à ton maître. Je répondis que j'étais malade. Ce tyran cruel a répandu beaucoup de sang innocent. Jules a déjà perdu son œil gauche, il perdra aussi son œil droit. Tu perds ton argent. Nous perdons tout notre temps. Nous sommes descendus dans une vallée riante. Le bataillon saisit les armes et défendit la ville. Socrate répandit beaucoup de sagesse à Athènes et dans toute la Grèce. Pourquoi riez-vous? Je ne ris pas. Je n'ai pas ri.

#### Thème. 42.

I sell my dogs. My friend sells his horses We sell our houses. I defend my honour. Do you defend your friends? Thou losest thy time. You lose your time. I lost my money. My brother lost his stick. He will lose everything. The pupils will lose their places. We expect a letter from our grandfather. Do you also expect a letter? No, Sir, I expect nothing. James (Jacques) and William expect (a) good news. We have waited an hour. Wait a little. Why don't you wait. Do you hear the music? I hear nothing. I did not hear the thunder. Have you answered (to) her letter? I have not yet answered. I shall answer to-morrow. Answer me (moi). When (quand) I heard the thunder, I came down from the mountain. Whom (qui) do you beat? I beat my dog. The poor children have lost their father. They will lose also their mother; she is very ill. Do not break my stick (canne, f.). I wish (that) he would answer (Pres. Subj.) this letter (dat.). My father wished (that) he would answer (Impf. Subj.) this letter.

#### Conversation.

Qui a perdu cette bourse?	Je crois ( <i>I think</i> ) que Jules a perdu une bourse.
A-t-il aussi perdu de l'ar- gent?	Je crois qu'il a perdu deux florins.
temps à jouer?	Nous n'avons rien à faire (to do), nous avons fini notre tâche.
A quoi (at what) jouez-vous?	Nous battons le cerceau (ring, hoop).
Qui défend les brebis (sheep)?	Le chien du berger (shepherd).
As-tu fini ton travail?	Oui, Monsieur, mon travail est fini.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar.

ŧ

- Ton frère a-t-il fini sa version?
- Entendez-vous le tonnerre?
- Avez-vous entendu le bruit du vent (wind)?
- ces pommes?
- Pourquoi salissez vous vos mains?
- Pourquoi ne punit-on pas ce méchant enfant?

Qui (whom) attendez-vous?

Attendicz – vous quelqu'un (some one)?

Je ne crois pas; il la (it) finira demain.

Je n'entends pas tonner.

Le vent est terrible.

Qui a défendu de manger de Notre mère l'a défendu ce matin.

Commentêtes-vous descendu? Je suis descendu par l'escalier (stairs).

> Nous nettoyons la cage de nos oiseaux.

Il sera puni après la leçon.

J'attends Monsieur le professeur. J'attendais mon cousin de Paris.

### Reading-lesson.

Le roi de Perse.

Un roi de Perse certain jour Chassait avec toute sa cour; Il eut soif, mais dans cette plaine On ne trouvait point de fontaine, Près de là seulement était un grand jardin Rempli de beaux cédrats, d'oranges, de raisins: A Dieu ne plaise que j'en mange! Dit le roi; ce jardin courrait trop de danger: Si je me permettais d'y cueillir une orange, Mes visirs aussitôt mangeraient le verger.

Certain jour, one day.	le cédrat, the lemon.
chasser, to go a hunting.	à Dieu ne plaise, God forbid.
la soif, thirst.	courrait, would run.
seulement, only.	permettre, to permit.
la plaine, the plain.	cueillir, to gather.
près de là, in the neighbourhood.	le verger, the orchard.

# TWENTY THIRD LESSON.

# Of Pronouns.

There are six sorts of pronouns called: 1) personal pronouns, 2) demonstrative, 3) possessive, 4) interrogatice, 5) relative, 6) indefinite pronouns.

# Personal pronouns.

Personal pronouns are those which directly refer to, and supply the place of a person or a thing. There are three persons: the *first* is the person who speaks; the *second* is the person spoken to; the *third* is the person spoken of. With these pronouns it must be observed whether they are intimately connected with, or governed by a verb, as: *I speak*, we go, *I give you etc.*; if this be the case, they are conjunctive (pronoms conjoints); or if they are employed by themselves or with a preposition; in this case they are termed disjunctive (pronoms disjoints). We begin with the latter.

#### A. Declension of the disjunctive personal pronouns.

Fi	rst person.
S. Moi, I de moi, of or from me à moi, to me moi, me.	Pl. nous, we de nous, of or from us à nous, to us nous, us.
Sec	ond person.
S. Toi, thou de toi, of or from thee à toi, to thee toi, thee.	Pl. vous, you de vous, of or from you à vous, to you vous, you.
Third	person (masc.).
S. Lui, he de lui, of or from him à lui, to him lui, him.	Pl. eux, they d'eux, of or from them à eux, to them eux, them. 7*
de toi, of or from thee à toi, to thee toi, thee. Third S. Lui, he de lui, of or from him à lui, to him	de vous, of or from yo à vous, to you vous, you. person (masc.). Pl. eux, they d'eux, of or from the à eux, to them

S. elle, she d'elle, of or from her à elle, to her elle, her Feminine. Pl. elles, they

*d'elles*, of *or* from them *à elles*, to them *elles*, them.

Masc. and Fem., Sing. and Plur.

N. & A. Soi, one's self, itself etc. Gen. de soi, of or from one's self etc. Dat. à soi, to one's self, to itself etc.

#### Examples.

Qui a dit cela? Moi, lui, elle, nous etc. Who has said this? I, he, she, we etc. C'est pour moi, pour toi, pour elle etc. That is for me, for thee, for her etc. Je parle de toi, de vous, d'elles, d'eux etc. I speak of thee, of you, of them, of them etc. Nous pensons à kai, à vous, à eux etc. We think of him, of you, of them etc.

#### Remarks.

1) All these *disjunctive* pronouns may, in all cases, take the little word *-même*, pl. *-mêmes*, whenever in English the word self is joined to a pronoun. Ex.:

S. moi-même, (I) myself	Pl. nous - mêmes, ourselves
toi-même, thyself	vous-mêmes, yourselves
lui-méme, himself	eux-mêmes, themselves.
elle - même, herself.	elles - mêmes, V themselves.
soi - même	one's self

2) When a stress is laid upon personal pronouns, they are often preceded by c'est, c'était etc., as in English:

S. c'est moi, it is I	Pl. c'est nous, it is we
c'est toi,, it is thou	<i>c'est vous</i> , it is you
c'est lui, it is he	ce sont eux,. { it is they.
c'est elle, it is she.	ce sont elles, ( it is they.

3) Soi is only used of mankind in a general sense, and of inanimate objects in singular. Ex.:

Doit-on toujours penser à soi, ought on always to think of one's self?

#### Words.

 Inconstant, inconstant.
 l'aimant, m. the load-stone.

 ressembler, to resemble.
 attirer, to attract.

 envoyer, to send.
 la pelote, the ball, tennis.

 demeurer, to live.
 venez, come.
 casser, to break.

 sorti, gone out.
 âgé, old.
 ni - ni, neither - nor.

#### Reading Exercise. 43.

Qui dit (says) cela? Moi — lui — elle, eux-mêmes elles-mêmes. Penses-tu à moi? Je pense à toi. Je pense à vous — à elles — à eux. Je n'ai pas pensé à toi, mon pauvre enfant. L'homme inconstant ne ressemble jamais à lui-même. Nous nous souvenons (we remember) de vous, de lui, — d'elles — d'eux. Envoyez-moi de l'argent. Sans moi, elle serait tombée. Je suis plus grand que toi — que lui — qu'elle. Qui a été ici, lui ou elle? Venez avec moi — avec nous. Joue avec lui. Jouez avec elles. On parle de nous. Tu parles de lui et d'elle. Nous parlons souvent (often) de vous. Je défends mon honneur moi-même. L'aimant attire le fer à soi. Nous nous moquons (we mock al) d'eux. Ah! 'vous vous moquez de nous!

#### Thème, 44.

My brother and I, (we) have heard the noise. Who will have the ball, thou or he? Frederick, your teacher has seen that you have beaten a child. Who? I? Yes, yourself. Who has broken the stick? Not I! You and he, you were not attentive. She and Emily are gone out. Who is gone out with them? Come with me. Come to our house (*chez nous*). Who speaks of me? I speak of you. You speak of her and of her sister. For whom is the medecine? It (*elle*)\*) is for yourself. Does she live with you? She lives with us. He is older than I. I think of (à) you. You do not think of me. You always \*\*) think of one's self. Have you brought the book yourself? Yes, I myself. Does she play with us? She plays with them (m.). Is it himself? Yes, it is himself. It is I; it is not he.

\*\*) In French, the adverb follows the verb.

<sup>\*)</sup> The pupil must not forget, that the French proncun always agrees in gender with its preceding substantive. See the note p. 106.

#### Conversation.

Qui a dit cela? Qui vient là? Pensez-vous à vos amis? Est-elle tombée?

Pour qui sont ces bottes? A qui pensez-vous? De qui parle-t-on? Qui a apporté cette corbeille? Qui a fait cela? Est-elle arrivée seule? Qui a écrit (*written*) cette lettre? Que fait l'aimant? Qui a battu cet enfant? Qui est venu avec toi? Où demeure-t-il? Est-ce vous oui avez perdu

Est-ce vous qui avez perdu cet argent? Moi. — Lui. — Elle.
C'est nous.
Je pense souvent à eux.
Heurcusement non! mais sans moi, elle serait tombée.
Elles\*) sont pour moi-même.
Je pense à vous et à votre mère.
On parle d'eux — d'elles.
Ma sœur elle-même.
Ni hui, ni elle, ni nous, ni eux.
Non, elle est arrivée avec moi.
Mon père lui-même.

Il\*) attire le fer à soi.

- Ce n'est pas moi, c'est Léopold. Mon ami Jules.
- Il demeure chez son oncle.
- Non, ce n'est pas moi, c'est ma cousine Émilie.

# Reading-lesson.

Le rosier. The rose-bush.

"Qui veut (*will*) me donner un petit arbre pour mon jardin?" disait Frédéric à ses frères et à sa sœur.

Leur père leur (them) avait donné à chacun un petit coin de terre à planter.

"Ce n'est pas moi!" dit Auguste. "Ni moi!" s'écria Louis. — "Ce sera moi! dit la bonne Charlotte; de quelle espèce le (*it*) veux-tu?"

"Je voudrais (*I should like*) avoir un rosier, répondit Frédéric; le mien est tout jauni."

", C'est bon," réplique Charlotte. Puis elle prit (then she took) une pelle et alla (went) le retirer de terre.

"Que vois-je (*What do I see*)? dit Frédéric, tu n'en as toi-même que (only) deux, et encore il y en a un si petit! Du moins ne me donne pas le plus grand."

<sup>\*)</sup> See the Note, page 106.

"Non, non! s'écria sa sœur, il pourrait (could) encore se sécher; je puis jouir du plaisir de le voir fleurir dans ton jardin." (To be continued.) Chacun, e, each. répliquer, to reply. un'petit coin de terre, a corner la pelle, the spade. of land. relirer, to take out. ni moi, nor I either. du moins, at least. s'écrier, to call out, to cry. sécher, to dry. se sécher, to get dry, to wither. *lespèce*, f. the sort. le mien, mine. je puis, I can, from pouvoir. tout, quite. jouir, to enjoy. jauni, e, yellow, withered. voir, to see.

# TWENTY FOURTH LESSON.

### Of conjunctive personal pronouns.

These are declined as follows:

Masc.

.

ş

First Person.	Second Person.
S. N. Je, I Pl. nous, we	S. Tu, thou Pl. vous, you
G. (wanting.)	
D. me, (to) me nous, (to	) us te, (to) thee vous, (to) you
A. me, me nous, us	

#### Third Person.

Fem.

S. N. <i>Il</i> , he Pl.	ils, they	S. elle, she Pl.	elles, they
G. <i>(en)</i> , of him	(en), of them	(en), of her	(en), of them
D. <i>lui</i> , (to) him	leur, to them	lui, (to) her	leur, to them
A. le, him, it	les, them.	la, her, it	les, them.

Masc. and Fem.

N. on, one, they

D. se, to one's self, to themselves

A. se, one's self, itself, themselves.

The difficulty in the employment of the conjunctive personal pronouns is merely in their proper position. The principal rules are these:

1) The nominative cases je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils or elles, usually precede the verb of which they are

the subject; in an interrogative sentence, however, they are placed immediately after the verb. Ex.:

Je pense, I think. nous parlons, we speak. tu espères, thou hopest. vous jouez, you play.

Interrog.: Finis-tu, dost thou finish?

Vient-elle, does she come?

Parlez-vous français, do you speak French?

2) The dative and accusative are placed immediately before the verb in a simple tense, and before its auxiliary in a compound one. Ex.:

Tu me dis, you tell me. Je vous donne, I give you. Ils nous prêtent, they lend us. Elle m'a répondu, she has answered me. Charles nous a dit, Charles has told us. Je les ai vus, I have seen them.

3) If the sentence is negative, ne is put directly after the subject, before the governed pronoun, as:

Je ne vous donne pas, I do not give you. Tu ne me connais pas, you do not know me. Vous ne les avez pas vus, you have not seen them. Ils ne nous prêtent pas, they do not lend us. Elle ne m'a pas répondu, she has not answered me. Charles ne nous avait pas dit, Charles had not told us.

4) In the interrogative form, the accusative or dative precedes; then follows the verb with the subject. If the question is a *negative* one, *ne* begins the sentence:

Me connaissez-vous, do you know me? Me blâme-t-il, does he blame me? Les vois-tu, do you see them? Vous a-t-il répondu, has he answered you? Ne vous a-t-il pas répondu, has he not answered you?

5) When the verb is in the *imperative affirmative*, the governed pronouns are put after it, in French as in English. In this case me and te are changed into moi and toi for the dative and accusative. Ex.:

Donnez-moi, give me. Apportez-lui, bring him. Mangez-les, eat them. Parlez-leur, speak to them. 6) But when the imperative is *negative*, the governed pronoun precedes the verb. Ex.:

Ne me donnez pas, do not give me.

Ne lui apportez pas, do not bring him.

Ne les mangez pas, do not eat them.

Ne leur parlez pas, do not speak to them.

7) When a verb, which is not in the imperative affirmative, governs *two* pronouns, they are both placed immediately before the verb, so that *the dative comes first*, and the accusative follows. Ex.:

Je te le donne, I give it to thee (you).

Il me le donne, he gives it me.

Louis me la prête, Lewis lends it me.

Louis ne me les prête pas, Lewis does not lend them to me.  $\Pi$  nous l'apporte, he brings it (to) us.

Vous l'apporte t-elle, does she bring it (to) you?

Nous les apportera-t-il, will he bring them to us? Ne nous l'apportera-t-il pas, will he not bring it to us? On vous le dira, they will tell it to you.

On ne vous le dira pas, they will not tell it to you.

8) An exception to the foregoing rule make the two datives lui (to him, to her) and lear (to them), which always follow the other governed pronoun. Ex.:

Je le lui donne, I give it him or her.

Je ne le lui donne pas, I do not give it him.

Elle les lui donne, she gives them to him.

Elle ne le lui donne pas, she does not give it (to) him. La lui donne-t-elle, does she give it him?

Nous la lui vendrons, we shall sell it to him (to her). La leur donnera-t-il, will he give it to them?

Je ne la leur ai pas donné, I have not given it to them. Ne le lui donnez pas, do not give it him.

Pourquoi ne la leur prêtez-vous pas, why do you not lend it to them?

9) Of two personal pronouns governed by the *impera*tive affirmative, the dative always stands last. Ex.:

Donnez-le-moi, give it me.

Apportez-les-lui (leur), bring them to him (to them). Prêtes-la-nous, lend it to us. 10) Is the imperative *negative*, both of them *precede* the verb according to §. 6, and *lui* and *leur* follow the accusative according to §. 8. Ex.:

Ne me le donnez pas, do not give it me. Ne la lui apportez pas, do not bring it to him. Ne les leur envoyez pas, do not send them to them.

Note. Observe that, inanimate things in French being either masculine or feminine, the pronouns *il*, *elle*, pl. *ils*, *elles*, Acc. *le*, *la*, (*l*), *les*, are used accordingly in speaking of such. Thus, speaking of a flower or of flowers (*fleur*, *f.*), we say:

It is beautiful, elle est belle. — I see it, je la vois. They are beautiful, elles sont belles.

#### Words.

Pardonner (dat.), to pardon.	tailler, to cut, mend.		
prêter (dat.), to lend.	louer, to praise.		
récompenser, to reward.	accompagner, to accompany.		
<i>corriger</i> , to correct.	je promets, I promise.		
écouter, to listen.	l'histoire, (the) history.		
la vérité, the truth.	volontiers, willingly.		

#### Reading Exercise. 45.

Je vends. J'entends. Je vous entends. Il me pardonnera. Elle m'a pardonné. Alfred m'a prêté un livre amusant. Prêtez-moi votre livre. Je vous le prêterai. Il me le donne. Tu me l'as donné. Elle me les donnerait, si elle les avait encore. Vous a-t-il pardonné? Lui as-tu dit (told) cela? Je le lui ai dit. Leur a-t-on répondu? Appelez ces écoliers. Je les récompenserai; je leur donnerai de l'argent. Vous le leur donnerez demain. Ne te loue pas toi-même. On ne se loue pas soi-même. Bon Dieu! protégez-moi. Mon enfant, corrige-toi; tu es très méchant. Je ne t'aimerai pas. Elle ne vous écoute pas. Elle ne m'a pas écouté. Nous écoutera-t-il? Vous ne me dites pas la vérité. Je vous la dis. Cette plume est trop molle; voulez-vous avoir la bonté (kindness) de me la tailler? Je vous la taillerai volontiers.

#### Thème. 46.

I praise thee. Thou praisest me. Do you play? Do you hear? Do you hear me? I hear you. I do not sell my house. I do not sell it (la). Do you sell your horses? I shall not sell them. We hear thee. I call him. Will you accompany me? My father will accompany you. Have you mended my pen? I have mended it. Lend me a pencil. Lend him a pen. Do not give him my book. Do not give it him. I promise you. I promise it [to] you. Tell (dites-) him. Tell them. Tell it him. Do not tell it [to] them. I should give you some money, if you were more industrious. Has she given him the gloves? She has given them to him. She has not given them to him; she has given them to his brother. Will the master reward the diligent pupils? He has already (déjà) rewarded them, and he will reward them again (encore). Your translation is badly done (mal faite), correct it (f.). Pardon (me) my mistakes. Have you corrected them? Yes, I have (corrected them).

#### Conversation.

Conversation.				
Venez-vous, ma sæur?	Oui, je viens (I come).			
M'entends – tu ?	Oui, je t'entends.			
Ne m'entendez-vous pas?	Je ne vous ai pas entendu.			
Me pardonnerez - vous?	Je ne vous pardonnerai pas.			
De qui avez-vous reçu ce livre amusant?	C'est Alfred qui me l'a prêté.			
Veux-tu prêter ce livre à ma sœur?	Je le lui prêterai volontiers.			
Qui veut cette plume?	Donnez-la-moi, s'il vous plaît (if you please).			
Pour qui sont ces crayons?	Je les apporterai à Jules.			
M'aimes – tu ?	Oui, je t'aime.			
Les aimez-vous?	Oui, je les aime beaucoup.			
Dites-vous la vérité?	Je la dis toujours.			
Vous louez-vous vous-mêmes?	Nous ne nous louons pas nous- mêmes.			
Qué vous a dit votre maître?	Il m'a dit: Corrige-toi, si tu veux ( <i>wish</i> ) que je t'aime.			
Qui vous accompagnera?	Notre cousin nous accom- pagnera jusqu'à Bruxelles.			
Vous a-t-on raconté (told) une histoire?	Oui, notre grand'mère nous a raconté une très belle histoire.			
Me le promettez-vous?	Oui, je vous le promets.			
Qui vous a taillé cette plume?	Mon maître a eu la bonté de me la tailler.			
	hann rhàinnigh, agus			

# Reading-lesson.

Suite du rosier.

Frédéric, transporté de joie, emporta le rosier; et Charlotte le suivit plus joyeuse encore que lui.

Le jardinier avait vu le trait d'amitié de la petite fille. Il alla chercher (*he went for*) un beau sureau d'Espagne.

", Voulez-vous que je mette (put) ceci à la place de votre rosier?" demanda-t-il à Charlotte.

"Si vous n'en avez pas besoin (need).

"Non, répondit-il, je n'en ai pas besoin." — Il le planta. Le mois de Mai suivant, le rosier de Frédéric porta les plus belles roses, et tous les matins, Charlotte recevait un

bouton à moitié ouvert, pour le mettre dans ses cheveux.

Le sureau prit (took) racine aussi et devint (became) bientôt si grand et si épais que Charlotte y trouva de l'ombrage dans la grande chaleur du jour.

Transporté, enraptured.		ceci, thi
emporter, carry off.		demande
le suivit, followed him.		un boute
joyeux, joyful.		la moiti
le trait, the trait.		ouvert,
l'amitié, friendship.		la racin
un sureau d'Espagne, a	lilac-	l'ombrag
tree.		la chale

ceci, this. demander, to ask. un bouton, a bud. la moitié, half. ouvert, open, opened. la racine, the root. Combrage, the shade. la chaleur, the heat.

# TWENTY FIFTH LESSON.

### Of demonstrative Pronouns.

#### These are:

	masc.	fem.
	Celui ,	celle, that.
pl.	ceux,	celles, those.
-	celui-ci,	celle-ci, this, the latter.
pl.	ceux-ci,	celles-ci, these.
-	celui - là ,	celle-là, that (one), the former.
pl.	ceux - là,	celles-là, those.
-	(celui qui	is rendered he who, the one which

(celui qui is rendered he who, the one which.) Neuter: Ce and cela (abridged ga), that; ceci, this. NB. Ce qui and ce que are rendered "that which or what". 1) These pronouns are declined by putting before them, de for the genitive, and à for the dative case, as: G. de celui, de cellc; D. à celui, à celle, etc.

#### Examples.

Mon chapeau et celui de mon frère, my hat and my brother's (that of my brother).

Je parle de celui-ci, vous parlez de celui-là, I speak of this, you speak of that one.

Que dites-vous de cela, what do you say of that? Est-ce là votre plume, is this your pen? C'est ma plume, that is my pen. Sont-ce là vos gants, are these your gloves? Ce sont mes gants, these are my gloves.

2) In place of the genitive and dative of ce, ceci, cela, ceux-ci and ceux-là, the French make use of two other conjunctive pronouns, viz. **en** and **y**. En is rendered in English by some, of it, of them. about it, about them etc. Y is used for the dative and corresponds to the English to it, to them, in it, in them, there, therein etc., as:

Voici du jambon: en voulez-vous? Here is ham, will you have some? J'en prendrai un petit morceau. I shall take a little bit of it. Votre père est-il au jardin? Oui, il y est. Is your father in the garden? Yes, he is there. J'y vais aussi, I shall go there, too. Donnez-m'en — donnez-lui-en. Give me some — give him some. Y penses-tu, do you think of that?

Je lui en ai donné, I have given him some of them (it).

#### Words.

Le ports-feuille, a pocket-book. la peur, fear. l'âme, the soul. la noblesse, nobility. le corps, the body. la récompense, the reward.

bénir, to bless. persécuter, to persecute. souhaiter, to wish. enrichir, to enrich. commode, comfortable. le conquérant, the conqueror. jaune, yellow. joli, e, nice.

le commerce, the commerce. *l'agriculture*, f. agriculture. également, equally. levé, risen, got up. tout de suite, directly. ni - ni, neither - nor. promet, promises.

#### Reading Exercise. 47.

Voici mon porte-feuille et celui de mon père. Voici mes gants et ceux de ma sœur. Voulez-vous ceux-ci ou ceux-là? Celui qui\*) remplit ses devoirs est un brave homme. Voulezvous ceci ou cela? Ceux qui sont contents, sont toujours heureux. Heureux celui qui trouve un vrai ami! Je préfère la noblesse de l'âme à celle de la naissance (birth). On croit (believes) ce qu'on espère. Ce que vous dites, me fait peur. Qui vient là? C'est moi. — Ce sont eux. Ce qui est beau n'est pas toujours utile. Ne parlez pas de ce qui ne vous regarde (concern) pas. Alexandre-le-Grand et Jules César furent de grands conquérants; celui-là mourut dans sa jeunesse, celui-ci fut assassiné (murdered).

#### Thème. 48.

Here is your hat and that of your brother. I shall sell my house and that of my uncle. We speak of these, you speak of those. Give me that one. This is my pen. These (ce) are your pencils. Is this the garden of your aunt? Are these the shoes of your sister? No, these are the shoes of my cousin Eliza. He\*) who is diligent, will have (or get) a nice book. This ink (cette encre-ci) is blacker than that. These gloves are white, those are yellow. I prefer the beauty of the soul to that (f.) of the body. (The) agriculture and the commerce are equally useful to (the) man; the former nourishes us, the latter enriches us. My mother prefers this house to that; this is smaller, but that is more comfortable. Have you (any) butter? Yes, I have some. Give me some. Here is black cloth. I shall take ten yards of it (j'en prendrai...). Were you at the theatre yesterday? Yes, I was there. Is your master in this room? Yes, he is there (therein).

\*) See p. 108, NB.

# Interrogative Pronouns.

They are 1) lequel, f. laquelle, which (of)? 2) qui, who? que and quoi, what? — They are declined as follows:

1) Lequel?

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	lequel,	fem.				lesquelles!
Gen.	duquel	"	de laquelle			desquelles ?
Dat.	auquel	<b>3</b> 7		auxquels		auxquelles?
Acc.	lequel	"	laquelle	lesquels	"	lesquelles !

This pronoun is used either without a noun, or is at least separated from it by de; but it agrees with it in gender and number. When the pronoun which (of) is used interrogatively, it is always expressed by lequel, laquelle etc., as:

Voici deux appartements, le quel choisirez-vous? Here are two apartments, which will you choose? Une de ses sœurs est mariée. La quelle est-ce? One of his sisters is married. Which is it? La quelle de vos écolières est malade? Which of your pupils is ill?

### 2) Qui? Que? Quoi?

masc. & f.em.

ne**ut**er.

Nom.Qui, who?Que, quoi, what?G. (Abl.) de qui, whose, of whom?de quoi, of what?Dat.à qui, to whom, whose?à quoi, to what, at what?Acc.qui, whom?que, quoi, what?

1) The interrogative pronoun qui? is only used of persons. Ex.:

Qui est là, who is there?

A qui prêtez-vous cela, to whom do you lend this? Qui cherchez-vous, whom are you looking for? Pour qui est ce crayon, for whom is this pencil?

2) Whose, when used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by à qui. Ex.:

Whose book is this? & qui est ce livre?

3) Que and quoi are neuter. Quoi, what, is disjunctive; it is used either by itself, or after a preposition, as:

De quoi parlez-vous, of what are you speaking?

Sur quoi, upon what? — Avec quoi, with what?

4) Que, what, is conjunctive, and is only used before verbs, as:

Que voulez-vous, what do you wish or want? Que dit-on, what do people say? Que demande-t-il, what does he ask?

#### Beading Exercise. 49.

Lequel de vos fils est malade? Laquelle de vos sœurs est mariée? Lesquels de vos écoliers n'ont pas fait leurs thèmes? Voici plusieurs canifs. Lequel voulez-vous acheter? Qui est arrivé? Qui a trouvé ma bourse? De qui avez-vous parlé? A qui est la grammaire que vous avez à la main? Que souhaitez-vous, Monsieur? Qu'avez-vous porté à la poste? Quoi! vous êtes déjà levé!, A quoi pensez-vous donc? Avec quoi avez-vous frappé l'enfant? Avec une petite canne. Auquel de ces écoliers avez-vous promis une récompense?

#### Thème. 50.

Which of your horses have you sold? Which of these colours is the finest? Which of my copy-books will you have? To which of your nieces do you write (*écrivez-vous*) a letter? Which of your pupils are the most diligent? Here are several pictures, which will you choose? Who is at (a) the door? Whom do you love most (*le mieux*)? From whom have you received this ring? To whom do you speak? To whom will you give this nice pen-holder (*porte-plume*)? What do you carry under your arm (*bras*)? With what has he beaten the dog? What! you are still (*encore*) in bed (*au lit*)?

#### Conversation.

Lequel de ces deux porte-	Celui que vous avez à la main.
feuilles est à vous?	. , ,
Laquelle de ces deux robes	Je préfère celle-ci à celle-là.
préférez – vous ?	
Est-ce là votre bague?	Oui, c'est ma bágue d'or.
Sont-ce là vos gants?	Non, ce ne sont pas mes gants,
	ce sont ceux de ma cousine.

Avez-vous reguina letre i Je n'ei rect if la vôtre (yours) ni celle de votre père.	
Le commerce est-il util auge, Qui, très, utile; il les, enrichit. hommes?	
Et l'agriculture est-elle aussi utile aux hommes?       Oui, elle est encore plus utile que le commerce, elle neur- rit les hommes.         Quelle maison vendez-vous?       J'ai deux maisons à vendre,	
celle de mon oncle et celle de mon grand-père	
A qui donnerez-vous ce canif? Je le donnerai à celui qui aura le moins ( <i>the least</i> ) de fautes dans son thème.	
Voici du jambon et du pain, Merci, nous en avons dejà pris en voulez-vous? (taken).	
Avez-vous apporté les vertes ?' Non; je n'y ai pas pensé. Madame votre mère est-elle Oui; elle y est. à la maison (chez elle)?'	
Vous êtes 'si sérieux. A quo?' Je pense à ma pauvre mère pensez-vous donc? qui est très malade.	
Reading-lesson.	
La fermière de Chamouni.	
Mr. de Saussure voyageait à pied, avec quelques-uns de ses amis, aux glaciers de Chamouni. 'Le soleil étant très	

ses amis, aux glaciers de Chamouni. 'Le soleil étant très ardent, ils entrèrent dans un verger pear s'y réposer à l'embre. Dus poires bien mûres que la soif et la chalsur rendaient très séduisantes, les tentèrent, et ils commençaient à en cueillir, quand la maîtresse du verger parut et s'avança vers eux. Sur-le-champ l'un des voyageurs alla au-devant d'elle, et lui dit de ne pas s'inquiéter, qu'on lui paierait ses poires. 'Mangez-les seulement (only), dit-elle; ce n'est pas pour cela que je viens. Celui qui a fait ces fruits, ne les a pas envoyés pour un seul.<sup>4</sup>

La fermière, a farmer's	or pea- la maitrease, the mistress.
sant's wife.	parus, appeared.
se reposer, to rest.	au-idevant d'elle, the most ber.
<i>Combre</i> , the shade.	s'inquiéter, to get alarmed, uneasy.
séduisant, seducing. tenter, to tempt.	envoyer, to send.
	······

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar.

# TWENTY SIXTH LESSON.

Of possessive Pronouns.

S. 1. The possessive pronouns are formed from the possessive adjectives mon, ton, son etc. They are:

Le mien, fem. la mienne, mine (my own). la tienne, thine. . . . . . 91.19 le tien 99 lé sien la siennne, his, hers, its own. 22 , la nôtre, ours. le nôtre' in the program in the second la vötre', yours. le vôtre le leur la leur, theirs. 79 pl. les miens tes miennes; les nôtres, les vôtres etc.

'Examples.'

Aves vous la vôtre, have you yours? Jai la mienne, I have mine, Ma sœur a la sienne, my sister has hers. Vos frères ont les leurs, your, brothers have theirs.

11 I.

, e +

Of relative Pronouns.

Sound Services

§. 2. The interrogative pronouns qui, quoi and lequel serve at the same time as relative pronouns, when they have a reference to some other noun or pronoun preceding. The declension of lequel and quoi is the same as p. 111. That of qui when relative, differs slightly from that of the interrogative qui? vis:

Sing. and Plur. Masc. and Fem. Nom. qui, who, which, that Gen. de qui and dont, whose, of (from) whom, of which Dat. à qui, to whom, Acc. que, whom, which, that.

§. 3. The nominative qui and the accusative que are indiscriminately used of persons and things for both genders and numbers. Ex.:

Un enfant qui pleure, a child that cries.

La porte qui est ouverte, the door which is open.

Le voyageur que j'ai quitté, the traveller whom I have left.

Le chappean que j'ai acheté, the hat (which) I have bought. Les maisons que vous avez vues, the houses (which) you

NB. The relative que, whom, which or that, is sometimes understood in English, but it must always be expressed in French.

§. 4. The genitive dont, whose, of which, is likewise used of all sorts of objects for both genders and numbers; but de qui, from whom or of whom, which is sometimes required instead of dont, has only a reference to persons! Ex.:

Je connais la femme dont vous avez reçu la lettre.

I know the woman whose letter you have received.

Je connais la femme de qui vous avez reçu la lettre.

I know the woman from whom you have received the letter.

L'homme - les hommes dont vous parlez.

The man -- the men of whom you speak.

La lettre — les lettres dont vous parlez.

The letter — the letters of which you speak.

§. 5. The dative to whom referring to persons, is rendered by à qui; but when animals or inanimate things are spoken of, the dative to which is rendered by auquel, à laquelle, pl. auxquels, auxquelles. Ex.:

Voilà l'homme à qui j'ai prêté mon livre. There is the man to whom I have lent my book. C'est le chien auquel vous avez donné à manger. That is the dog to which you gave to cat. Voilà une occasion à laquelle je ne pensais pas. There is an opportunity, I did not think of.

§. 6. After prepositions, qui is employed of persons, lequel of things. Ex.:

Le marchand avec qui j'ai voyagé.

The merchant with whom I travelled. But:

L'arbre sur le quel (not sur qui) je montais.

The tree upon which I climbed.

La clef avec la quelle on ouvrit la porte. The key with which they opened the door.

8\*

§. 7. Lequel, laquelle etc. must also be used instead of qui in the nominative, when the relative is separated from its noun by another substantive to which it might seem to relate. Ex.:

La tante de mon ami la quelle demeure à Paris. My friend's aunt who lives at Paris.

(qui demeure à Paris might relate to "mon ami".)

§. 8. That which and what, meaning that thing which, are expressed by ce qui for the nominative, and ce que for the accusative. All that is rendered: Nom. tout ce qui, A c c. tout ce que. Ex.:

What renders men miserable, is cupidity. Ce qui rend les hommes misérables, c'est la cupidité. I like all that is fine, j'aime tout ce qui est beau. Do what I tell you, faites ce que je vous dis.

#### Words.

L'agrément, m. the comfort,	négliger, to neglect:
pleasure.	inviter, to invite.
le tigre, the tiger.	châtier, to chastise.
le talent, the talent.	demeurer, to live.
<i>l'amiral</i> , the admiral.	vanter, to praise.
la victoire, the victory.	fertiliser, to fertilise.
le propriétaire, the owner.	déchirer, to tear.
les mœurs, f. the manners.	gagner, to win, gain.
le repas, dinner.	s'appelle, is called.
pardon ! pardon !	tout, adv. quite.
célèbre, celebrated.	trop, adv. too much.
	nt and à présent, now.

#### Reading Exercise. 51.

Mon frère est aussi grand que le tien. Ma sœur est du même âge que la vôtre. Vos roses sont très belles, mais elles sont moins belles que les miennes. Nos chiens sont aussi fidèles que les leurs. Voici les miens et les siens; où sont les vôtres? Chaque plante a sa propriété (*peculiarity*); la violette a la sienne, les roses ont les leurs. Le jeune homme avec qui vous êtes arrivé la semaine dernière, est mort (*died*) cette nuit. Le petit garcon dont le père est

mort. demeure maintenant chez nous. Les mœurs des anciens peuples étaient très différentes des nôtres. La ville a ses agréments et la campagne a les siens. Le marchand que vous avez vu hier chez moi, et chez qui demeure mon ami R., est parti pour Paris. L'homme dans la maison de qui nous demeurions l'année passée, est très malade. Celui qui se charge (meddles) trop des affaires d'autrui (of others) néglige souvent les siennes.

#### Thème. 52.

Your house is finer than mine, but my garden is finer than yours. I have read (lu) your letter and his. Do you prefer your knife to mine? Yes, I prefer mine to yours. Your rooms are more spacious Which bonnet is thine? (grandes) than ours, but ours are higher. I think (trouve) your garden very small. I beg your pardon (je vous demande pardon), Sir, it is not smaller than yours; it is quite as (aussi) large as that of my neighbour. Where is your pen and where is mine? Which? That which I have made (taillée) this morning. The English admiral who has gained (remporté) this victory, is Nelson. The man of whom you are speaking, is dead (mort). I have lost all (that) I have won. Is this the book (which) you have lost? No, it was a French book. The lady whom you know, is arrived. You speak of the lady whose husband (le mari) has been so ill. The horse to which you give some drink (à boire). The window upon which you lean (vous vous appuyez), is broken.

#### Conversation.

- Trouvez-vous mon jardin plus Au contraire, je le trouve plus petit que le mien. grand que le vôtre?
- celui de votre tante?
- On trouve votre chien très laid, n'est-cc pas ?"
- Comment s'appelle cet amiral qui a remporté la victoire de Trafalgar?

Que fait le tigre?

- Pourquoi ne remplissez-vous pas ce que vous promettez?
- Ta sœur est-elle plus âgée que la mienne?

Est-il aussi plus petit que Non, le sien est moins grand.

- Pardon, Monsieur, il est moins laid que le vôtre.
- C'est Nelson, le célèbre amiral anglais.

Il déchire la main qui le châtie. Je ne vous ai rien' promis?

Pardon, elle est plus jeune que la tienne (la vôtre).

Quel âge a-t-elle donc? Qui est ce petit garçon-là?

- Avec quoi le, voleur a-t-il ouvert (opened) la porte?
- Comment s'appelle le fleuve dont les eaux fertilisent l'Égypte?
- Avez-vous réellement une bonne intention?
- Elle a onze ans et demi. C'est le pauvre Henri dont le père est mort hier.
  - Il l'a ouverte avec une fausse clef. (See p. 72, §. 3.)

· 0-

 $(\mathbf{r}_{1}, \mathbf{f}_{2})$ 

1

Ce fleuve s'appelle le Nil.

Je vous assure que mon intention est aussi bonne que la vôtre.

# Reading-lesson.

...L'avare. (Fable.)

"Allons voir mes louis. Dieu! ils sont disparus! C'était là qu'ils étaient. O rage! ils n'y sont plus. Mes chers dix mille francs, qu'êtes-vous devenus? Quel est le scélérat, quelle est la main barbare Qui m'assassine ainsi? le coup est trop cruel: Je n'y survivrai pas. Mais qu'aperçois-je? ô ciel! Une bourse à mes pieds! comptons.... destin bizarre! Somme égale à la mienne, en louis bien sonnants!

Autant (as much as) je perds, autant je trouve. Que je suis malheureux! sans la perte que j'éprouve. Mes fonds étaient doublés, j'avais vingt mille francs."

Ingrats humains, voilà le tableau de la vie;

On pense au mal, le bien s'oublie (is forgotten).

L'avare, the miser.	:	le destin, fate.	i
allons voir, let us see.	`	bizarre, strange.	-
un louis, a louisd'or.		la somme, the sum. ab	١,
disparus, disappeared.	<b>*.</b> .	sonnaut, sounding.	
devenus, become of.		la perte, the loss.	·
le scélérat, the rascal.		éprouver, to undergo.	
le coup, the blow, trick.	,	le fonds, the capital, stock.	•
survivre, to survive.		ingrat, ungrateful.	
j'aperçois, I perceive.		le tableau, the picture.	
compter, to count.		le mal, the evil.	•
		1	

# TWENTY SEVENTH LESSON.

These are used by themselves, without a noua. substantive. They are:

A Sec. Garage

On or lon, one, they, people. Tout le monde, everybody.

Chacun, f. chacune, each, every-one. Aucun, f. aucune (with ne), none.

Quelqu'un, f. quelqu'une, some one, somebody, anybody. pl. Quelques-uns, f. quelques-unes, some.

Quiconque, whoever.

Personne (with ne), nobody. L'un, e — l'autre, one — the other. pl. les uns (unes) - bes subres; the one - the others. L'un (Tune) et Fautre, both. . .

L'un (l'une) ou l'autre, either.

Ni l'un (l'une) ni l'autre, neither.

L'un (l'une) l'autre, Gen. l'un de l'autre etc., | each other, pl. les uns (les unes) les poutres, one another. Un autre, f. une autre, another. .1

D'autres, pl. others. Autrui (Gen. d'autrui, Dat. à autrui), others, another. Tel, f. telle, many a man.

Plusieurs, several.

La plupart, most (with a following Genitive, as: la,... plupart des hommes, most men).

Tout, f. toute, all, everything.

pl. tous, toutes, all.

Quelque chose, something, anything.

Rien (with ne), nothing.

Le, la, même, the same. 19 1. ....

# Remark.

1) L'on is employed instead of on, for the sake of euphony; after et; si, ou, où and sometimes after que. Ex.:

Si l'on voit, if one sees.

But on never takes an  $l_1$ , when it is followed by le, la or 

Si on le poit, not si l'on le voit.

2) Several, off, the indefinite in up e rails (age p. 62) have been enumerated here again among the indefinite pronouns, because they may be used as such, viz : aucin, plusieurs, tout and le même. Ex.: . .

Combien de plumes avez-vous, how mapy pens have you? Je n'en ai aucune, I have none.

J'en ai plusieurs, I have several.

Avez-vous appelé tous les enfants, have you called all the children?

Oui, je les ai appelés tous, yes, I have called them all. 3) When personne and rien are used by themselves, they cannot take ne, but they retain their negative meaning, as:

Qui avez-vous rencontré ! . Personne.

- Whom have you met? Nobody.

Sec. Her States . . . 1

. . . 1 .

Examples of most of the indefinite pronouns will be found in the following Reading Exercise 53.

#### Words.

Le défaut, the fault. ..... to meet. le cahier, the copy-book. chanter, to sing. blämer, to blame. le verbe; the verb. le camarade, the comrade. rire, to laugh. la confiance, the confidence. arriver, to arrive. geiter, to spoil. venu, come (part: p.). méchant, e, naughty. secourir, to 'assist'. 🕚 muire, to hurt, injure. jaloux, se, jealous. régulier, ère, regular. je veux, I will. ressembler, to resemble, be like. poteri, e, 'rotten. CC

#### 

On chante, on joue et l'on danse. Tout le monde veut (wishes) être heureux. Chacun veut avoir raison (be right). L'un était riche, l'autre était pauvre : l'un et l'autre étaient malheureux. Les unes dansaient, oles autres jouaient. Ces deux frères se ressemblent l'un à l'autre ne blâmez pas les travaux d'autrui. Avez-vous vu quelqu'un? Je n'ai vu personne. Nous avons quelque chose de meilleur.' Tel rit aujourd'hui qui ne rira plus demain. Chacun a ses défautes. Tout le monde a son faible (weakness). La plupart de ces

pommes sont pourries. Ne savez-vous (do you know): rien de nouveau? Nous ne savons 'rien. Nous n'avons rencontré personne. Quiconque salira ses cahiers, sera puni. Donnezmoi quelques-unes de vos belles poires. Quelques-uns de mes camarades sont malades.

Thème. 54.

One is happy, when one is content. They speak of peace (de la paix). They say so (le)." Everybody likes him. Every-one thinks of himself (d soi). Everybody has his [own] faults. Somebody has told (did) it (to) me. Those apples are fine, I will take some, Whoever knows. (connaît) this men. has little (peu de) confidence in him Nobedy knows that woman. Henry thinks of (a) nobody. (The) one arrives, the other sets out. The one (plur. fem.) play, the others dance. and sing. These two girls love one another. I do not know them all, but I know several of them (en). Most verbs are The princes were jealous, of one another. Will regular. you have anything? I thank you, I will have (je no verw) nothing. These people (gens) speak ill (mal) of one another. (i. e. the one of the other). A State Barrier A

Conversation.

·. ·

Que fait-on là? Qui a dit cela?	On joue et l'on danse. Tout le monde le dit. Chacun le veut.
Qui veut ce papier?	Chacun le veut.
Vos deux neveux sont-ils	L'un estriche, l'autre est pauvre.
riches?	in the second
Comment a -t - il fait pour étre pauvre?	Il a perdu toute sa fortune all ' jeu. Oui, elles sont sœurs; elles se
Ces deux femmes sont-elles	Oui, elles sont sœurs; elles se ressemblent l'une à l'autre.
As-tu vu quelqu'un dans ce jardin?	LALA ATTATA
Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau?	Je ne sais $(know)$ rien du tout $\forall i (at all)!$
	Is sont partis tous les leux.
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	(Ils sont partis l'un et l'autre.)
Voulez-vous quelque chose?	Non, merci; je ne veux rien.
Avez-vous trouve les lettres perdues?	J'en ai retrouvé quelques-unes, la plupart sont perdues.
Avec qui êtes-vous venu?	Je'ne suis venu avec personne.
Qui est là?	Personne. mi mi

As -tu toutes les boîtes ? Je n'én ai aueune. Comment étaient les princes ? Ils étaient jaloux l'un de l'autre -se princes ? Ils étaient jaloux l'un de l'autre (or les uns des autres.) Avez-vous rencontré quelqu'un ? Pardon, je n'ai rencontré personne.

# Reading lesson.

Pouvoir de la concorde.

The average through

Un homme qui svait douze fils, les fit (had them) ressembler autour de son lit de mort, et comme (as) ils attendaient sa dernière bénédiction, il leur montra un faisceau de flèches, et ordonna à chacun d'essayer de les rompre ainsi liées toutes à la fois. Aucun d'eux ne put (could) y parvenir. Il leur dit ensuite de faire le même essai, en les prenant (by taking them) l'ane après l'autre. Ils les rompirent de cette manière avec facilité. Le père les rendit alors attentifs à cet emblême du pouvoir de la concorde. "Observez, mes enfants, leur dit-il, qu'aussi longtemps que vous resterez unis, personne ne pourra (will be able) vous vaincre."

Le pouvoir, the power, might.	à la fois, at once.
la concorde, concord.	parvenir, to succeed.
rassembler, to assemble.	ensuite, at length, finally.
autour de, round, about.	<i>lessai</i> , the attempt.
le lit de mort, the death-bed.	la facilité, (the) easiness.
la bénédiction, the blessing."	alors, then.
un faisceau, a bundle.	l'embléme, the emblem.
la flèche, the arrow.	observer, to observe.
romore to break	unin to unite
ainsi lié, thus bound together.	vaincre, to conquer, vainquish.

# TWENTY EIGHTH LESSON. Of Passive verbs.

Passive verbs are formed, in French as in English, by joining the participle past of an active verb to the auxiliary verb  $\hat{e}tre$ , to be; for instance, of the verb donner, the passive voice is **être donné**, to be given; of finin — **être fini**, to be finished etc. It is to be observed, that in French's the participle past varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun which stands as the nominative to the verb.

#### Conjugation of a parative verk

Infinitive Mood. Étre loué, to be praised.

#### Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je suis loufe or loufe, I am praised tu es loué or loufe, thou art praised il est loué, he is praised elle est louée, she is praised nous sommes loués or louées, we are praised vousjétes loués or louées, you are praised ils sont louées, they are praised. elles sont louées, I they are praised. J'étais loué or louée, I was praised tu étais loué or louée etc. il était loué etc.

il était loué etc. effe était louée etc.

Preterite.

Je fus loué or louée, I was praised etc.

1st Future.

Je serai loué or louée, I shall be praised etc.

1st Conditional.

Je serais loué or louée, I should be praised etc.

# Imperative Mood.

#### Sois loué or louée, be praised

ot - soyons loués or louées, let us be praised

10 seyes loués or loués, be praised.

🕦 🗄 Subjunctive Mood. 🚽

#### Present.

Que je sois loué or loués, that I (may) be praised stc.

#### Imperfect.

Que je fusse loué or louée, that I (might) be praised etc.

# Participle.

Etant loué or louée, being praised.

••

Compound Tenses. 1000 Infinitive Mood. Avoir ete love o, to have been praised. Indicative Mood. Perfect. Jai été loué, e, I have been praised etc. Pluperfect. Javais été loué, e, I had been praised etc. Compound of the Preterite, J'eus été loué, e, I had heen praised etc. • • • " "1 2nd Future. J'aurai été loué, e, I shall have been praised etc. 2nd Conditional. N. 6 N. . . . . J'aurais été loué, e, ! I should have been praised etc. Jeusse été loué, e, Subjunctive Mood. . . . Perfect. Que j'aie été loué, e, that I (may) have been praised etc. Pluperfect. Que j'eusse été loué, e, that I (might) have been praised. .... Partielple. Past. Ayant été loué, e, having been praised. ..  $\mathbf{R} \mathbf{e} \mathbf{m} \mathbf{a} \mathbf{r} \mathbf{k} \mathbf{c}$ . . . . . . . The English preposition by, with the passive voice, is to be rendered by de, when the verb denotes a sentiment or an inward act of soul, and by par, when it expresses an outward action. Ex.: • • • .15

He is esteemed by everybody. · W1 Il est estimé de tout le monde.

. The city of Troy was taken by the Greeks. La ville de Troie, fut prise par les Grecs.

... 84

motola station of HarNewter werbs, -9119 There is another kind of verbs, whose Participle past is likewise joined to the auxiliary être, to be, viz. the neuter verbs, many of which take être instead of avoir, in their compound tenses, ex. gr. stre arrivé; to We arrived; être sorti, to have gone out: Ex.: ангар собораль. 7...1 . 22.0 Perfect. Je suis arrivé or arrivée, I have (am) arrived 1.11 tu es arrivé or arrivée etc. Pluperfect. J'étais arrivé or arrivée, I had arrived etc. Join aven 2nd Future. 1 11 9ni le serai arrivé or arrivée, I shall have (be) arrived etc. 2nd Conditional. 1ť Je serais arrivé or arrivée, I should have arrived etc. 10 111.1 1 1 ... Notes Most of the French neuter verbs, however, are conjugated with the auxiliary avoir, for ex.; demourer, to live; Perfect j'ai demouré etc. 1101 A Real of a Juran Lond to Words. La bataille, the battle. envoyer, to send. la loi, law. mordre, to bite. le voleur, the thief. blesser, to wound. le voyageur," the traveller. démolir, to demolish. le flatteur, the flatterer. rebâtir, to rebuild. la langue, the language. maltraiter, to treat ill, abuse. da cour, the court. 'enlever, to take away. la poste, the 'post-'office. inviter, to invite. - NY77 'le chemin, the road. ' sauver, to save. attaquer, to attack: vertueux, se, virtuous. mconnu, unknown · assassiné, murdered. rester, to remain. parce que, because. tuer, to kill. 'enrage', mad. écrit, f. e, written. POLICIAN DE POLICI Part first some dir group Reading a Exercise, 55. Cap. S. Cap.

Mon fils Théodore est aimé et loué de ses maîtres, parce .qu'il. esti appliqué et attentif. Gustave Adolphe, roi de Suède, fut tué à la bataille de Lützen, à l'âge de trente - sept ans. Si vous êtes vertueux, vous serez aimés et estimés de tout le monde. Ayez soin que les lois soient observées ponctuellement. Quiconque les transgresse, sera puni. Le soldat qui a été blessé, est mort. La maison qui a été démolie, a été rebâtie. Ce pauvre chien est bien maltraité par son matté. Hier je fus attaqué par un voleur. Mon argent, ma montre, tout me fut enlevé. Quand nos thèmes seront finis, ils serant corrigés par notre professeur. Mon père a été offensé par un homme inconnu. J'ai été invité au bal; ma sœur eût été invitée aussi, si elle n'était pas malade. Deux des voyageurs sont restés en chemin; ils ne sont pas encore arrivés.

#### Thème. 56.

I am loved by (de) my parents. Mr. Bell is esteemed by everybody. The French language is spoken at (a) all the courts of Europe. Charles was bitten by (par) a mad dog. That dog must (doit) be killed. This ring was given me by my grandfather. By whom was this letter written ?... It (elle) was written by a little boy. Frederick has been punished by his teacher. Have you been invited to the ball? No, Sir, I have not been invited. I shall perhaps (peut-être) be invited to-morrow. This letter must be sent to the post-office. My neighbour was formerly (autrefois) not esteemed. (The) flatterers are not esteemed. The child has not been saved. It would have been saved, if it had cried for help (au secours). The castle was built in the year 1620. Those brave soldiers will be praised and rewarded. Will Mr. B.'s garden be sold? It is already sold. Caesar (César) was murdered by Brutus. h High a

#### Conversation.

. . . . .

Êtes-vous aimés de vos amis?	Nous avons toujours été aimés de tous nos amis.
Avez-vous été blâmés de	Au contraire, nous axons été
votre maître?	loues.
Croyez-vous que mes ardres soient exécutés?	Je ne le crois pas.
Par qui as-tu été offensé?	Par un homme inconnu.
Les bons rois sont-ils aimés?	Ils sont toujours aimés et estimés.
Ces objets seront-ils vendus?	Non, Monsieur, ils ne seront pas vendus.
Far qui Henri IV fut-il as- sassiné (murdered)?	Il fut assassiné par Ravaillac.

Et dans quelle année? Henri IV fut assassiné en 1610.
Quel fut le sort de Charles X? ; Ce rei fat exile (bannished) de
France en 1830.
Où avez-vous demeuré l'an- Nous avons demeuré à Vienne. née dernière?
née dernière? Ces jeunes gens ont été mal Je crois qu'ils ont été maltrai- traités. Savez-vous par tés par leur maître. qui?
La bataille de Leipsic fut-elle Très sanglante. Heancoup de sanglante (bloody)? soldats at d'officiers furent tués et encore un plus grand nombre furent blessés.
Voyez cette pauvre fille! Elle a été mordue par un chien Qu'a-t-elle donc?
N'a-t-on pas tué ce chien? On ma l'a pastencome tué, mais il sera, tué tout de suite,
Que va-t-on (will they) faire Elle sera demolie et puis rebâtie de cette vieille maison? à neuf (anew).
Avez-vous bien dormi? Non, je n'ai pas "bien dormi.
( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( )
Reading - lesson.

A STREET BERGER AND A STREET A STREET A

Le blon., mar avî terrise.

François Pizarre voyageait en Amérique et, pour abréger son chemin, traversa à la nage (swimming) la rivière de Barraca. Un de ses esclaves indians jut entraîné par la rapidité du torrent. Pizarre le suivit (followed him), le saisit par les cheveux, et le ramena au rivage, après avoir lui-même couru le danger d'étre englouti par les flots.

Un de ses officiers lui, représentait le péril auquel il s'était exposé. Mais Pizarre lui répondit: "Vous ne connaissez pas le prix d'un serviteur (servant) fidèle."

Voyager, to travel. . ramener, to bring back. abréger, to abridge. le rivage, the bank. le torrent, the stream. engloutir, to gulp down, devour. les flots, the waves. entrainer, to carry away. saisir, to seize. le prix, the price, value.

. (1

# TWENTY NINTH LESSON. Reflected verbs.

These verbs are called reflected or reflective, because their subject and object are the same person or thing, so that the subject acts upon itself, and is, at the same time, the agent and the object of the action: Reflected verbs, therefore, have always, besides the subject, another personal pronoun, viz. me, te, se, myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, for the singular; nous, vous, se, ourselves, yourselves, themselves, for the plural. But it frequently happens, that, in English, the second pronoun is only implied, whereas it must be expressed in French. Ex. to repent, se repentir; Pres. I repent, je me repens etc.

Observe that all reflected verbs, without exception, are conjugated with the auxiliary être, as: I have hurt myself, je me suis blessé, and not: je m'ai blessé.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected verbs. - c '

11.4

30 - X	Se réjouir, to rejeice.
onen antsar- tE	Indicative Mood.
	Present Tense.
Ч. нр на Б. н	Je me réjonis, I rejoice tu te réjonis, thou rejoicest il (elle) se réjonit, he (she) rejoices
	vous nous réjouissons, we rejoice vous vous réjouisses, you rejoice ils (elles) se réjouissent, they rejoice.
•	''' 'Imperfect.
	Je me réjouissais, I rejoiced etc.
	Preterite.

Je me réjouis, I rejoiced etc.

#### . 1st Future.

Je me réjonirai y I shall rejoice etc.		۰.
lst Conditional. Je me réjouirais, I should rejoice etc.	· ••• ·	•
Imperative Mood.	1 19. 18 15 11	-
Réjouis-toi, rejoice réjouissons-nous, let us rejoice réjouissez-vous, rejeice.		

# Subjunctive Mond.

Present.

for Que je me réjoniese, that I (may) rejoice etc.

# Imperfect.

114

Que je me réjouisse, that I (might) rejoice etc.

toploion size , we  $\mathbf{P}$  a ratii  $\mathbf{c}$  i  $\mathbf{p}$  i contrast,  $\mathbf{c}_{i}$  ,  $\mathbf{y}$ Se (me, 'te etc.) réjouissant, rejoicing....

> Compound Tenses. Langer

# Infinitive Mood. S'etre rejoui, a, to have rejoiced.

### Indicative Mood.

Perfect. Sumpley Lake ÷. Suid Journe suis réjoui, e, I have rejoiced tu t'es réjoui, e, thou hast rejoiced il s'est réjoni, he has rejoiced elle s'est réjouie, she has rejoiced nous nous sommes réjouis, ies , we have rejoiced vous vous êtes réjoui(s), ie(s), you have rejoiced ils se sont réjouis j'm | they have rejoiced. . M elles se sont réjouies, , , it i un Pluperfect. Je m'étais réjoui, e, I had rejoiced · · · · tu tétoris réjoui, 6, thou hadst rejoiced etc. Compound of the Preterite. Je me fus rejoui, e, I had rejoiced tu te fus réjoui, c etc. Otto, French Conv.-Grammar.

<sup>9</sup> 

#### 2nd Future.

Je me serai réjoui, e, I shall have rejoiced tu te seras réjoui, e etc.

#### 2nd Conditional.

Je me serais réjoui, e, I should have rejoiced tu te serais réjoui, e etc.

Second compound of the Preterite. Si je me fusse réjoui, e, if I had rejoiced etc.

#### Subjunctive Mood.

#### Perfect.

Que je me sois réjoui, e, that I (may) have rejoiced que tu te sois réjoui, e etc. qu'il se soit réjoui (qu'elle se soit réjouie) etc.

#### Pluperfect.

Que je me fusse réjoui, e, that I (might) have rejoiced que tu te fusses réjons, e etc.

### Participle.

S'étant (m'étant etc.) réjoui, e, having rejoiced.

# With interrogation.

#### Present.

Me réjouis-je (better: est-ce que je me réjouis, do I rejoice? te réjouis-tu (or est-ce que tu te réjouis), dost thou rejoice? se réjouit-il (or est-ce qu'il se réjouit) etc. nous réjouissons-nous? etc. vous réjouissez-vous? etc. se réjouissent-ils (-elles)? etc.

#### Perfect.

Me suis-je réjoui, e, have I rejoited? t'es-tu réjoui, e, hast thou rejoited? s'est-il réjoui, has he rejoited? s'est-elle réjouis, has she rejoited? nous sommes-nous réjouis, ies, have we rejoited? vous êtes-vous réjouis, ie(s), have you rejoited? se sont-ils réjouis, have they rejoited?

# With negation.

Présent.
1. An me me minute note T do not rejoice
tu ne te réjouis pas etc.
nous ne nous reiouissons nas etc.
the state of the s
We te rejouis pas, do not rejoice
ne nove rejoursons nos, let us not rejoice "
ne vous feindissez pas, do not rejoice.
Perfect:
Je ne me suis pas réjoui, e, I have not rejoiced
tu ne tes pas, réjoui, e etc.
il (elle) ne s'est pas réjoui, e etc.
nous ne nous sommes pas réjouis, ies etc.
vous ne vous êtes pas réjoui(s), te(s) etc.
ils (diles) ne se sont pas rejouis, ies etc.
Infinitive.
Ne pas se réjouir, not to rejoice
ne pas s'être réjoui, e, not to have rejoiced.
2
With negation and interrogation.
Present Ne me réjouis-je pas? est-ce que je ne me réjouis pas? {doI not rejoice?
Ne me réjouis-je pas? est-ce que je ne me réjouis pas? (do: I not rejoice?
ne te réjouis-tu pas, dost thou not rejoice?
ne se réjouit il pas, does he not rejoice, etc.
Perfect.
Ne me suis-je pas réjoui, e, have I not rejoiced?
ne l'es-tu pas réjoui, e
ne s'est-il (-elle) pas réjoui, e etc
ne nous sommes-nous pas réjouis, ies etc.
na nove ôtas-nove nas méinice) is/s) at c

ne vous êtes-vous pas réjau(s), ie(s) etc. ne se sont-ils (-elles) pas réjouis, ies etc.

# Remarks.

1) A great many verbs having no pronouns in English, are reflected in French. The following are the most used:

s'apercevoir, to perceive.	s'imaginer, to fancy.
s'approcher, to come near. s'arrêter, to stop.	se hâter, se dépêcher, to make haste. se lever, to rise, to get up.
se oaisser, to stoop.	se lever, to rise, to get up. se marier, to marry. se moquer, to mock, scoff.
se coucher, to go to bed. se dépêcher, to make haste.	<b>-</b> <i>i i</i>
s'en aller, to go away. s'endormir, to fall asleep.	se repentir, to repent.
s'enrhumer, to catch cold. s'entretenir, to discourse with.	
s'étonner, to wonder. s'éveiller, to awake' se fier, to trust.	se taire, to be silent. se tromper, to be mistaken. se vanter, to boast.
oc just, w wudt.	. ac cumics, to DUGOU.

Examples.

I rise, je me lève. — He is silent, il se tait. I have risen or got up, je me suis levé. We have perceived, nous nous sommes aperçus etc.

2) Observe also these expressions ; . . . . . .

How are you, comment vous portez-vous? I am well, je me porte bien etc.

Words.

La conduite, the behaviour. fondre, to cast.
la forêt, the forest. bien, well; mieux, better.
le doulet, the ball. se venger de, to revenge on.
la reconnaissance, the thanks. "se conduire, to behave.
le titre, the right. se distinguer, to distinguish.
la Bohème, Bohemis. enfermer, to shut in.
tard, late. le most, the evil. sauver, to save.
se rendre, to surrender. le malheur, misfortune.
vaillamment, bravely.

## Reading Exercise. 57.

Vous vous trompez, Monsieur. Je me suis trompé aussi. Ma sœur se sera trompée en (*in*) vous donnant la lettre. Il y a (*it is*) très longtemps que nous ne nous (*each other*) sommes vus. Le général Ostermann s'est distingué beaucoup à l'affaire (*battle*) de Culm. S'il ne s'était pas défendu si vaillamment, l'armée alliée aurait été enformée dons les montagnes de la Bohème. Lui et ses 8000 Russes se sont acquis (gained) des titres à la reconnaissance de FEurope. Dans une betaille où les boulets ennemis voltient ( Row) au4 tour de hi, Napoléon s'écria: "Le boulet qui doit me tuer, n'est pas encore fondu (cont). ". Pourquoi vous êtes-vous levé si tard? Je me suis levé à sept heures. Ne vous affligez pas tant, mes amis; habituez-vous à souffrir avec courage les maux de la vie. Vous auriez été sauvé, si vous vous étiez réfugié au camprophy ou officie ;- . .

#### Thème. 58.

1.1 /

I rejoice greatly (beaucoup) to see you. Charles has wounded himself with a penknife. The enemies have surrendered. A good Christian does not revenge himself on his enemy. The soldier has distinguished himself; he will be rewarded. Get up ! I shall get up directly. Has my brother got up? He (has) got up at six o'clock. Be not sorry, children, exclaimed 'he, we shall' all be saved! You are mistaken, Sir. Yes, it is true (vrai), I have been mistaken. Why do you rejoice at the (du) misfortune of others? When do you go to bed? I go to bed at eleven o'clock; but yesterday I went (have gone) to bed at ten o'clock. Make haste! Where is your mother? She is not at home (à la muison); she is taking a walk. I have taken a walk this morning. When will you take a walk? I shall take a walk this evening. How are you to-day? I am well, but my brother is not well. A (have) stopped at the gate (ports). Rest a little, and come near the fire (du feu). Share the are conversation.

• / <u>.</u> . . .

Vous vous êtes trompé, mon Pardon, je ne me suis pas ami, n'est-ce pas? .... trompé. and the second

Vous concherez-vous, mes Nous nous concherons tout de 

A quelle heure vous êtes- Je me couchai à dix heures. vous couché hier?

Et votre frère?.... Mon frère s'est couché à onze . with dit . heures.

Monsieur votre père s'est-il Oui, il s'est levé aujourd'hui déjà levé? de bonne heure (early).

Où êtes-vous donc restés si Nous nous sommes égarés (went astray) dans la forêt. longtemps?

Ta actir s'est-elle lavés Je arois qu'elle ne s'est par qui s'est lavé dans cettereau? ...Moi. Paurquoi vous êtes-veus levés. Nous ne nous sommes pas rsi tard?. Qui veut se: promener avec Ma accur et moi moi? N'avez-vous, pàs honte der -Rardonnez-nous pour cette fois:

Comment s'y est-il comporté Il s'est défendu vaillamment. (behaved)?

Yous êtes-vous bien amusé? Oui, assez (pretty) bien.

Reading-lesson.

Sec. 20. 4

Le sansonnet.

Le vieux chasseur Maurice avait dans, sa chambre un sansonnet qu'il avait élevé et qui avait appris (learned) à articuler quelques mots. Quand il disait par, exemple: "Sansonnet, où es.-tu?" l'oissau répandait toujours: "Me voilà!"

Le petit Charles, fils du voisin, aimait beaucoup l'oiseau et lui faisait (*paid*) souvent des visites. Un jour il vint voir le sansonnet pendant que le chasseur était absent; il s'empara bien vite de l'oiseau, le mit (*put il*) dans as poche et voulait s'esquiver avec son larcin.

Mais dans ce moment le chasseur entra chez lui. Il crut (thought) faire plaisir au petit garçon en demandant (by asking) comme de coutume: "Sansonnet, où es-tu?" — "Me veilà!" cria de toutes ses forces (his might) l'oiseau qui était caché dans la poche du petit garçon.

C'est ainsi que le petit voleur fut trahi.

Il est difficile de cacher un vol; il est presque toujours découvert.

pendant que, whilst s'emparer, to lay hold of.	la poche, the pocket. s'esquiver, to run away. le larcin, the larceny. de coutime, as he used to do cacher, to hide. trahir, to betray. le vol, the theft.
rue, quicg.	ie vol, the theit.

#### 1.35

# THRTIETH LESSON:

Of Impersonal, verbs.

§. 1. There are some verbs which relate to no person or thing, and which are only conjugated in the third person singular. They are called *impersonal verbs*. The compound tenses are formed by means of the auxiliary *avoir*. Such are:

Neiger, to snow; — il neige, it snows. pleuvoir, to rain; — il pleut, it rains. grêler, to hail; — il grêle, it hails. topmer, to thunder; — il tonne, it thunders. faire des éclairs, to lighten; — il fait des éclairs, it lightens. geler, to freeze; — il gèle, it freezes. dégeler, to thaw; — il dégèle, it thaws. importer, to matter; — il importe, it matters.

§. 2. Several other verbs may become impersonal, when employed in the same manner. Ex.:

il suffit, it suffices.	il	convient, it is convenient.
il semble, it seems.	il	arrive, it happens.
il vaut mieux, it is better.	il	s'agit, it is the question, etc.

#### Models of Conjugation.

#### .1) Neiger, to snow.

<b>1</b>	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	Il neige.	Qu'il neige.
Impf.	Il n <b>ei</b> geait.	qu'il neigeât.
Pret.	П neigea.	
Fut.	Il neigera.	na je kolo
Perfect.	Il a neigé.	gu'il ait neigé.
Pluperf.	Il avait neigé.	
	et. Il eut neigh, 🗤	
2nd Fut.	П aura neigé.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
Interrogat	tively: neige-t-il? n	neigeait-il? a-t-il neigé? etc.
	Cond	litional.
Pres. Il r		2nd Cond. Il aurait neigé.
. 11 - 1	. Par	ticiple.
Pres. Nei	aeant.	Past. Avant najaé.

## 2) /11 // 4, thirt '4 / Turn Are.

Infinitive Mood. Y avoir; there'to be.

Indicative Mood. Present. R y/a, there is, there are. Il y avait, 1/ there was, there were. .... Imperfect. Preterite. Il y eut, 11.1.1.1 Il y aura, there will be. Future. . Girz  $\Pi y a eu$ , there has or have been. Perfect. Pluperfect. R y avait eu, there had been. Comp. Pret. Il y eut eu; 1st Cond.  $\Pi$  y aurait, there would be. 2nd Cond.  $\Pi$  y aurait eu, there would have been. Interrogatively. Y a - t - il, is there? are there? Negatively.  $\Pi$  n'y a pas, there is or are not. Negat. interrog. Ny a-t-il pas, is or are there not? Subjunctive Mood. Present. Qu'il y ait, that there (may) be. 10: E M Imperfect. Qu'il y e u t, that there (might) be. Qu'il y ait eu, that there (may) have been. Perfect. Pluperfect. Qu'il y cût eu, that there (might) have been.

Note 1. This verb in English is used in the *plural*, when followed by a plural, substantive; in French, it remains always in the *singular*, as:

There are birds which etc., il'y a des oiseaux qui etc.

Note 2. It often happens that the verb il y a is rendered ago, these or for these. Ex.:

Il y a deux mois que je l'ai vu. I saw him two months ago. Il y a huit jours que suis malade.

٩

ł

I have been ill these eight days.

#### 8) Il fait froid.

Present. Il fait froid, it is cold. Imperfect. Il faisait froid, it was cold. Preterite. Il fit Aqid., it was cold.

Future. Il fera froid, it will be cold etc. Perfect. Il a fait froid, it has been cold, etc.

Thus: il fait chaud, it is warm; il fait jour, it is day-light. The English "it is said" is rendered in French: on dit. "

an and Infinitive Mood.and theat bear
Falleir, to be needful, necessary.
- Indicative Modd.
Present. Il faut, it is necessary.
Imperfect. Il fallait, } it was necessary. Preterite. Il fallut, } 1st Future. Il faudra, it will be necessary.
1st Future. Il faudra, it will be necessary.
Perfect. Il a fallu, it has been necessary.
Perfect. It a fallu, it has been necessary. Pluperfect. It avait fallu, it had been necessary. Comp. Pret. Il eut fallu, it had been necessary.
Comp. Pret. Il eut fallu, ) It had been necessary.
2nd Future. Il aura fallu, it will have been necessary.
1st Cond. Il faudrait, it would be necessary, ( ought to).
2nd Cond. Il agrait falls, it would have been necessary.
Interrogatively: faut-il? fallait-il? fallut-il? a.t.i. fallu? (is it necessary? was it necessary? has it been necessary?)
Subjunctive Mood, a segment rate
Pres. Qu'il faille, that it (may) be necessary,
Impf. Qu'il fallût, that it (might) be necessary.
Perf. Qu'il ait fallu, that it (may) have been necessary.
Perf. Qu'il ait fallu, that it (may) have been necessary. Plupf. Qu'il eut fallu, that it (might) have been necessary.
Participle.
Pres. wanting. Past. Ayant fallu.

#### Romawks.

1) The learner must observe that the above verb failed is absolutely impersonal throughout all its tenses. When its subject is a personal pronoun, as: I must, you must, etc., we may add for the first person me, for the second is, for the third kei, in the plural nous, yous, lear. More frequently however, que with the subjunctive mood is preferred. Ex: Pres. I must read: il me faut lire or il faut que je lise.

thou must reader il te fant ling an Hil faut que tu lises.

he must read: il lui faut lire or il faut qu'il lise

she must read: il lui faut lire or, il faut qu'elle lise.

. we must read: il nous faut lirs or il faut que nous lisions. you must read: il vous faut lire or il faut que vous lisics. they must read: il leur faut lire or il faut qu'ils lisent.

Perf. I have been obliged to read: il m'a fallu tire etc.

2) When the subject is a initial factor is used in the present of falloir is used in the present of falloir is used in the present of falloir of the subjunctive; but when it stands in the imperfect, preterite or conditional, the verb following it, must be rendered by the imperfect of the subjunctive. Ex.:

The boy must work, il faut que le garçon travaille.

The boy will be obliged to work, il faudra que le garçon travaille.

The soldiers were obliged to retire, il fallait or il fallut que les soldats se retirassent.

8) When the verb *il faut* is followed immediately by a noun substantive, it signifies to want; here also one of the pronouns *me*, *te*, *tui*, *nous*, *vous*, *leur*, according to the person, must be inserted. Ex.:

I want (must have) a hat, il me faut un chapeau. He wants some money, il lui faut de l'argent.

We' want some bread, il nous faut du pain.

I want another pen, il me faut une autre plume. Did you want some books, vous fallait-il des livres?

#### Words.

Le compte, the account, bill. la redingote, the coat.	la chaise, the chair. cesser, to leave of, cease.
le depart, the departure.	quitter, to leave.
ta rue, the street.	dessiner, to draw.
le sort, (the) fate.	partir, to set out, depart.
la cambre, the room.	honnête, honest.
manquer, to be wanting.	mécontent, e, discontent.
gouverner, to govern.	sagement, adv. wisely.

## Reading Exercise. 59.

Il pleut. Je crois qu'il pleuvra demain. J'entends tonner. En effet (really), il tonne. Il vaut mieux (*it is better*) qu'il pleuve. Il a neigé toute la nuit. Il y a des hommes qui sont toujours mécontents. Il fait chaud; il faisait trop chaud dans votre chambre. Il n'y avait ni hommes, ni femmes, ni enfants. Il faut partir. Il vous faut partir. Il nous fallait finir à quatre heures. Il fallait venir plus tôt (cardier). Ne faudra-t-il pas lui pardonner? Il faut que Charles rest à la mision. Il fallat que Charles restat à la mision. Il fallat que je lui pardonnasse. Il me fallut lui pardonner. Il y aura cette sanée beaucoup de cerises. Il faut que les enfants obéissent à l'instant (*instantly*). Il y-a eu de (at) tout temps des flatteurs. Il a fallu qu'elle payat son compte. Il y a un Dieu qui gouverne tout sagement. Qu'est-ce qu'il vous faut? Il me faut une autre chambre.

- inner - 1 25

-1.

1 1 1 1 1 1 1

## Thème. 60.

- ... Does it snow ? No, it does not snow, 'it rains. It is cold to-day of I shall not leave the room . Yesterday it was (has been), very cold, and it has snowed a great deal (beaugoup). It thunders and lightens. There are too many chairs in this room. There was much wine on the table. Is there [sny] money in the purse? There are six franks (francs) Fin it]. There will be a great many nute this year. There are streets in London, which are very long. /It is necessary to begin. It was necessary to set out. You must begin. He must read. We were obliged to set out... He has been obliged to speak. The boy must work. The girls must draw. My father has been obliged to go to Paris. Your uncle will be obliged to leave London. The soldiers were obliged to leave the town. I want a good pen. Do you want another room? Nes, L want a larger room. What do you want? I want or I must have (de I) money. . .

# Conversation.

Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui?	Il fait beau (mauvais) temps. Oui, il pleut très fort.
Pleut – il?	
Pleuvra – t – il ?	Je ne crois pas qu'il pleuve.
La pluie a-t-elle cessé?	Pas encore; il pleut sans cesse.
Que vous faut-il?	Il me faut une redingote neuve.
Y a-t-il assez de vin?	Oui, Monsieur, il y en a assez.
Y avait-il de, l'argent dans	Il y avait deux florins.
cette bourse?	
As-tu payé le compte?	
Faut-il que je me lève main- tenant?	amita
Vous a-t-il fallu partir de si bonne heure?	Le départ était fixé à quatre heures et demie.
Qui a payé le dîner?	Mon père l'a payé.

Fant-fi lui rendre (return): Oui, neades-le-lui (1998) l'argent? Yavait-fi beaucoup de monde Oui, ifi y a set abeaucoup i de (mony people) au bal? monde. (be silent) Me faut-il parler? Non, taisez-vous (be silent)

# Reading lesson.

Productions de divers climats. <sup>(11)</sup> Productions de divers climats. <sup>(11)</sup> La providence a si sagement arrangé toutes choses, que chaque climat fournit aux habitants ce qui, d'après (according to) leurs besoins, leur est le plus indispensable: <sup>(11)</sup> Dans les contrées polaires, il fait si froid, qu'il ne peut y crôttre ni fruits, ni céréales; ni légumes. La nature y a suppléé par la grande quantité de poissons que l'on pêche dans la mer et dans les lacs, et par l'abondance des quadrupédes qui, à la vérité (indeed), sont la plupart (mostly) sauvages et féroces, mais qui fournissent aux habitants, aguerris (docusioniés) à les poursuivre à la chasse, de très belles fournes, de la chair mangeable, des os et des nerfs qu'ils emploient pour leurs aros (bows) et divers ustensiles.

Les peuples des climats chauds ont le ver à soie (sillworm), qui, se nourrissant des feuilles du mûtrier, leur file (spins) un léger tissu dont on fait des étoffes convenables à la température du pays.

Le cotonnier porte des gousses renfermant le écton dont le tissu fournit également (*likewise*) les plué beaux vêtements. Et pour préserver les habitants de la zône torride de l'inflammation d'un sang trop échauffé, leurs campagnes et leurs jardins leur fournissent les oranges, les citrons et les olivés oui les rafratchissent

qui les rairaichissent.	
Fournir, to supply, furnish.	l'os, the bone. l'ustensile, the tool.
le besoin, the need, want.	Fustensile, the tool.
crottre, to grow.	le mûrier, the mulberry tree.
les céréales, corn.	filer, to spin.
les légumes, vegetables:	le time, the texture.
pêcher, to fish.	léger, light.
sauvage, wild.	convenable, convenient, fit.
féroce, feroçius.	le cotonnier, the cotton-tree,
aguerris, hardened.	la gousse, the hull, husp. le vétement, clothing.
poursuivre, to pursue.	le vétement, clothing.
la fourrure, fur, pelt.	échauffé, heated, hot: ::/
la chair, the flesh, meat.	rafratchir, to cool, refresh.
	<u> </u>

# stands and THIRTY FIRST LESSON.

Adverbs of quality

adjective." Most of the French adjectives become adverbs by adding the syllable *ment*, according to the following rules:

911)"Adjectives ending in a vowel, simply add the final syllable "ment; as: to be to the ment of the final syllable "ment; as:

-.. MT .

facile, easy; adv. facilement, easily. poli; polite; adv. poliment, politely.

teodofai, true, adv. vraiment, truty.

2) Adjectives which do not end in a vowel, add the syllable, ment to their feminine termination, as:

haut, f. haute, high; adv. hautement, aloud.

doux, f. douce, soft, mild; adv. doucement, softly.

franc, f. franche, frank; adv. franchement, frankly, freely. -- !!: deuters f. hourses, happy; adv. heursessing, happily.

NB. To this rule belong also the adjectives, nouveris new, fou, foolish, and mou, soft: adv. nouvellement, follement, mollement.

3) Adjectives which end in -ant or -ent, become adverbs by changing the final -ant into -amment, and -ent into -emment, as:

constant, constant; adv. constamment.

prudent, prudent; adv-prudenament.

patient, patient; adv. patiemment.

NB. Inceptions to this rule are: lent, velow; adul lontoment, and primerous; adv. présentement, actually.

4) The following adjectives take an *e* accented before the final ment, as:

b profond, deep; adv. profondément. commode, "comfortable; adv. commodément. .12 Journaument; adv. communément. précit; precise; adv. précisément. énorme, enormous; adv. énormément. expréssion dv. vepressément. impuni, Unpunished; adv. impunément.

5) All these depived adverted as well of some others, are liable to the degrees of comparison, as:

facilement, comp. plus facilement, sup. te plus facilement. cominadément, : mains commadément. Le mains commailément.

\_\_\_\_ souvent, often; comp. plus souvent, sup. le plus souvent:

longtemps, long; comp. plus longtemps, sup. le plus longtemps, 4. loin, far; comp. plus loin, sup. le plus loin. 

6) The following adverbs deviate from others in the formation of their comparatives and superlatives, which are as follows: Strand Law W.

comp. mieux, better; le mieux, (the) best. pis, worse; le pis, the worst. bien, well; mal, badly; peu, little; moins, less; le moins, the least. beaucoup; much; plus, more; le plus; most. peu, little; tant mieux is rendered "so much the better". tant pis, so much the worse. A . Sama

8) The following adjectives are used adverbially without taking an additional termination; as: : · vite, quick, fast. fort, very. expres, purposely. soudain, suddenly. hout, loudly. bas, in a low voice. droit, straightways. See Second Part, Lesson 53, §. 1. . . . . . . . . ofni

Words,

Le don, the gift. *l'ennemi*, m. tho enemy. l'état, m. the state. fâché, sorry, angry; je suis faché, I am sorry. égal (-ement), equal. généreusement, generously. éloquemment, eloquently. éternel, eternal. agir, to act. marcher, to walk. négliger, to neglect. occupé, occupied.

l'artiste, m. the artist habiller, to dress, elothe. 4 ... ponctuellementy punctually, Spice avouer, to confess. oublier, to forget. entretenu, (part.) entertained !! propre, clean. Lamuaed. rarement, seldom. .... malheureusement, unfortunately. modestement, modestly. probablement, likely. extrêmement, extremely. la fortune, property.

1. 1. 1. 1.

: T

- Later and a sub**fielding Exercise. Hill** start - and parts Vous le trouverez facilement. Les gens paresseux négligent ordinairement leurs affaires. Agissez genereusement envers vos ennemies." Dieu a sagement distribué ses dons. Parlez modestement de vos mérites. Cet homme a parlé très éloquemment. Henri IV était constamment occupé de la prospérité de ses états. Le voleur marcha doucement, il avait probablement peur d'être entendu. Je suis extrêmement fâche d'apprendre cette nouvelle. - Nettoyez' mieux vos habits. Vous n'êtes pas proprement habillé. Ne marchez pas si féntement. Mon père est présentement en France. Les enfants qui aiment passionnément le jeu, négligent souvent leurs tâches (duties). De tous les écoliers, Charles a''été blame le plus The second second Feel - Carlo and Carlo souvent. -0 -1070 Ju

# Thème. 62. "

This pupil learns (apprend) easily, but he forgets as (aussi) easily that which he learns. The king has generously pardoned (to) his enemies. Nobody is constantly happy in this world. The name of Shakespeare will live (vivra) eternally. Speak frankly. My brother is constantly occupied. Massillon has spoken yery elogyastiff. Confess freely your faults. Unfortunately I have not found him at home. Speak softly. The artist plays admirably (well). I have seldom received letters of my brother-in-law (beau-frere). Everybody must punctually observe the laws. If you fulfil faithfully your duties, you will be esteemed by everybody. You have staved longer than your brother." The little girl draws very well; she draws better than her sister. Edward has oftenest his task without mistakes. 

... Conversation

Comment parle cet homme?	il parle tres eloquemment et
	très franchement.
Votre cousine joue-t-elle du	Elle joue admirablement bien.
piano?	Tout le monde admire son jsu.
	Il m'écrit (writes) raseauent.
votre frère à Raris?	
	par un de ses amis qu'il se
A-t-il perdu quelque chose?	Il a probablement perdu une
	nartie de sa fortune.

Êtes-vous fâché, Monsieur?' Oui, je suis extrêmement fâché.

Pourquoi êtes-vous fiché ?: Je stin fiché contre mon fils
N'avez-vous pas, honte d'être "Pardon, Monsieur, je suis ha- habillé de cette manière? billé proprement, commodé- ment et décemment. Voilà tout oc qu'il faut.
Comment faut - il agir?
Charles, tu es malade; qu'as- J'ai mal 4 la tête (head-ache), - tu ? and the second of the main heureusement ce n'est distingues in a second of the pass grand'chose (consequence).
Vous êtes probablement le Non, Madame, mais je suis frère de Monsieur Richard ? son cousin.
Comment ce général a-t-il Il a agi très généreusement.
agi envers ses ennemis? Pourquoi marchez - vous si Jai mal au pied. lentement?
Cette loi est-elle observee? Elle est ponctuellement obser- vée de tout le monde.
hoomoo vasterioo el la hord vil a a se en el se en el se en el se
tor and the Cresus et Solon.
Crésus et Solon. Crésus demanda un jour à Solon s'il avait rencontré
dans ses voyages un homme, parfaitement heureux, un J'en ai connu un, répondit le philosophe, c'était un citoyen d'Athènes,
nomme Tellus; honnête, homme qui a passé toute sa vie dans une deuce aisance, let qui a toujours vu sa patris florissante.
Cet heureux mortel a laissé des enfants généralement estimés; il a vu les enfants de ses enfants, et il est mort glorieuse-
ment en combattant ( <i>fighility</i> ) <sup>2</sup> pren <sup>3</sup> son pays."
Crésus, surpris de lui entendre citer comme un modèle de bonheur un homme médiocre, lui demanda s'il n'avait pas
troivé des gens encore plus heureux que Tellus. «"Oui, lui répondit Solon, c'étaient deux frères, Cléobis et Biton, d'Argos, célèbres par leur amitié fraternelle et leur amour filial."
(then a star of the most of the becontinued.)
Rencontror, to meet: le citoyen, the citizen. passer, to spend. le citoyen, the citizen. passer, to spend. le citoyen, the citizen. le citoyen. le citoyen, the citizen. le citoyen. le citoyen
le modèle, the model, sample, médiocre, middling.
an a

i

# THIRTY SECOND LESSON.

## Of Adverbs.

Besides the great number of adverbs of quality formed from adjectives, there are many others, which may chiefly be divided into five classes, viz.: 1) adverbs of place; 2) of time; 3) of number; 4) of quantity and 5) of affirmation and negation.

# 1) Adverbs of place.

à côté, | aside, by. Où, where, whither? d'où, whence? à part, \ ici, here. d'ici, hence. dedans, là, there. de là, hence. là-bas, there below, yonder. derrière, behind. près d'ici, here near. y, there, therein. devant. par ici, this way. par devant, par là, that way. par-ci, par-là, here and there. ça et là, to and fro. près, auprès, near. ailleurs, elsewhere. proche, close by. dessous, alentour. underneath. par - dessous. tout au tour, § dessus, above. par-dessus, 🐧 m haut, up, up stairs. jusqu'où, how far? en bas, down stairs, below. loin, far, far off.

en dedans, within, inside. dehors, without, out of doors. par derrière, from behind. before. deça, en deça, on this side. delà, en delà, on that side. round about. partout, every where. nulle part, nowhere.

2) Adverbs of time.

Quand, when? après-demain, the day after tocombien de temps, how long? morrow. aujourd'hui, to-day. un jour, one day. hier, yesterday. autrefois, formerly. avant-hier, the day before jadis, yesterday. auparavant, previously, before. demain, to morrow. alors, then. demain matin, to - morrow puis, après, afterwards. morning. Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. 10

ensuite, afterwards. enfin, at last, at length. matin . de bonne heure, { early. tôt. 800n. plus tôt, ) sooner. de meilleure heure, ) earlier. bientôt, soon. trop tôt, too soon. tantôt, by and by. aussitôt, directly. tard, late. d'abord, at first. dorénavant, henceforth. dès-lors, from then. depuis, since.

· à présent, ) pow, maintenant, at present, ) actually. actuellement, quelquefois, sometimes. souvent, often. longtemps, long. toujours, always. naguère, lately, of late, dernièrement, ( the other day. l'autre jour, déjà, already. encore, still, yet. pus encore, not yet. jamais, ever. ne — jamais, never. à jamais, for ever. pour toujours,

Remark. Place of adverbs.

1) In the simple tenses the adverb is placed immediately after the verb which it modifies:

She always cries, elle pleure toujours. I often take a walk with my friend. Je me promène souvent avec mon ami.

2) When the verb is in a compound tense, the adverb generally comes between the auxiliary and the participle, as:

Je l'ai toujours respecté, I have always esteemed him.

Je me suis souvent promené avec mon maître.

I have often taken a walk with my master.

NB. Hier, aujourd'hui, demain, tantôt, tôt and tard always follow the participle.

#### Words.

Le temps the weather. l'orage, m. thunder-storm. le village, the village. la grammaire, the grammar. content, satisfied. le chemin de fer, the railroad. le brouillard, the fog, mist. l'ouvrage, m. the work. diner, to dine. laisser, to leave. venir, to come.

#### Reading Exercise. 63.

Le temps est fort doux aujourd'hui. L'orage est arrivé si vite, que nous en avons été surpris. Mon cousin est enfin arrivé. Levez-vous aussitôt. L'autre jour je me suis égaré dans la forêt. Travaillez d'abord et ensuite jouez. Avez-vous jamais vu un enfant comme celui-là? En effet, il est extrêmement gros. Le brouillard a bientôt disparu. D'où venezvous maintenant et où avez-vous été hier? Voyez-vous ce village là-bas? Eh bien (*well*), j'y ai été hier et aujourd'hui. J'y vais quelquefois. M'avez-vous apporté la grammaire dont je vous ai parlé? Voulez-vous venir diner avec nous demain? Demain je ne serai pas ici, mais après-demain ou plus tard. Enfin mon ouvrage est fini. Je me lève toujours de bonne heure, mais vous vous levez tard.

#### Thème. 64.

Where is my brother? He is not here; he is elsewhere; he is perhaps yonder. I will go (*j* irai) that way. Carry all that up stairs. Where do you live now? We live here near. How far did you go yesterday? I went as far as (*jusqu'à*) London. I shall go nowhere to-day. That village is not far; do you see (*voyez-vous*) it yonder? Where is my grammar? I have left it somewhere. Is Edward here? No, he is below. My friend will not stay here long.

I saw (have seen) your sister yesterday at the play (au spectacle). He will always be satisfied. Come back (revenez) soon. Did you know (have you known [connu]) him formerly? Yes, I have known him long. Whence does the letter come [from]? It comes from America. Your dog is out of doors. You have (are) arrived sooner than I. How is (se porte) your aunt to-day? She is better to-day than [she was] yesterday. I hope you will dine with us to-morrow. I shall go soon into the country (a la campagne). We expected him the day before yesterday. Formerly there were no railroads. Henceforth I shall be very diligent.

# 3) Adverbs of number.

Promièrement, firstand	quatrièmement, fourthly.
deuxièmement, { secondly.	cinquièmement, fifthly.
secondement, Secondary.	sixièmement, sixthly, etc.
troisièmement, thirdly.	combien de fois, how often?
une fois, onge; deux fais,	twice; trois fois, three times.

10\*

Comment, how?	itity and comparison. presque, almost.
combien, how much, how many?	environ, about
beaucoup, much, many.	à peu près, i
bien (with du, de l', des follow-	si, so. ainsi, thus.
ing), a great deal or many.	aussi, as.
trop, too much, too many!	également, likewise.
tant, so much, so many.	autant, as much, as many.
assez, enough, pretty.	d'autant plus, so much the more.
peu, little. un peu, 'a little.	plutôt, rather.
ne — guère, hardly:	surtout, above all.
bien, j	
	au plus, tout au plus, at most.
	tout an proof, ;
fort, )	du moins, au moins, at least.
plus, more.	saulement, only.
aavantage, sun more.	ne — que
moins, less.	même, even.
tout, quite, wholly,	pas même,
tout-à-fait, / entirely.	pas seulement, § Hot even.
5) Adverbs of affir	mation and negation.
Oui, yes. si, yes.	ne — pas, not.
certes, certainly.	ne — plus, no more.
peut-être, perhaps.	non plus, nor — either.
certainement, / certainly,	ne — point, not, no.
assurément, ) to be sure.	
non. no.	point du tout.
presque jamais, scarcely ever.	ne - men nothing
presque junicus, sourcery even.	ne — rien, nothing.
6) Besides these, there	are many adverbial locations
of which we will mention of	only those most in use.
Such are:	• •
Par cœur, by heart.	tout d'un coup, all at once.
à peine, scarcely.	à droite, to the right.
en effet, really.	à gauche, to the left.
sur-le-champ, directly.	ensemble, together.
peu à peu, by degrees.	pêle-mêle, pell-mell
	d'avance, before hand, in advance.
à dessein, on purpose. [time.	sans doute to no doubt.
en même temps, at the same	en général, generally.
à la fois, at once, at a time.	comme cela, like that, so.
tout à coup, suddenly.	en vain, in vain.

de boune heure, early. de meilleure heure, earlier. à bon marché, cheap. à fond, thoroughly. par an, yearly. par jour, daily. par mois, monthly. tout à l'heure, ) directly, tout de suite, ) immediately. par hasard, by chance. en attendant, meanwhile. de temps en temps, ) from time de temps à autre, ) to time.

Of negation.

1) The adverb not renders an English verb negative. It is translated into French by ne, which is placed before the verb, and pas or point after it, in simple tenses. The auxiliaries do or did are not expressed in French, as:

Je ne veux pas, I will not, I do not wish.

Je ne sais pas, I do not know.

2) In compound tenses, ne comes before the auxiliary, and pas after it. Ex.:

Je n'ai pas vu, I have not seen. Elle n'a pas parlé, she did not speak.

3) Ne is employed without pas, if there is in the sentence a pronoun or adverb expressing negation, such as personne, nul, rien, jamais, si, ne — plus, point. Ex.:

Je ne connais personne.

Je ne veux rien, I wish for nothing.

Je ne sais plus, I know no more.

Elle n'a jamais dit cela, she never said so.

4) If one of these negations is followed by a noun in the partitive sense, this noun is simply preceded by de: Affirm: Jai du pain, I have some bread.

Neg.: Je n'ai pas de pain, I have no bread.

Affirm. : Aver + vous de l'argent, have you any money?

Neg.: Je n'ai point d'argent, I have no money.

5) With the *present* infinitive, ne pas or ne point are not separated, as:

Ne pas se venger, not to revenge one's self. Ne plus écrire, to write no more. Ne rien manger, to eat nothing. 6) If the verb is in the perfect of the infinitive, it is optional to separate them or not, as:

Not to have slept, { ne pas avoir dormi. n'avoir pas dormi.

7) Without a verb, the negatives stand without ne, as: Pas à la fois, not at once. — Pas moi, not I. Pas beaucoup, pas trop, pas tant, pas aujourd'hui etc.

8) Non plus, nor — either, requires the full negation ne — pas before it, as:

Je ne le veux pas non plus, nor will I have it either. 9) If nor — either is connected only with a noun or pronoun, without a verb, the noun or the pronoun is preceded, in French, by ni, as:

Nor Charles either, ni Charles non plus.

10) Observe the expression ne - que for only, as:

Je n'ai que deux sœurs, I have only two sisters.

Il n'a qu'un morceau de pain, he has only a piece of bread. Elle n'a apporté qu'une assiette, she brought but one plate. L'enfant n'a que dix ans, the child is only ten years old. Il n'est que six heures, it is only six o'clock.

#### Words.

Le crime, the crime. travailler, to work. laconique, laconic. refuser, to refuse. la dams, the lady. inoui, e, not heard of. amicalement, friendly. éviter, to shun. la société, the society. merci, thank you. - :

#### Reading Exercise. 65.

Ce crime est tout-à-fait inouï. Comment vous portezvous? Je me porte très bien. Combien d'aunes de ce drap vous faut-il? Il m'en faut beaucoup; il m'en faut au moins trente aunes. Vous êtes-vous promené longtemps? Je me suis promené environ deux heures; peut-être un peu moins. Votre tante va-t-elle souvent au spectacle? Elle n'y va (goes) presque jamais, et mon oncle n'y va pas du tout. Monsieur, il faut vous dire que vous avez peu de fautes dans votre traduction. Combien *en* ai-je? Vous en avez moins que votre frère; vous n'en avez que deux ou trois, tout au plus

quatre. Assurément, votre exercice est très bien fait. J'ai appris (learnt) ma leçon par cœur. Habillez-vous tout de suite. C'est en vain que vous cherchez à le sauver. Mettez (drive) ce méchant chien dehors. Il me mordra peut-être. Il ne mord point. Le scélérat (malefactor) même respecte souvent la vertu. Marchez à droite; moi, je marcherai à gauche. Sans doute, cela vaut mieux. J'ai acheté ce tableau à bon marché. Jen'y dînerai pas, ni mon frère non plus.

#### Thème. 65.

How much sugar have you bought? How many lessons a (par) week have you? You eat too much; you must eat less. That young man works too much. Give him a little money. Give me more time. There were many ladies, and we had a great deal of pleasure. Have you not played enough? I think (that) you will not have it. Mr. A. is a very laconic man, he always answers yes or no. It is better not to refuse him. I have only one brother, and my cousin has only one sister. She is only five years old. I have never seen her. She never comes to our house (chez nous).

We certainly shall go out (sortirons) together. I always receive (recois) him friendly. My father has bought a horse very cheap. Have you seen anybody? I have seen nobody. The thunder-storm came on suddenly. I got up early; earlier than my brother. You must always shun the society of these bad people. Go (allez) to the right, I shall go to the left; we shall arrive at the same time. How much do you pay a month for your apartments? I pay twenty five florins a week, or a hundred florins a month, and I always pay in advance.

#### Conversation.

- Comment trouvez-vous le Je le trouve fort beau (or bien temps aujourd'hui? beau).
- Voici du jambon. En voulezvous?
- En voulez-vous davantage?
- Serez-vous ches vous (at home) demain matin?
- A quelle heure avez-vous dîne hier?
- Dinerez-vous aujourd'hui à la même heure?

- - Donnez-m'en un peu, s'il vous plaît (please).
  - Non, merci, j'en ai assez.
  - Assurément, je serai chez moi toute la journée (day).
  - Hier j'ai dîné à cinq heures précises.
  - Non, aujourd'hui je ne dînerai qu'à six heures.

- Que ferez-vous (will you da) pendant ce temps?
- Avez-vous fait cela à dessein?

Avez-vous fini votre thème?

Le brouillard a-t-il disparu?

- Ta sœur a-t-elle trouvé ses gants?
- Que fait cette petite fille làbas?
- Connaissez-vous cet ouvrage (work)?
- Arrivez-vous enfin?

Avez-vous lu (read) ce livre? Quand voulez-vous venir jouer

avec moi? Comment vous portez-vous? Et Monsieur votre père, comment se porte-t-il? Je me promènerai en attendant.

Non, je ne l'ai pas fait exprès.

- Je ne l'aurai guère fini avant sept heures.
- Oui, il a disparu peu à peu.
- Elle n'a cherché nulle part.
- Elle cherche des fraises (strawberries).
- Cet ouvrage m'est tout-à-fait inconnu.
- Dernièrement j'arrivai de meilleure heure.

Je l'ai lu plus de deux fois.

Je finirai d'abord ma tâche et après, nous jouerons.

Je me porte très bien.

Il se porte assez bien. Il est sorti hier pour la première fois.

## Reading-lesson.

Suite de "Crésus et Solon".

"Un jour de fête  $(holy \cdot day)$ , voyant que les bœufs qui devaient conduire leur mère au temple de Junon, n'arrivaient pas, les fils s'attelèrent (put) eux-mêmes au joug, et tratnèrent son char l'espace de plusieurs lieues (lsagues, miles). Cette prêtresse, pénétrée de joie et de reconnaissance, supplia les dieux d'accorder à ses enfants ce que les hommes pouvaient désirer de mieux (See 51st less. §. 7): elle fut exaucée (heard). Après le escrifice, ses deux fils, plongés dans un doux sommeil, terminèrent paisiblement leur vie. On leur érigea des statues dans le temple de Delphes."

"Vous ne me comptez pas, reprit le roi, au nombre des heureux?"

"Seigneur, dit le sage, nous professons dans notre pays une philosophie simple et peu commune à la cour des rois. Nous connaissons l'inconstance de la fortune; nous attachons peu de prix (value) à une félicité qui est plus apparente que réelle, et qui n'est souvent que trop passagère (transient). La vie d'un homme est à peu près de trente mille jours. Aucun d'eux ne ressemble à l'autre, et comme (as) nous ne décernons une couronne qu'après le combat, de même (so) nous ne jugeons du bonheur d'un homme qu'à la fin de la vie."

Conduire, to conduct. le joug, the yoke. trainer, to draw, pull. le char, the cart, coach. la prêtress, the priestess. supplier, to supplicate, beg. accorder, to grant, accord.

paisiblement, peacefully. friger, to erect. compter, to count, reckon. professer, to profess, teach. décerner. to adjudge, adjudicate. le bonheur, the happiness. la fin, the end.

A . . . . . . .

# THIRTY THIRD LESSON. Of Prepositions.

A preposition serves to express the relation which certain words bear to one another. It always precedes, in French, the word which it governs, and must be repeated before every one.

Prepositions are indeclinable, and may be divided into the three following classes:

# 1) Simple prepositions.

à (before $le = au$ ; before les = aux), at, in, to.	entre, between.
après (denoting time), after.	envers, co, covvarus.
avec, with	hors, except, save
oher, at, at the house of.	outre, besides.
contre, against.	malgré, in spite of.
dans, in, into. de (before $le = du$ ; before	moyennant, by means of.
de (before $le = du$ ; before	par, through, by.
les = des), of, from.	parmi, among. pour, for. sans, without, but for.
depuis, since.	pour, for.
derrière, behind.	sans, without, but for.
are, irom.	sous, under
devant (denoting place), before.	selon,
derant ; ) amin	suivant)
pendant,	selon, according to. suivant, service, towards.

# 2) Compound prepositions which govern the accusative.

## 3) Such as govern the genitive.

à côté de, by, beside. loin de, far from. au travers de, through. au milieu de, in the middle of. en deça de, on this side of. par delà de, { on that side. au lieu de, instead of. au haut de, on the top of. au delà de, \ vis-à-vis de, { opposite (to). du haut de, from above. hors de, out of. le long de, along. 1. Sec. 1 au dehors de, without. autour de, around, about. à l'égard de, with regard to. près de, ) by, next to, faute de, for want of. auprès de, j near, close to. au moyen de, by means of. au-devant de, before, to meet. en vertu de, in consequence of.

## Examples.

#### à.

A la ports, at the door. Pécris à mon fils, I write to my son. Elle est à la maison (or ches elle), she is at home. Au jardin, in the garden. à la main, in the hand. à Paris, at Paris. à la campagne, in the country. Je vais à Berlin, I am going to Berlin. A sia heures, at six o'clock.

#### Chez, de chez.

Il est chez moi, he is with me. Je vais chez Monsieur A., I am going to Mr. A.'s. Ma tante demeure chez un libraire, my aunt lives at the house of a bookseller. Je viens de chez mon oncle, I come from my uncle's.

#### Près de, auprès de.

Près de (or auprès de) la colline, near the hill. Jai gagné près de cent florins, I have won nearly a hundred florins.

#### Dans, en.

Dans la chambre, in the room. Dans la main, in the hand. Dans la prairie, on the meadow. Dans une île, on an island. Dans mon voyage, on my journey. En été, in summer. En Italie, in or to Italy. En France, in or to France. NB. In before personal pronouns, is translated en: en lui, en nous etc.

#### Avant, devant.

Avant le lever du soleil, before sun-rise. Avant la leçon, before the lesson. Devant la porte, before the door. Devant les ennemis, before the enemy.

#### Apres, selon, suivant.

Après la bataille, after the battle. Après vous, after you. Selon (or suivant) le temps, according to the weather. Selon les circonstances, according to circumstances.

#### Contre, envers, vers.

Il poussa contre la porte, he pushed against the door. Le père est fâché contre son fils, the father is angry with his son. Soyez polis envers vos maîtres, be polite to your masters. Vers le soir, towards (the) evening. Vers la montagne (direction), towards the mountain.

.**\* 1**De.

Jai reçu ce livre de ma mère, I received this book from my mother. Nous venons du spectacle, we come from the theatre. De qui parlez-vous, whom are you speaking of? Je suis content de votre travail, I am satisfied with your work. Couvert de neige, covered with snow. De cette manière, in this manner. La bataille d'Austerlitz, the battle of Austerlitz.

#### Pour.

'Ce cadeau est pour toi (pour vous), this present is for you. Pour combien de temps, for how long? Pour toujours, for ever. Pour with the verb partir is rendered for or to: Je pars pour l'Amérique, I set out for America. Charles est parti pour Munich, Charles is gone to Munic.

#### Par.

La reine a passé par cette ville, the queen has passed through this town. Je Pai appris par le courrier, I have learnt it from the messenger. Par ordre du roi, by the king's command. Cet homme à voyagé par terre et par mer, this man has travelled by land and by sea. Par faiblesse, by (from) weakness. Par méprise or par mégarde, by mistake. Mener par la main, to conduct by the hand. Jeter par la fenêtre, to throw out of the window.

Sur. . .:

Grimper sur un arbre, to climb up a tree. Écrivez sur ce papier, write on this paper. Sur les bords du Rhin, on the banks of the Rhine. Jai de l'argent sur moi, I have some money about me.

- Sous, au-dessous. - Entre, parmi.

Le chien est sous la table, the dog lies under the table. Porter sous le bras, to carry under the arm. Cet enfant est au-dessous de dix ans, this child is under ten years. Au-dessous du pont, below the bridge. Il y a une grande différence entre les deux frères, there is a great difference between the two brothers. Entre autres, among others. Entre la ville et la rivière, between the town and the river. Parmi les ouvriers, amongst the workmen. Parmi les vivants, among the living.

Note. Many prepositions come in English after a verb making a part of its signification. These must not be expressed in French as: to pull down, to look as, to wait for, to fill up, etc.

1. 1.

1.11.11

· •

La bravoure, valour. la forêt, the forest. le soldat, the soldier. la force, strength. . ..... Fombre, f. the shade, shadow. Cesprit, m. the mind. le chêne, the oak. le repos, the rest. l'étranger, m. the stranger. le messager, the messenger. le mur, the wall. ocean. se reposer, to rest, repose., une allée, an alley. aller, to go. la colline, the hill. le peuplier, the poplar. le voyageur, the traveller. voyager, to travel. poli, e, polite. fait, done. la vallée. the valley.

#### Reading Exercise. 67.

Où étiez-vous? J'étais au jardin. Étes-vous venu avant moi? Non, je suis arrivé après vous. Avec qui êtes-vous arrivé? Je suis arrivé avec mon oncle. Mon père est resté chez lui, Cet homme était autrefois très aimable envers moi. Maintenant il est fâché contre moi. Depuis quand? Depuis quelques semaines. Le voyageur est parti pour Constantinople. Le matin, les forces du corps et celles de l'esprit sont

Words.

i mand

rétablies (restored) par le repos de la nuit. Le général a veincu (conquered) les ennemis par la bravoure de ses soldats. Reposons-nous un peu à l'ombre de ce beau chêne! Parmi les étrangers il y a un Américain avec trois esclaves. La France s'étend depuis le Rhin jusqu'à l'Océan etlantique. Le monument du maréchal L. est hors de la ville, près de la grande promenade (walk). La jeune fille est restée à Paris à cause de la maladie de sa mère. Allez chercher ma montres Où est-elle? Elle est au-dessus de la petite table, audessous du mirroir, à côté de la fenêtre.

#### Thème. 68.

.9. . . .

1 4. 1 4 3

Come at five o'clock. This pencil is for your sister. Did he arrive before or after two o'clock? Where have you been during the winter? He walked behind me. Do you go with your uncle or without him? The wooden horse was outside the walls of Troy. There is a long alley between the garden and the forest. The dog is behind the door. You will arrive before me. You will find your pen under the table. Since that day I have no more seen my friend. He waited [for] me on the top of the hill. Before the church there are three high poplars. There is a deep valley between these two mountains. We got up before sun rise and went (allâmes) through the gate towards the mountain. The child fell into the water. Be polite to (envers) everybody. This traveller has travelled a great deal by land and by sea.

#### 69. 🗹

11 1000 - 10

You have left your book upon the table in my study (cabinet). Richmond lies (est situé) 12 miles above, and Greenwich 5 miles below London bridge (pont de Londres). I got this parcel (paquet) by a messenger; it is for you. Nobody can swim against the stream for (during) an hour. The king's garden is without the town. Mr. F. is very angry with his son Edward, because he went (est allé) with his friends into the forest instead of going (datler) to school. Is your house on this side or on the other side of the river? It is opposite (to) the castle, near the bridge. We walked along the river. This odd man is above ninety years old. I must remain here for want of money. Along the rail-road there is a foot-path (an sentier). The tree stands by the church. We went through a large forest.

#### Conversation.

Pour qui est ce beau cadeau? Pour combien de temps avezvous loué cette chambre? Quand partirez-vous? Où demeurez-vous?

Comment as-tu fait pour avoir e nid d'oiseau?

Où allez-vous si vite?

Où demeure votre professeur?

Quand êtes-vous entrés?

Pourquoi a-t-on fait cela? Mon ami, avez-vous de

l'argent sur vous? A-t-on poussé le garçon?

Contre qui Monsieur est-il fâché ?

Étes-vous reconnaissant(grateful) envers vos bienfaiteurs?

Avez-vous votre canne? Partirez-vous demain? Quand êtes-vous arrivé?

Avez-vous beaucoup voyagé? J'ai voyagé par terre et par mer.

Il est pour ma cousine Emilie. Je l'ai loutée pour deux mois.

٠.

Je pars demain pour Munich. Nous demearons sur le bord du

Rhin, vis-d-vis de Cologne. J'ai grimpe sur l'arbre.

(Je vais à la ville.

Je vais chez mon grand-père.

Il demeure (dans la) rue royale,

Nr. 84, en face de la poste. Nous sommes entrés après vous. Cela fut fait par ordre du roi Non, j'ai oublié d'en prendre (to take) avec moi.

On l'a pousse contre le mur.

Il est fâché contre son domestique (servant). • •

Je le suis et le serai toujours, toute ma vie.

La voici, je l'ai à la main. Selon les circonstances.

J'arrivai hier (au) soir, vers les six heures, avant le coucher du soleil.

Où avez-vous appris cela? . Je l'ai appris dans mes voyages.

## Reading-lesson.

## Intrépidité de Fabricius.

Fabricius, général romain, fut envoyé (sent) à Pyrrhus, roi d'Epire, pour entamer avec lui des négociations qui terminassent la guerre. Dans une entrevue précédente, Pyrrhus avait employé, tous les moyens possibles pour le corrompre par de l'argent, mais en vain. Cette fois-ci, il essaya de l'intimider.

Pour cet effet (purpose), il avait fait cacher un éléphant derrière un rideau. A un signal donné, le rideau se leva, et l'éléphant étendit subitement sa trompe sur la tête de Fabricius, en poussant des rugissements effroyables. Le général romain, pour qui cet aspect était tout nouveau, me se décontenança point et dit à Pyrrhus avec sang-froid: "Ton or ne m'a point séduit 1. ton éléphant ne m'effraie pas."

. . .

Entamer, to enter upon: terminer, to terminate. Fentrevue, the interview. corrompre, to corrupt. en vain, in vain. eachor, to hide. le rideau, the curtain. étendre, to extend. subitement, suddenly. la trompe, the trunk. en poussant, uttering. le rugissement, the roar. effroyable, dreadful. l'aspect, tho sight. se décontenancer, to discounteséduire, to seduce. [nance.

111 1

# THIRTY FOURTH LESSON. Of Conjunctions.

Conjunctions are used to connect either words or sentences. They are simple or compound; the simple consist of one word for each *clause*, the compound are formed of two separate words.

1) Simple conjunctions.

Et, and.	que, than (with a comparative).
et - et, both - and.	oar, for.
aussi, also.	mais, but.
tantôt — tantôt, sometimes —	toutefois, however
tantôt — tantôt, sometimes — ou, or. [sometimes.	cependant, S however.
plus plus, the more the.	astrement , otherwise Also
plus — moins, the more — the	<i>néanmoins</i> , nevertheless.
less.	d'ailleurs; besides, moreover.
moins - mains, the less - the	si, if, whether.
less.	sinon, if not.
autant — autant, as much as.	quand, when?
soit — soit, be it — or.	où, where?
ni ni, neither nor.	d'où, whence?
même, even.	comme, aa.
que, that.	comment, how? or, now.

done, consequently: puisque, since, as. torsque, when, as. done, then Also in a it is qubique (with the Subj.), though. amsi; thus, so.  $c_{1i}$ pourquoi, why? (m, ais.) 👾 1725 . . alors, 🁔 soon, videlicet. then. pour, in order to. puis ,

Remarks.

1) Among these simple conjunctions there is only one which governs the subjunctive mood, viz: quoique, though or although, and one used with the infinitive, viz: pour, in order to or simply to. Ex.:

Quoique je sois malade, though I am ill.

J'ai dit cela pour vous blâmer.

I said so (in order) to bland you.

If I had, si j'avais. If I were, si j'étais. '

If I had seen him, si je l'avais vu.

Note. The i in si is cut off before il and ils, but nowhere else, as: s'il avait, but si elle avait, etc.

3) Quand, on the contrary denotes time and corresponds with the English when: quand je le vis, when I saw him.

4) The conjunction ni - ni requires ne before its verb, and the noun which follows it, commonly takes no article, as:

Je n'ai ni, père ni mère, I have neither father nor mother. 5) The conjunction que serves to connect two ideas so as

to form of the two one sentence, as:

Je crois que vous avez raison, I believe you are right.

In English, the conjunction that is almost always understood, whereas que is not only always expressed in French, but repeated before each member of the proposition, as:

Je crois que vous aves raison et que vous réusetrée. I think you are right and that you will succeed. 6) When a conjunction governs several verbs, it is placed before the first verb only, and que is used before the other verbs.  $\mathbf{E}\mathbf{x}$ :

As he is diligent and takes pains.

Comme il est appliqué et qu'il prend de la peine.

If you are diligent and take pains.

Si vous êtes appliqué et que vous preniez de la peine.

#### Words.

La sottise, foolishness. la paix, peace. la prison, the prison. le roseau, the reed. *l'arc*, m. the bow, cross-bow. *humain*, e, human. gâter, to spoil. plier, to bend. lever, to lift up. *l'étoile*, f. the star. épuisé, e, exhausted. uvare, avaricious. prodigue, prodigal. exister, to exist. étudier, to study. gagner, to gain. l'appétit, m. the appetite. embarrassé, embarrassed. savant, learned. rompre, to break. mériter, to deserve. habiter, to inhabit. entrer, to enter. le bien, the good.

#### Reading Exercise. 70.

L'ambition et l'avarice sont deux grandes sources du malheur humain. Les discours impies (impious) gâtent à la fois et l'esprit et le cœur. Quand on est jeune, on fait souvent des sottises. Cette eau est froide comme de la glace. Votre tableau est précieux; mais il ne me plaît (please) pas. Il arriva comme je sortais. Elle n'est ni laide ni belle. Vous vous amusez, et cependant le temps fuit (fies). Cet homme est très fort, et pourtant il ne peut pas lever ce fardeau (weight). Ou vous me paierez, ou vous irez en prison. Donnez-moi de l'eau, s'il vous plaît. Martin est encore bien jeune, néanmoins il est fort sage. Bienheureux sont ceux qui aiment la paix, car ils seront appelés les enfants de Dieu. Je pense, donc j'existe. Vous ne le savez pas. Ni moi non plus. Tantôt il veut une chose, tantôt il en veut une autre. Lorsque nous eûmes le malheur de perdre notre père, ma mère fut obligée de vendre notre maison. Ne soyez ni avares, ni prodigues.

#### Thème. 71.

(The) gold and silver are metals. (The) silver is less useful than (the) iron. These people know neither (the) good Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. 11

à

.

nor (the) evil. Mr. A. is very inconsistent (inconséquent); he is sometimes of one opinion (axis, m.) and sometimes of another. I like you, as I know (sais) that you are always attentive. This man is esteemed by everybody, even by his enemies. I am very glad to see that you do not love flattery. Some one has done it, either you or your brother. The more you will work, the more you will gain. This horse may be very strong, nevertheless it does not please me. The longer the days (are) (constr. the more the days are long), the shorter (are) the nights). Though he said (dit), (that) he had no appetite, yet he ate all the meat and bread. Nobody knows whether the stars are inhabited or not. The reed bends, but does not break. Do not bend the bow too much, otherwise it will break.

72.

The more I sang, the less embarrassed I was. If you do (faites) it, you will be punished. He appeared (paraissait) very modest, although he was very learned. If your father does not arrive to-day, and if you want (avez besoin d'argent) money, I will lend (Fut.) you some. In order to be learned, you must study much. Did you not see (have you not seen) Mr. Long to-day? Yes, but I could (pouvais) not speak [to] him (see p. 104, 2). I punish him as he deserves (it). You must stay at home, since you are not quite well. When he had done speaking (fini de parler), he was quite exhausted. If you will be happy, love (the) virtue. If I had had faithful friends, I should not be so unhappy. You will be happy, if you do your duty (devoir). I was sleeping when your servant entered (entra).

#### Conversation.

Etes-vous heureux, mon ami?	Je le serais, si j'avais de bons livres.
Si ce n'est que cela, je peux vous en donner. En vou-	Je vous en serais très obligé.
lez-vous? Quelles sont les grandes	Ce sont l'ambition et l'avarice.

sources du malheur des hommes?

Que fait-on souvent, quand On fait souvent des sottises. on est jeune?

Comment trouvez-vous l'eau?

. 1

Elle est froide comme la glace.

	Il dit qu'ils seront appelés "ein-
. qui siment la paix?	
Que veut cet enfant?	Il veut tantôt ceci, tantôt cela.
Comment trouvez-vous cette demoiselle?	Elle n'est ni belle ni laide.
cette pierre?	Je ne peux pas la lever, quoi- que je sois très fort.
hommes?	Il les traite, comme un père traite ses enfants.
Quelle propriété a le roseau?	Il (se) plie et ne rompt pas.
Quand faut-il forger le fer?	Quand il est chaud.

# Reading-lesson.

# Lafitte.

Lorsque Jacques Lafitte vint (came) à Paris, il se présenta chez M. Perregaux dans l'espérance d'obtenir une place; mais le banquier lui annonça qu'il était dans l'impossibilité de satisfaire à sa demande, *puisque* les bureaux étaient au complet.

Lafitte, découragé par ce refus, s'éloignait tristement, lorsqu'en traversant la cour de l'hôtel, il aperçut à terre une épingle; il la ramassa et la piqua sur sa manche. M. Perregaux ayant vu l'action du jeune solliciteur, en fut frappé (struck), et pensa qu'il devait être doué d'un esprit d'ordre et d'économie. Il le fit rappeler et lui dit qu'il pouvait compter sur une place dans sa maison. En effet, peu de jours après, le jeune Bayonnais entra chez le riche banquier; et chacun sait que, plus tard, il est devenu un homme riche et célèbre.

L'espérance, hope. le bureau, the office. s'élbigner, to retire. une épingle, a pin.

<u>ن</u>

ramasser, to pick up. la manche, the sleeve. doué, endowed. en effet, indeed.

# THIRTY FIFTH LESSON.

## Compound Conjunctions.

Most of these conjunctions are adverbs or prepositions attended by que or de. Instead of dividing them according to their meaning into copulative, disjunctive,

11\*

adversative, conclusive etc., it will be of much more importance for the learner to understand, that different conjunctions require different states of the verb. Some require the following verb in the *indicative mood*, others in the *infinitive*, and others again in the *subjunctive*.

1) Compound conjunctions with the Indicative.

aussitôt que, | as soon as. Ou bien, or, else. non plus, neither, not either. dès que, de même que, au contraire, on the contrary. 88. non seulement — mais encore. ainsi que, au reste, however. not only — but also. de plus, moreover. da reste, § autant que, as much as. de là, hence it follows. après que, after, after that. à peine — que, scarcely —, as. quand même, although. c'est pourquoi, therefore. si toutefois, if however. par conséquent, consequently. c'est-à-dire, namely. comme si, as if. de même, thus, in the same way. c'est que, because. sans cela, otherwise, else. parce que, ) tandis que, whereas. depuis que, since. pendant que, while, whilst. tout - que, however -, as. tant que, as long as.

2) Conjunctions with the Infinitive mood.

Afin de, { in order to. pour, } à moins de, unless. avant de, before. au lieu de, instead of. de peur de, ) for fear of. de crainte de, ) loin de, far from. plutôt que de, rather than.

3) Conjunctions with the Subjunctive mood. Afin que, that, in order that. non que, not as if. pour que, 🕻 nonobstant que, notwithstanding avant que, before. that. à moins que, unless, till. pour peu que, however little. pourve que, provided (that). bien que, { though, although. quelque — que, however ..., sans que, without that. [though. quoique, jusqu'à ce que, till, until. si ce n'est que, unless, tillloin que, far from. sois que, whether - or.

4) Besides the above mentioned conjunctions, there are other conjunctive expressions (locutions conjonctives), which have been borrowed from other classes of words and to which the conjunction que is added. Such are:

à condition que, on condition that ...
\*de peur que,
\*de orainite que,
de manière que,
de manière que,
so as to, so that ...
\*au cas que, in case that ...
\*supposé que, supposing that ...
\*malgré que, for all that, notwithstanding.
toutes les fois que, as often as.
peut-être que, perhaps that ...
à ce que, according as, as far as, etc.
NB. Those marked with an asterisk govern the subjunctive.

#### Words.

La machine à vapeur, the	
engine.	la princesse, the princess.
la mémoire, the memory.	la guerre, war.
occuper, to occupy.	ambitieux, ambitious.
mettre, to put, place.	<i>l'éducation</i> , f. education.
préserver, to preserve.	regarder, to look at.

#### Reading Exercise on the compound conjunctions. 73.

Aussitôt que la machine à vapeur fut construite (buil), elle fut mise en mouvement (put in motion), pour l'essayer. Quelque grande que soit cette faute, il faut cependant la pardonner. Dès qu'il me vit (saw), il courut (ran) à moi. Pendant que nous étions occupés à faire notre tâche, on cria au feu (fire)! J'espère que vous dinerez avec nous, avant que vous quittiez notre ville. La mémoire de Henri IV sera toujours chère aux Français parce qu'il mettait sa gloire à les rendre heureux. Que le ciél vous préserve d'un pareil (such) malheur! Le malade ne boit (drinks) mi ne mange. Tant que ma mère sera à la campagne, je resterai avec elle. Tandis que nous parlons, le temps fuit. Depuis que j'ai perdu mon père, tout me manque. Faites en sorte (so) que votre maître soit content de vous.

#### 

I am not sorry, on the contrary, I, am very glad (bien aise) to have done it. We have seen not only the king, but also the queen and the princess. I will play, as soon as I (shall) have finished my exercise. There will always be wars among (the) men, as long as they are ambitious. After (that) you were gone (sorti), I began writing (à écrire). As soon as my education is finished, I shall go to Italy. Your brother is learning (apprend) his leason, whereas you are doing (faites) nothing. While you lose your time, your brother improves fast (fait beaucoup de progrès). Mrs. Bell is quite altered (changée), since I saw her lately. You look at me, as if I had taken (pris) your book. I do not like you, because you are too ambitious.

#### Words.

: .

To learn, apprendre.	an action, une action.
attention, l'attention f.	the consequence, la suite.
	to consider, considérer. the duty, le devoir. to give back, rendre. to beat, battre, frapper. I should like, j'aimerais.

#### Thême, 75.

In order to learn well, we must (on doit) study with a great deal of attention. Is order to gain friends, we must be honest. It will be impossible to learn French, unless you be (Inf.) diligent. Let us pray, before we begin (Inf.). Henry is gone fishing (pêcher) instead of going to school. Rather than study, he loses his time. Far from blaming you, I praised you. The soldiers plundered, until the general stopped them (lear mit fin). Come here, that I [may] speak to you. Send me your book, (in order) that I may read it. I will be ready, before they are come. Unless you accompany me, I will not take a walk.

Cato killed himself, lest he should fail into (entre) the hands of Caesar. Though that young man is not very diligent, [yet] he improves. Carry that money to Mr. L., in order that he may pay the music-master (mattree de musique). Before you begin an action, consider well its consequences. You will never be respected, unless you fulfil your duties: He will give it to you at confliction that you (will) give it back to him. They beat him so that they almost killed him. I see the queen every time I go (vals) to Windsor. Though he be richer than you, and have better friends, I should not like to be in his place (place f.).

## Reading-lesson.

## Joseph II.

Un jour que le feu avait pris (broken out) à une maison de Vienne, Joseph II y accourut pour hâter les secours, et s'approche de très près de cette maison qui menaçait déjà ruine par la violence de l'incendie. Un artisen qui s'aperçut (perceived) du danger auquel ce prince était exposé, l'en avertit et le pria de se retirer. Joseph ne croyant (thinking) pas le danger si grand, ne se hâtait point. Mais comme il tardait trop, l'ouvrier le saisit, l'emporta dans son bras et le mit (put) en sûreté. A peine fut-il éloigné que la maison s'écroula et que des poutres embrasées tombèrent à l'endroit même (the very spot) où le monarque se trouvait auparavant (before).

Joseph, pénétré de reconnaissance, offrit sa bourse remplie d'or à son libérateur, mais le généreux ouvrier la refusa en disant: "Ce que j'ai fait, c'est par amour, et l'amour ne peut se payer. Mais si j'ose demander une grâce à votre Majesté, c'est en faveur de mon voisin. C'est un hounête homme, laborieux, mais si pauvre qu'il ne peut payer sa maîtrise ni les outils nécessaires à son métier." L'empereur lui accorda sa prière (*prayer*), et fit donner une somme à son malheureux voisin. Quant à son libérateur, il fit (*caused*) frapper une médaille d'or qu'il lui envoya.

Accourut, ran near.	s'écrouler, to fall down.
hâter, to hasten.	la poutre, the beam.
les secours, the assistance.	embrase, burning.
l'incendie, the fire.	l'endroit, the spot, place.
un artisan, a tradesman.	un ouvrier, a workman.
avertir, to inform'.	oser, to dare.
tarder, to delay.	une grace, a favour.
emporter, to carry away.	la mattrise, mastership.
la sûreté, safety.	le métier, trade.
quant à, as	s to, concerning.

# THIRTY SIXTH LESSON.

## Of the Interjections.

The interjections are mostly original sounds, which mark the feelings of men, and are produced by the impulse of the moment. They admit of no change.

Such are: Ah / ha / ah ! ch / hé / oh ! ch bien / well ! ah ga / lo ! oh ga / dear me ! ho / oh / and ô / oh ! aic ! ouf / o dear ! alas !

fi! fi donc! fie!

chut ! hush ! hist ! top ! top ! agreed ! hélas ! alas ! parbleu ! ) the deuce ! morbleu ! ) zounds ! gare ! ) ho ! holla ! hola ! ) bravo ! bravo ! halte ! stop !

Other words however are employed as interjections, and uttered as such:

Bien / 'tis well! bon / good! well! tiens / behold! lo! allons / on! come on! vive / vivent / long live! hail! silence / estimate in stop! paix / estimate in stop! courage / cheer up! allez - vous - en / begone! en effet! indeed! en avant! forwards! en arrière, backwards! au feu! fire! au secours! help! malheur à vous! woe unto you! qui vive! who is there! Dieu soit loué! God be praised! miséricorde! alas! have pity!

### Words.

Le Sauveur, the Saviour. réussir, to succeed. laid, ugly. se noyer, to be drowned. insupportable, unbearable. enseigner, to teach.

### Reading Exercise. 76.

Dieu soit loué! Nous voilà sauvés! Chut! on vient. Paix! mes enfants! Ah! que cela est beau! Fi donc! que c'est laid! Eh bien! mes amis, buvons (*let us drink*)! Hélas? le malade est mort! En effet! vous êtes insupportable! Courage! mes amis, nous réussirons! Allons! travaillons! Hé! venez donc! Bien! mon petit garçon, très bien! Qui

٠

vive! Grand Dieu! quel malheur! Le général commanda: en avant: et l'armée se mit (bégén to) en marche. Ho! que dites-vous? Au secours! le malheureux se noie (see p. 86, §. 5). Oh! le misérable qui ne sait se défendre contre de pareilles accusations! Malheur à vous, scribes et pharisiens, hypocrites, disait le Sauveur à ceux qui induisaient (*led*) le peuple en erreur. Holà! ho! l'homme, ho! mon compère (gossip)! Ho! l'ami, un petit mot, s'il vous platt, enseigneznous (show ue) le chemin qui mène à la ville.

## Reading-lesson.

Vœu pour le jour de naissance d'un père.

Quand tout renaît dans la nature, Au retour du printemps; Que notre joie est vive et pure, Et quels sont nos accents! Quel beau soleil et quels beaux jours! Ah! puissent-ils durer toujours!

Mais quand je vois briller l'aurore Qui vient rendre à mes vesux Un tendre père que j'adore; Ah! que je dis bien mieux: Quel beau soleil, quel jour charmant! Puisse-t-il revenir souvent!

Qu'on est heureux avec un père Qui vit pour ses enfants! Notre bonheur est de lui plaire Et voici nos serments: Nous voulons désormais toujours Faire le bonheur de ses jours.

Le vœu, the wish, vow. jour de naissance, birth-day. renaître, to revive. les accents, accents, cries. durer, to last. briller, to shine. puisse-t-il/ may it! plaire, to please. le serment; the oath, vow. désormais, henceforth.

# THIRTY SEVENTH LESSON.

## -Off the irregular verbs.

Those verbs are commonly called *irregular* which deviate, from the *three regular* conjugations. This deviation is of three kinds.

1) Such verbs as take the terminations corresponding to the ending of their infinitive mood, but change their root. Ex.: Of the verb coudre, to sew, the radical is **coud**-; this final d is, in some persons and tenses, changed into **s**, for instance in the plural: nous **cous-ons**, we sew. These are the easier ones, and are therefore put in the *first class*.

2) Verbs which preserve their radical syllable throughout unchanged, but take flexions that do not accord with the ending of their infinitive. For instance the verb **cour-ir**, to run, ending in **ir**, ought to take the flexions of the second conjugation (finir). But this is not the case; it takes the flexions of the third conjugation (vendre); the present is not je cour-is, tu couris etc., but je **cours**, tu **cours** etc.; Part. p. **couru** like vendu. Verbs of this kind we assign to the second class.

3) A certain number of verbs offer both these anomalies at the same time; i.e. they undergo some changes in their root and are conjugated with other flexions than those corresponding with the ending of their infinitive. For instance the verb mourin, to die, ought, according to its infinitive termination - in, to take the flexions of finir. This is not the case; it is in most tenses conjugated like vendre, and, besides, its root mour- is, in certain tenses and persons, changed into meur-, as: Present: je meurs, tu meurs etc. Such verbs, to which also belong those ending in -oir, constitute the third class. To facilitate the stady of the integular verbs, it is essential to distinguish the *primitive tenses* from the *derived* ones. The latter have generally a regular inflexion, whereas the former alone are subject to irregularity. As already mentioned, the *primitive* tenses are:

1) the infinitive mood;

-- . . '

2) the participle present;

3) the participle past;

4) the present of the indicative mood;

5) the preterite (defini).

From these, the other tenses and moods are derived, as it is explained p. 78, §. 3. The *derivative* tenses are formed regularly, and therefore seldom mentioned in the following list.

To aid the pupil's memory, the following hints will prove useful:

1) The present of the subjunctive is sure to be found by dropping the final *nt* of the 3rd person plural indicative, as: from ils écrivent — que j'écrive; from ils prennent — que je prenne; from ils boivent — que je boive.

2) The plural of the present indicative, the participle present and the imperfect of the indicative have the same radical, as: nous mourons, we die; P. pr. mourant; Imperf. je mourais; — nous craignons; P. pr. craignant; Imperf. je craignais; — nous allons; P. pr. allant; Imp. j'allais, etc.

3) The future and conditional are formed from the infinitive; the following however have an irregular formation, as: je courrai (instead of vourirai), je mourrai, je verrai, jenverrai, jacquerrai, je pourrai, je saurai, je vaudrai, il faudra, je viendrai, je tiendrai, je ferai and jurai.

4) When the participle past ends with the sound of i (i, is, it), the preterite generally ends in is. Ex.: Part. p. sorti, gone out; Pret. je sortis; — Part. p. dit, said; Pret. je dis; — Part. p. pris, taken; Pret. je pris etc.

5) But when the participle past ends in u, the preterite usually ends in us. Ex.: P. p. cru, believed; Pret. je crus; P. p. lu, read; Pret. js lus; — P. p. connu, known; Pret. je connus etc.

## A list of all the **Irregular Verbs**.

according

to the three classes of irregularity.

## First class.

Containing the verbs in **-re** which take the terminations of the *third* conjugation, but whose radical is somewhat changed.

a. (1-7. Insertion of an S.)

 Luire, to shine. Part. pres. luisant. Part. past. lui. Pres. Je luis, tu luis, il luit, nous luisons, vous luisez, ils luisent. Subj. Que je luise. Imperf. Je luisais. Pret. wanting. Fut. Je luirai etc. Conjugate in the same manner: reluire, to glitter.

 Suffire, to suffice. P. pr. suffisant. P. p. suffi. Pres. Je suffis, tu suffis, il suffit, nous suffisons etc. Subj. Que je suffise. Imperf. Je suffisais. Pret. Je suffis, tu suffis, il suffit, nous suffimes etc. Fut. Je suffirai etc.

In the same mauner: confire, to preserve, to pickle, and circoncire, to circumcise, except in the Part. past. The Participle of the former is congit, of the latter circoncis.

- Nuire, to hurt. P. pr. nuisant. P. p. nui. Pres. Je nuis, tu nuis, il nuit, nous nuisons, vous nuisez, ils nuisent. Subj. Que je nuise. Imperf. Je nuisais. Pret. Je nuisis. Fut. Je nuirai.
- 4) Cuire, to boil, to bake (bread). P. pr. cuisant. P. p. cuit. Pres. Je cuis, tu cuis, il cuit, nous cuisons etc. Pret. Je cuisis. Fut. Je cuirai.

Thus also: recuire, to boil once more.

- 5) Conduire, to conduct, to lead. Se conduire, to behave. Part. pr. conduisant. P. p. conduit.
  - Pres. Je conduis, tu conduis, il conduit, nous conduisons etc. Pret. Je conduisis. Fut. Je conduirai.
  - Thus: reconduire, to reconduct, to see home; deduire, to deduct; enduire, to plaster; induire, to lead into; introduire, to introduce; produire, to produce; reproduire, to produce again; réduire, to reduce; séduire, to seduce; traduire, to translate.

6) Instruire, to instruct. Part. pres. instruisant. Part. past instruit.

Pres. J'instruis, tu instruis, il instruit, nous instruisons, vous instruisez, ils instruisent.

Pret. J'instruisis. Fut. J'instruirai.

In the same manner: construire, to build; détruire, to destroy.

- 7) Dire, to say, to tell. P. pr. disant. P. p. dit.
  - Pres. Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, vous dites, ils disent. Subj. Que je dise.
  - Pret. Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous dimes, vous dites, ils dirent. Imperf. Subj. Que je disse.

Fut. Je dirai. Imper. Dis, disons, dites.

Conjugate in the same manner: rodire to say again, to object. As for the other compounds of dire, viz: contredire, to contradict; dédire, to unsay, and se dédire, to retract; intredire, to forbid; médire, to slander, and prédire, to foretell; they do not form their 2nd person plural of the present indicative with the termination - tes, but - sez, as: vous contredisez, vous médisez, vous interdisez etc. Maudire, to curse, takes se in the following forms: Phur. nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent. Part. pr. maudissant. Impf. je maudissais.

#### Words.

 The sun, le soleil.
 the language, la langue.

 a ray, un rayon.
 modern, moderne.

 hope, l'espoir m.
 the peach, la pêche.

 property, la fortune.
 the debt, la dette.

### Thème. 77.

The sun shines. A ray of hope shone upon us. Every thing shines (glitters) in that house. It is not sufficient (it does not suffice) to understand the ancient languages, it is also necessary to study the modern ones. We preserve these peaches with sugar. Have you pickled cucumbers (des concombres)? Does he not hurt you in this affair? All his property will not suffice to (pour) pay his debts. Where do you conduct this blind [man]? I conduct him to the physician (chez le médecin). I instruct (the) youth. We translate (the) English into French. The Americans built (Pretorite) a ship. The boys behaved very well. You would hurt me more than any other person. This bread is well baked. What do you say? I say that you are (have) right. We say the truth. Tell him that I am here I shall tell (it) him directly. Never contradict any one (personne) in (en) public. We foretold those disasters (désastres). Let us curse nobody.

b. (8-17. Change of the final consonant.)

- 8) Traire, to milk. Part. pres. trayant. Part. past. trait. Pres. Je trais, tu trais, il trait, nous trayons, vous trayez, ils traient.
  - Imperf. Je trayais. Pret. wanting. Fut. Je trairai. Thus also: distraire, to distract; extraire, to entract; soustraire, to substract, to withdraw.
- 9) Suivre, to follow: P. pr. suivant. P. p. suivel. Pres. Je suis, tu suis, il suit, nous suivons, vous suivez, ils suivent. Subj. Que je suive. Pret. Je suivis. Fut. Je suivrai. Imper. Suis, suivons, suivez.
  - Thus: s'ensuivre, to ensue; poursuivre, to pursue.
- 10) Vaincre, to conquer. P. pr. vainquant. P. p. vaincu. Pres. Je vaincs, tu vaincs, il vainc, nous vainquons, vous vainquez, ils vainquent.
  - Pret. Je vainquis. Fut. Je vaincrai.
     Imper. Vaincs, vainquons, vainquez.
     In the same manner: contractive, to convince.
- 11) Coudre, to sew. P. pr. cousant. P. p. cousu. Pres. Je couds, tu couds, il coud, nous cousons, vous cousez, ils cousent. Subj. Que je couse. Pret. Je cousis. Fut. Je coudrai. Thus: decoudre, to unsew; recoudre, to sew over again.
- 12) Moudre, to grind. P. pr. moulant. P. p. moulu, Pres. Je mouds, tu mouds, il moud, nous moulons, vous moulez, ils moulent. Subj. Que je moule.

Pret. Je moulus. Fut. Je moudrai.

- In the same manner: émoudre, to grind (knives etc.), to sharpen, and remoudre, to grind again.
- 13) Résoudre, to resolve. P. pr. résolvant. P. p. résolu (or résous).
  - Pres. Je résous, tu résous, il résout, nous résolvons, vous résolvez, ils résolvent. Subj. Que je résolve.

Pret. Je résolus, tu résolus etc.

- Fut. Je résoudrai. Imper. Résous, résolvons, résolvez.
- Thus: absoudre, to absolve, and dissoudre, to dissolve. These two compounds have no preterite, and make their participles: absous, f. absoute, and dissous, f. dissoute.

14) Petudre, to paint. Part. pres. peignant: Part. past. peins. Pres. Je peins., tu peins, il peint, nous peignons, tous peignez, ils peignent. Subj. Que je peigne.
Pret. Je peignie, tu peignis, il peignit, nous peignimes etc. Eut. Je peindrai. Imper. Peins, peignons, peignes.
Thus: Ceindre, to gird. Feindre, to feign; dépeindre, to depict. Tsindre, to dye; déteindre, to discharge delour; atteindre, to attein, to reach; éteindre, to extinguish. Re- streindre, to restrain. Enfreindre, to infringe, to transgress.
<ul> <li>15) Craindre, to fear. P. pn. craignant. P. p. craint.</li> <li>Pres. Je crains, tu crains, il craint, nous craignons etc.</li> <li>Pret. Je craignis. Fut. Je craindrai etc.</li> <li>Thus also: Plaindre, to pity; se plaindre, to complaint. com</li> </ul>
traindre, to compel, to constrain.
16) Joindre, to join. P. pr. joignant. P. p. joint. Pres. Je joins, tu joins, il joint, nous joignons, vous joignes, ils jaignent. Subj. Que je joigne. Pret. Je joignis. Fut. Je joindrai.
Thus: rejoindre, to rejoin; enjoindre, to enjoin; diejoindre, ta disjoin. Poindre, to dawn, break. Oindre, to oint
<ul> <li>17) Écrire, to write. P. pr. écrivant. P. p. écriv. Pres. J'écris, tu écris, il écrit, nous écrivons, vous écrivez; ils écrivent. Subj. Que j'écrive.</li> <li>Pret. J'écrivis, tu écrivis, il écrivit etc. Fut J'écrirai. Imper. Écris, écrivons, écrivez.</li> </ul>
Thus: décrire, to describe; circonscrire, to circumscribe; ins- crire, to inscribe; prescrire, to prescribe, to order; récrire, to write again, to answer; sousorire, to subscribe; transcrire, to transcribe. Words.
The cow, la vache. the miller, le meunier.
the tutor, le précepteur. to set out, partir.
the difficulty, la difficulté. the course, la marche, course.
the shirt, la chemise. the ashes, la cendre.
life, la vie. the smoke, la fumée.
the candle, la chandelle.

## Thèmé. 78.

We milk the cows. Soldiers! follow me. I will lead you to (the) victory. I shall follow you. This dog follows me everywhere. You did not follow the lessons of your tutor. The enemies were conquered. You conquer all the difficulties. That did not convince me. We pursued (pret.) the slave, but in vain (en vain). What are you sewing there (la)? We sew [some] shirts. She was sewing her gown. These handkerchiefs are badly sewed. I sewed them myself. Does the miller grind (the) corn? He has not ground it this morning. He will grind it this evening. I fear the rain. We do not fear (the) death; why should we fear it? My son complained (himself) yesterday of his writing-master.

79.

I resolved to set out. We pursued our course. I have at last (enfin) convinced him of the greatness of his fault. The wood which is burnt (qu'on brile) resolves itself (se) into (en)ashes and smoke. We pity the unfortunate. You paint. The young girl feigned to be ill. Put out the candle and go to bed (allex-vous coucher). The servant feared to displease his master (à son mattre). Fear God during all your life. I write my exercise. Charles wrote his translation last night (hier au soir). Who has written that German grammar? A German professor has written it. I shall subscribe for your new work; my brother has already subscribed. Miss Mary wrote (pret.) a French letter to her aunt in Paris.

- c. (18-26. The vowel of the root is changed into u, in the Part. past and Preterite.
- 18) Lire, to read. Part. pres. lisant. Part. past. lu. Pres. Je lis, tu lis, il lit, nous lisons, vous lisez, ils lisent. Pret. Je lus, tu lus, il lut, nous lûmes, vous lûtes etc. Imporf. Subj. Que je lusse etc. Fut. Je lirai, tu liras, il lira etc. Thus also: élire, to elect; réélire, to re-elect; relire, to read

Thus also: élire, to elect; réélire, to re-elect; relire, to read over again.

- 19) Boire, to drink. P. pr. buvant. P. p. bu.
  - Pres. Je bois, tu bois, il boit, nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent.

Subj. Que je boive, que tu boives, qu'il boive, que nous buvions, que vous buviez, qu'ils boivent. Imperf. Je buvais.

Pret. Je bus, tu bus, il but, nous bûmes etc. Fut. Je boirai, tu boiras etc. Imper. Bois, buvons, buvez.

- 20) Croire, to believe, to think. Part. pres. croyant. ... Part. past. cru. Sectory Sec. Pres. Je crois, tu crois, il croit, neus croyons, vous croyez, ils croient. Subj. Que je croie, que tu croies, qu'il croie, que nous croyions, que vous croyiez, qu'ils croient. Pret. Je crus, tu crus, il crut, nous crûmes, vous crûtes, ils crurent. Fut. Je croirai etc. Thus also: Faire accroire gch. a gn., to make one believe. NB. accroire is used only in the Infinitive. ·, "." 21) Croître, to grow. P. pr. croissant. P. p. crû. Pres. Je crois, tu crois, il croit, nous croissons, vous croissez, ils croissent. Pret. Je crûs, tu crûs, il crêd | nous crûmes etc. Fut. Je croîtrai etc. 11. 90g . 1 h Thus: accrottre, to increase; décrottre, to decrease; recrottre, to grow again. 22) Plaire, to please. P. pr. plaisant. P. p. plu. Pres. Je plais, tu plais, il plaît, nous plaisons, vous plaisez, ils plaisent. Subj. Que je plaise etc. Prot. Je plus, tu plus, il plut, nous plûmes, vous plûtes, ils plurent. Fut. Je plairai, tu plairas etc. . . Thus: se complaire, to delight in ...; déplaire, to displease. (S'il vous plant == if you please.) 23) Taire, to conceal. P. pr. taisant. P. p. tû. Pres. Je tais, tu tais, il tait, nous taisons, yous taises, ila taisent. Subj. Que je taise, que tu taises, qu'il taise etc. Pret. Je tus, tu tus, il tut, nous tûmes, vous tûtes, ils turent. Fut. Je tairai. Thus: se taire, to be silent. Pres. Je me tais, I am silent., Imper. Tais-toi, taisez-vous. Pret. Je me tus, I was silent. Comp. of the Pres. Je me suis tû, I have been silent. 24) Paraître, to appear. P. pr. paraissant. P. p. paru. Pres. Je parais, tu parais, il paraît, nous paraissons, vous paraissez, ils paraissent. Subj. Que je paraisse. Pret. Je parus, tu parus, il parut etc. Fut. Je paraîtrai. Thus: apparattre, to appear; comparattre, to appear before the judge; disparattre, to disappear; reparattre, to re-appear. 25) Paitre, to graze. P. pr. paissant. P. p. pû. Like paraître, but no Pret. Thus: nepaitre, to feed, with the Pret. fe repus. Otto, French Conv.-Grammar.
  - 12

26) Connaître, to know, P. pr. connaissant. P. p. connus.

Pres. Je connais, tu connais, il connaît, nous connaissons, vous connaissez, ils connaissent.

Pret. Je connus. Fut. Je connaîtrai.

Thus: méconnaître, to mistake, not to acknowledge; reconnaître, to recognize, to know again, to acknowledge.

THE P	~~	
	oras.	

The conduct, la conduite. the day-light, le jour. sad, triste. dark, sombre. the treatment, le traitement. impossible, impossible.

### a same she Thême, 80.

What are you reading there? I read a German book. Why did you read my letter? I have not read it, and I shall not read it. Read over again your lesson. Dost thou drink water? No, I drink wine and water. When you are thirsty, what do you drink? We drink fresh water. The boy has drunk all the beer. Do you believe that? No, I do not believe it. I thought (that) you had written your exercise, but I see (je vois) (that) I am mistaken. She grows every day. These trees have grown rapidly (rapidement). He did not believe what I said. I (have) thought that we would be here before six o'clock. The young gentleman pleased by his conduct. Be silent, Frederick. Tell (to) your sister, if you please, to bring me her French grammar. Do you know my brother? No, I do not know him. I have known him when we were boys. You appear sad, what is the matter with you (qu'avez-vous)? Such a treatment (has) appeared to me very cruel. The day-light had disappeared. It was (il faisait) quite dark, and it was impossible for me (m'-) to recognise my friend. 

27) Faire, to do, to make. P. pr. faisant. P. p. fait.

raige constant

... :

Pres. Je fais, tu fais, il fait, nous faisons, vous faites, ils font.

Pres. Subj. Que je fasse, que tu fasses, qu'il fasse, que nous fassions, que vous fassiez, qu'ils fassent, qu'il Imperf. Je faisais, tu faisais, il faisait etc. Qu'il Pret. Je fas, tu fis, il fit, nous fîmes, vous fîtes, ils finent. Imperf. Subj: Que je fisse, que tu fisses, qu'il fit, que nous fissions; que vous fissiez, qu'ils fissent.

Fut. Je ferai, tu feras etu. Imperi Fais, faisons, faites. Conjugate in the same manner the compounds of faire, viz: défaire, to unido; contrefaire, to counterfeit; refaire, to do ragain; satisfaire, to satisfy; surfaire, to exact ask, too much.

28) Mettre, to put. Part. pres. mettant. Part. past. mis. Pres. Je mets, tu mets, il met, nous mettons, vous mettez, ils mettent. Pres. Subj. Que je mette. Imperf. Je mettais.

Pret. Je mis, tu mis, il mit, nous mîmes, vous mîtes, ils mirent. Imperf. Subj. Que je misse, que tu misses, ''' qu'il mît, que nous missions etc.

Fut. Je mettrai, tu mettras etc.

Thus: admettre, to admit; commettre, to commit; démettre, to turn out; omettre, to omit; permettre, to permit, to allow; promettre, to promise; compromettre, to compromise, to expose; remettre, to put again, to replace, to hand over; soumettre, to submit; transmettre, to transmit, to send.

Se mettre à signifies to begin; Ex.: l'enfant se mit à pleurer, the child began crying.

29) Prendre, to take. P. pr. prenant. P. p. pris. Pres. Je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous prenons, vous prenes., ils. prennent. Pres. Subj. Que je prenne, que tu prennes, qu'il prenne, que nous prenions, que vous preniez, qu'ils prennent. Imperf. Je prenais.

Pret. Je pris, tu pris, il prit, nous primes, vous prites, / ils prirent. Imperf. Subj. Que je prisse.

.... Fut. Je prendrai. Imper. Prends, prenons, prenez.

Conjugate in the same manner the compounds of prendre: apprendre, to learn; désapprendre, to unlearn; rapprendre, to learn over again; comprendre, to understand; entreprendré, to undertake; méprendre, to mistake; reprendre, to take again, to reply, to chide; surprendre, to surprise.

12\*

31) Vivre, to live. P. pr. vivent. P. p. uses: Pres. Je vis, tu vis, il wit, nous vivons, vous vivez, ils

- Imper. Vis, vivons, vivez, Imperf. Je vivais,
- ... Prot. Je vécus, tu vécus, il vécut, nous vécûmes etc. Fut. Je vivrai etc.

Thus also: survivre (à qn.), to survive; revivre, to revive.

### Words.

The afternoon, Vaprès-midi f.a line, une ligne.the riband, le ruban.the chair, la chaise.Charlemain, Charlemagne.the chair, la chaise.once, une fois.a fellow-traveller, un compagnonpagan, païen.désormais.henceforward, désormais.the decision, la décision.obedient, obéissant.a line, une ligne.

### Thème. 81.

What are you doing there? I do my exercise. We do our exercise. Have you done it? Yes, I have done it. I did it yesterday. Charles will do it this afternoon. These pupils make a great many mistakes in their exercises. We shall do them again. Your riband has loosened itself. Put this book on the table. Where have you put your penknife? I have put it in my drawer (*aroir* m.). Did your father permit you to go to the theatre? Yes, he has allowed it. He allows me to go there (*d'y aller*) once a (*par*) week. Charlemain subdued (*def.*) the pagan Saxons. The servant promised henceforward to be faithful and obedient. All the children began to cry.

#### 82.

I take medicine. He takes coffee. We take tea. The children take milk. I took a pen and dropped (wrote) a few lines to my father. Who has taken my pencil? I have not taken it. Take mine. Do not take this chair, it is broken (caseée). Do you understand what I say? I understand every word. I should undertake that journey, if I had a fellowtaveller. We submit ourselves to your decision. Our professor does not admit that principle. My mother was (est) born in England. Virgil was born (def.) at Mantua (Mantoue). How many years have you lived in America? Formerly we lived in the country, but for (depuis) several years we have lived (Prasent tense) in Geneva (Geneve). Many rich people live in abundance. (The) hope revived (Impf.) in this heart. Long live (the) Queen Victoria!

Conversation.

t.,

Ou, conduisez - vous Je le conduis chez le médecin. cet ""aveugle? Lequel de vous deux a dit Nous ne l'avons dit ni l'un ni cela? l'autre. Direz–vous jamais un men– Nous dirons toujours la vérité. songe (a lie)? Bois-tu encore, mon ami? Non, je ne bois plus, j'ai assez ˈbu. Est-ce que votre fils vous Il m'écrit à peu près une fois """Ccrit souvent ?" par mois. Comprénez-vous tout ce que Pardon, je ne comprends pas <sup>101</sup>vous lisez? . . . . . tout. Que lui promites-vous? Je promis de lui prêter un livre. Que faites-vous là, Messieurs?" Nous lisons les journaux. Votre ami Charles, que fait-il? Il fait sa version pour demain. Est-ce que vous pouvez faire Oh non! Monsieur, je n'ai pas ce. que, vous voules ?. tant de liberté. Qui a cousu ces chemises? C'est la couturière (seamstress). Commentiales trouvez-vous? Je ne les trouve pas bien cou-.1..... 1. 14 sues. Que buvez-vous la? Nous buvons de la bière. Ils ont cru qu'elle restait fixe. Qu'est-ce que les anciens ont cru à l'égard (concerning) de la terre? Ferez-vous ce fili je desire? We le feral and grand plaisir. Où naquit Napoléon Bona-Il naquit dans l'île de Corse. 148 Seco.. 0.198 911 1 60.9 - 15 - 50 - 1 Le Rhin est - il haut? Oui, il a beaucoup crû depuis deux jours. Quand naquit Jesus - Christ? Il naquit sous le règne de l'empereur romain Auguste! さいがた ビッチティ いと ともの。

Reading lesson.

La compassion et l'indifférence. Edouard et Gustave allèrant (went) à la campagne par (by) un grand froid d'hiver. Ils trouvèrent sur la route un homme couché sur la neige, qui *parsissait* être profondement endormi. Edouard eut pitié de lui, et, *oraignant* qu'il ne *mourût* de froid, s'approcha pour le réveiller. Mais, quaiqu'il le secouât fortement, l'homme ne se réveillait pas.

"Tu auras beau le secouer, s'écria Guctave en riant (laughing), il ne se réveillera pas; ne vois-tu pas qu'il est ivre? Laisse la cet homme et viens, il fait froid." — "Non, répondit Édouard, il m'est impossible d'abandonner ce malheureux et de l'exposer au danger de mourir de froid. Quand même il serait ivre (drunken), c'est un homme qui a besoin de secours, et je ferai tout ce qui dépend de moi pour sauver ses jours." — "Fais ce que tu voudras (as you please), murmura Gustave, je n'aime pas rester plus longtemps au froid," et il continua sa route.

Mais Édouard couvrit de neige le pauvre engourdi, parce qu'il avait entendu dire que la neige réchauffait, et couvre au village voisin pour chercher du secours. Il revint biestôt avec quelques hommes de bonne volonté, qui rappelèrent à la vie son protégé. Quelle ne fut pas la joie d'Édouard.! Que pensez-vous de lui? Que pensez-vous de Gustave? Lequel des deux prendrez-vous pour modèle?

Endormi, asleep.	tu auras beau 🦾 🖓 you will —
qu'il ne mourût de froid, lest he	in vain
should die with cold.	engoundi, benumbed, stiffened.
secouer, to shake.	réchauffer, to warm again.
réveiller, to wake.	la volonté, the will.

11

# THURTY EIGHTH: LESSON .....

Irregular verbs of the second class.

d. (32-41. Verbs ending in ir, having the flexions of the third Conjugation.)

82) Fuir, to shun, to flee, Part. pres. fuyant. Part. past. fui.
 Pres. Je fuis, tu fuis, il fuit, nous fuyons, vous fuyez, ils fuient. Imperf. Je fuyais.

Pret. Je fuis. Fut. Je fuiraí. Conjugate in the same manner: "enfuir, to run away. Pres. Je monfuis, Comp. of the Pres. Je me suis enfuir, I have run

38) Vêtir, to clothe. Part. pres. vêtánt. Part. past. vêtu. Pres. Je vêts, tu vêts, il vêt; nous vêtons letc. · · · · Pret. Je vetis. Fut. Je vetiral. . . . . <sup>1</sup> Na Thus also: devetir, to divest; revetir, to invest. 34) Servir, to serve, to help. (P. pr. servant. P. p. servi. Pres. Je sers, tu sers, il sert, nous servons, vous servez, ils servent. Subj. Que je serve. Pret. Je servis. Fut. Je servirai. Thus also: desservir, to clear the table; se servir, to make use of, to use. 35) Dormir, to sleep. P. pr. dormant. P. p. dormi. Pres. Je dors, tu dors, il dort, nous dormons, vous dormez, ils dorment. Pres. Subj. Que je dorme. Pret. Je dormis etc., like servir. Thus: endormir, to lull asleap; s'endormir, to fall as-· leep; se rendormir, to fall asleep again. 36) Partir, to set out, to leave. P. pr. partant. P. p. parti. . Pres. Je pars, tu pars, il part, nous partons etc., on sernir. Thus: repartir, to set off again, to reply. Not to be confounded with repartir, to distribute, which is regular. 37) Mentir, to lie. P. pr. mentant. P. p. menti. Pres. Je mens, tu mens, il ment, nous mentons, vous mentez etc., on servir. Thus also: démentir, to give the lie. 38) Sentir, to feel, smell. P. pr. sentant. P. p. senti. Pres. Je sens, tu sens, il sent, nous sentons etc., on servir. ta i k apr of a Thus: consentir, to consent; pressentir, to foresee; ressentir, to feel. 39) Se repentir de qch., to repent. P. pr. se repentant. P. p. repenti. 11 Pres. Je me repens, I repent, etc., on sentir. 40) Sortir, to go out. P. pr. sortant. P. p. sorti. Pres. Je sors, tu sors, il sort etc., on servir. Thus: ressortir, to go bit'stain. Ressortir, to resort, and assortir, to assort, are regularly conjugated on finir. , in iste 41) Courir, to run. P. pr. courant. P. p. couru. Pres. Je cours, tu cours, il court, nous courons, vous courez, ils courent. Subj. Que je coure.

Pret. Je courus, tu courus, il courut, nous courûmes, vous courûtes, ils couruent. Fut. Je courrai, tu courras, il courrs, nous courrans, vous courag, ils courrant. Imper. Cours, courons, nouerez. Thus: acçourir, to run to; soncourir, to compete; dis- courir, to discourse; encourir, to incur; parcourir, to run over; recourir, to have recourse; secourir, to relieve, to assist.
42) Cueillir, to gather. P. pr. cueillant. P. p. cueilli. Pres. Je cueille, tu cueilles, il cueille, nous cueillons, vous cueillez, ils cueillent, Subj. Que je cueille. Pret. Je cueillis. Imper. Cueille, cueillons, cueillez. Fut. Je cueillerai.
<ul> <li>Thus: accueillir, to receive; recueillir, to gather.</li> <li>43) Offrir, to offer. P. pr. offrant. P. p. offert. Pres. J'offre, tu offres, il offre, n. offrons, v. offrez etc. Pret. J'offris. Imper. Offre, offrons, offrez. Fut. J'offrirei.</li> <li>44) Souffrir, to suffer. P. pr. souffrant. P. p. souffert.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Pres. Je souffre, tu souffres etc., on offrir.</li> <li>45) Ouvrir, to open. P. pr. ouvrant. P. p. ouvert. Pres. J'ouvre etc., on offrir. Thus: rouerir, to open again; entr'ouvrir, to open a little.</li> <li>46) Couvrir, to cover. P. pr. couvrant. P. p. couvert.</li> </ul>
Thus: découvrir, to discover; recouvrir, to cover över. 47) Tressailling to start up. <i>P. pr.</i> tressaillant: <i>P. p.</i> <i>tressailling of the tressailles</i> , il tressaille etc. <i>Pres.</i> Je tressailles. <i>Fut.</i> Je tressaillerai and je tressaillerai. Thus: assaillir, to assault. Saillir (= jaillir), to gush,
<ul> <li>48) Saillir, to jut out, project. P. pr. szillant. P. p. sailli. Pres. Srd pers. il saille, pl. ils szillent. On tresscillir; hut it is used only in the 3rd pers. sing. and plur.</li> </ul>
The robber, le brigand. the coach, la voiture.the agreement, la convention. tired. fatigué.to despise, mépriser. the noise, le bruit.the yiolet, la violette.

## 

. •

shun, these places. We clothe the poor. The young girl was clad in black. I cannot meet him, he shuns me. - Avoid (the) bad company. Your friend, Mr. A., does not serve me well. Shall I help you [to] a little bit (moresau) of mutton? Serve your neighbour, he will serve you again (à son tour). I made use of your coach. Tell me what he has done to you; but above all (surtout) do not lie. He who lies, deserves to be despised. I go out every day. Do not go out, Robert, it is too cold....If I were as ill as you, I would not go out of my room. Lifeel the cold. Do not make any (de) noise, for my mother is asleep (sleeps). I hope she will sleep hetter to-night (cette nuit). If I do not walk a little, I shall fall asleep.

84.

My friend is leaving just now (à Finstant). I do not consent to this agreement. Do you not repent of what (de ce que) you have done? I always repent when I have done wrong" ('mal)'. "Do not run' so' fast (vite), you will be tired. They always run, when they go to see their sunt. I ran faster than you. Mr. F. is a great traveller: he has run over all Europe. If she is unhappy, I shall relieve her. For whom are you gathering these violets? I gather them for my mother. The young lady has been received with the greatest kindness. I always offer him my services. He offered menta hundred pounds for my garden." What are you doing there? I cover the plants with (de) snow.

. Conversation.

m i · , »<sup>,</sup> Quel est ce bruit qu'on entend? C'est que les ennemis fuient. Ne va-t-on pas les pour- Les ordres en sont déjà donnés. suivre?

Pourquoi fuyez-vous cet en- Parce qu'on n'y apprend rien droit (place)? unzoni- Hallasban.

Où est votre oiseau?

*.*.

Il s'est enfui de la cage.

Que fis-tu hier au bols' (woo'd)? Je" cuetllais des fraises.

En as-tu trouvé beaucoup? J'en ai cueilli un pot tout plein.

Où croissent cesi fleurs? ...... Elles croissent dans les prairies.

Monsieur, ne voudriez-vous Je veux bien, si tu veux me pas me prendre, à votre servir fidèlement. service? - N. , 

Avez-vous vu le champ de bataille ? Avez-vous bien dormi ? Combien d'heures dormez- vous d'ordinaire ? Dormez-vous encore, mes	IF sert à nettoyer les chemins. Oui, il était couvert de blessés, de morts et de mourants. Très bien, je vous remercie. Je dors (à l'ordinaire 7 heures, quelquefois 8 heures. Oh non! nous sommes éveillés.
Quand partirez-vous?	To nome à l'incéant
Moin an antirez wous r	Il m'attend à la station (l'em-
de voues ou est voure compagnon	harmdene)
de voyage?	
madame votre mere est-ene,	Non, Monsieur, elle est sortie
	il-y a une demi-heure. Une affaire pressante me retient
sorti?	encore pour une heure ou deux.
Ouvrez donc les fenêtres!	Elles sont déjà ouvertes.
Qui a laissé la porte ouverte,?	
Fermez-la tout de suite?	La voilà fermée.
Combien m'offrez - vous de	Je vous offre 12,000 florins.
Où courez-vous donc si vite?	Je cours à la poste.
	Il a souffert bien des fatigues.
Vous paraissez tout mouillés: que vous est-il arrivé?	Nous avons été surpris par une forte averse (heavy shower).
Cet enfant n'est-il pas vêtu	Oui, il faudra le vôțir mainte- nant plus légèrement.
Ne vous repentez-vous pasi	Oui, 'je m'en repens. Je me
de votre mauvaise con-	· conduirai mieux à l'avenir.
duite?	i –
	· · ·
Beadin	g-lesson.
Le corbeau	et le renard.

Le corbeau, et le renard. (Fable.)

.

Maître corbeau, sur un arbre perché, Tonait en son bec un fromage. Maître renard, par l'odeur alléché, Lui aint à peu près ce langage (speech):

Hé, bon jour, monsieur Du corbeau, Que vous êtes joli! que vous me semblez beau! Sans mentir, si votre ramage, Se rapporte à votre plumage, Vous êtes le phénix des hôtes de ces bois. A' cesamote le corbeau ne se sent plus de joie, :8: Et pour montrer sa belle voix, Il ouvre un large beca laisse tomber sa proie. Le repard s'en saisit et dit. Mon bon monsieur, Apprenez que tout flatteur Cette lecon vant bien un fromage sans doute. ·· · Jura, mais un peu tard, qu'on ne l'y prendrait plus. Le bec, the beak, bill. se saisir, to seize. Todeur, the smell, and the aux depens, at the expense. le ramage, the song. se rapporter à, to agree with. confus, perplexed, Those, the host, guest. jurer, to swear. y prendre, to take in, to deceive. là proie, the prey. A STATE AND A STATE OF 33.5

THIRTY NINTH LESSON.

Irregular verbs of the third class. (49-53, Verbs, in ir changing; their radical vowel and taking the flexions of the 3rd Conjug.)

Shina - 197

49) Mourir, to die. Part. pres. mourant. Part. past. mort. """ Pres. Je meurs, tu meurs, il meurt, nous mourons, vous mourez, ils meurent. Subj. Que je meure, que tu meures, 'qu'il meure, que 'nous mourions,' que vous mouriez, qu'ils metirent." Imper. Meurs, mourons, mourez.

Pret Je mourus, tu mourus, il mourut, nous mourûmes, yous mourutes, ils moururent,

Thus also rise mouries to be read dying, to be fainting. Pres. Je me mouse soo. Another is a structure of the second - 1,88 ---

50) Bouillir, to boil; ment(v. Part. pres. bouillant. Part. past. bouilli.
Pres. Je bous, tu bous, il bout; nous bouillons, vous bouillez, ils bouillent. Subj. Que ja bouille etc. Pret. Je bouillis. Fut. Je: bouillirai.
To boil, as an active verb, is condered faire bouillir, as: to boil potatoes, faire bouillin des pommes de terre.

51) Venir, to come: P. pr. venant P. p. vena:

Pres. Je viens, tu viens, il vient, nous venons, vous venez, ils viennent. Pres. Subj. Que je vienne, que tu viennes, qu'il vienne, que nous venions, que vous veniez, qu'ils viennent. Imperj. Je vensis.

Pret. Je vins, tu vins, il vint, sous vinnes, vous vintes, ils vinrent Imperf. Subj. Que je vinsse, que ta vinsses, qu'il vint, que nous vinssions etc.

Perfect. Je suis venu, I. have come, tu e.e. venu etc. Fut. Je viendrai, tu viendras etc. Cond. Je viendrais. Imper. Viens, venons, venez.

Conjugate in the same manner: convenir, to agree, to suit devenir, to become; parvenir, to attain, to reach; prevenir, to be beforehand with; provenir, to arise, spring from, to proceed; se souvenir, to remember; subvenir, to relieve; revenir, to come back (again).

52) Tenir, to hold. P. pr. tenant. P. p. tenu. This verb a conject of neighbor is a fill Pres. Je tiens, tu tiens, il tent, hous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent. Subj. Que je tranne.

Pret. Je tins, tu tins, il tint, nous tinmes, v. tintes, ils tinrent. Fut. Je tiendrai. "Imper. Tiens, tenons, tenez.

Thus also: appartenir, to belong; s'abstenir, to abstain; contenir, to contain; détenir, to detain; entrodé nett, to keep up; maintenir, to maintain; obtenir, to abtain; retenir, to retain; soutenir, to sustain, uphold, support.

53) Acquérir, to acquire. P. m. equitant. P. p. acquis. Pres. J'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquérent. Pres. Sub. Que j'acquière, que tu acquéres, qu'il acquére, que nous acquérions, que vous acquéret, qu'ils sequérent. Pret. J'acqués, tu acqués, il acquér, nous acquéres, vous acquérios, tu acqués, il acquér, nous acquéres, vous acquéres, ils acquérent. Model de facquéres.

Conjugate in the mannet: conquerir, to conquer; recon- querir, to conquer sighin; requerir, to request, and a on querir, to enquire. In Querir, to fetch, is used, in familiar conversation, after aller, venir, envoyer, as: allez querir, go and fetch.	
all and a construction of wards.	
Grief, le chagrin. disease, illuess, malàdie f. knowledge, des connaissances.	
disease, illuess, maladie f. knowledge, des connaissances.	
painful, douloureun, same the heat, la chaleur.	7
teneontinue, continuer the part, la partie. 91.	

## Thème. 85.

and the second second

- 107 . In a second

Your friend is dying. Mrs. A. died of (de) grief. The old general died at Paris of a very painful disease. I feel myself very weak; I shall soon die. Take the water off the fire; it boils. Boil that meat again, it has not boiled long enough. Miss Emily is coming. Dost thou come? Yes, I come. Why do you not come, when I call you? He came to see me (me gair) every morning. Come back soon. I shall be (come) back in an hour. I should come earlier (de meilleure heure), if I had (the) time. Mrs. B. would have come to us, if it had not rained (peu). What has (est) become [of] your brother? I hope you will keep your word and (will) come to-morrow, I maintain, and will always maintain that you will not be happy without virtue.

86.

<sup>All</sup> I agree (that) Miss L. is the prettiest of the family; but she is so proud, that I know (sais) not what will become of her (ce qu'elle...). My uncle will not come back to-day. Why do you abstain (yourself) from drinking? Mr. S. will not obtain that situation (place). If you study much, you will acquire knowledge. I do not think (that) this colour suits (to) your sister. That hat would suit you very well, if you were a little taller. My mother's illness proceeds from the great heat. Alexander the great has conquered the greatest part of Asia. Your uncle has acquired a great name in America. The young man did not survive (out-live) (to) that misfortune. You will become a great man, if you continue to study with the same assiduity.

Part past and Pret. in (0.) 1. 54) Devoir, to owe, (ought to). P. pr. devant. P. p. dû. Pres. Je dois,\*) tu dois, il doit, nous devons, vous devez, ils doivent. Pres. Subj. Que je doive. Pret. Je dus, tu dus, il but tous dûmes, vous dûtes, ils durent. Imperf. Subj. Que je dusse. Fut. Je devrai, tu devras etc. Cond. Je devrais.\*) 55) Recevoir, to receive. P. pr. recevants P. p. recu. Pres. Je reçois, tu reçois, il reçoit, nous recevons, vous recevez, ils recoivent. Pret. Je reçus, tu reçus, il reçut, nous reçûmes, vous reçûtes, ils reçurent. Fut. Je recevrai, tu recevras, il recevra etc. Thus also: decevoir, to deceive; apercevoir, to perceive; concevoir, to conceive. 56) Dechoir, to decay. (No P. pr.) P. p. dechu. Pres. Je déchois,' tu déchois, il déchoit, nous déchoyons, ' vous déchoyez, ils déchoient. Subj. Que je déchoie. Pret. Je déchus, tu déchus, il déchut, nous déchûmes, vous déchûtes, ils déchurent. Fut. Je décherrai, tu décherras, il décherra, nous décherrons, vous décherrez, ils décherront. Thus: echoir, to fall to, to expire; P. pr. echeant; P. p. echus is now only used in the 3rd pers. sing !: il or elle échoit, il échut etc. Choir is only used in the infinitive mood. 57) Falloir, to be necessary, is an impersonal verb, the conjugation of which has been given p. 137. ٩, Pres. Il faut. Imperf. Il fallait etc. . . . . . . . ... • • 58) Mouvoir, to move. P. pr. mouvant., P. p. mu. 27 ... Pres. Je meus, tu meus, il meut, nous mouvons, vous. mouvez, ils meuvent. Subj. Que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve, que nous mouvions, que vous mouviez, qu'ils meuvents · Pret. Je mus, tu mus, il mut, nous mumes, vous mutes, ils, mureut, Fut. Je mouvrai. of an / in the 413 L 1 1 Thus also c émouvoir, to move, to excite, stir up; s! émou ... \_ ... voir, to be moved, affected. and all of the third Concernence of the second states of the 61.11 \*) Je dois, followed by a verb, corresponds to the English: I am to, 1 must. Je devrais = I ought to, I should.

- 59) Pleuvoir, to rain (impers.). P. pr. pleuvant. P. p. plu. Pres. Il pleut. Subj. Qu'il pleuve. Imperf. Il pleuvait. Pret. Il plut, Subj. imperf. Qu'il plût. Fut. Il pleuvra.
- 60) Pourvoir,\*) to provide. P. pr. pourvoyant. P. p. pourvoi.

Pres. Je pourvois, tu pourvois, il pourvoit, nous pourvoyons, vous pourvoyez, ils pourvoient. Pret. Je pourvus. Fut. Je pourvoirai.

Thus: prévoir, to foresee, which makes in the Pret. je prévis.

61) Pouvoir, to be able. P. pr. pouvant. P. p. pu.

Pres. Je peux (or je puis) \*\*), tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent. Pres. Subj. Que je puisse, que tu puisses, qu'il puisse, que nous puissions, que vous puissiez, qu'ils puissent. Imperf. Je pouvais.

- Pret. Je pus, tu pus, il put, nous pûmes, vous pûtes, ils purent. Imperf. Subj. Que je pusse.
- Fut. Je pourrai, tu pourras, il pourra, nous pourrons, vous pourrez, ils pourront. Cond. Je pourrais.
- Note. May, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present tense of the subjunctive. Ex.: Puisse-t-il être heureux, may he be happy!
- 62) Savoir, to know. P. pr. sachant. P. p. su.
  - Pres. Je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent. Subj. Que je sache, que tu saches, qu'il sache, que nous sachions, que vous sachiez, qu'ils sachent. Imperf. Je savais, tu savais etc.

Pret. Je sus, tu sus, il sut, nous sûmes, vous sûtes, ils surent. Fut. Je saurai, tu sauras, il saura etc. Imper. Sache, sachons, sachez.

- Note, There is also an old form of the Pres. Ind. Je sache. The Cond. je ne saurais (without pas) signifies: I cannot, as: Je ne saurais vous dire, I cannot tell you.
- 63) Valoir, to be worth. P. pr. valant. P. p. valu. Pres. Je vaux, tu vaux, il vaut, nous valons, vous valez, ils valent. Subj. Que je vaille, que tu vailles, qu'il vaille, que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils vaillent.

\*\*) puis is only used in the 1st pers. sing. I cannot is mostly expressed by je ne puis (without pas), or je ne peux pas.

second to a

<sup>\*)</sup> like 65) Voir, except the Pret. and Fut.

Imperf. Je valais. Pret. Je valus, tu valus, il valut, nous valumes etd. . Fut. Je vandrai, tu vandras etc. Cond. Je voudrais. Observe the expression: il vaut mieux, it is better, etc. Const jugate in the same manner: prévaloir, to prevail; but it makes in the Subj. pres.: Que je prévale (not prévaille), que tu prévales, qu'il prévale, que nous prévalions, que vous prévaliez, qu'ils prévalent. 64) Vouloir, to be willing. P. pr. voulant. P. p. voulu. Pres. Je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, ils veulent. Subj. Que je veuille, que tu veuilles, qu'il veuille, que nous voulions, que vous vouliez, qu'ils veuillent. Imper. (Veuille), veuillez, be so kind as. Imperf. Je voulais. ٠. Pret. Je voulus, tu voulus, il voulut, nous voulumes etc. Fut. Je voudrai, tu voudras etc." Cond. Je voudrais, I should like to. 65) Voir, to see. P. pr. voyant. P. p. vu. Pres. Je vois, tu vois, il voit, nous voyons, vous voyez. ils voient. Imperf. Je voyais, tu voyais etc. Pret. Je vis, tu vis, il vit, nous vîmes, vous vîtes etc. Fut. Je verrai, tu verras, il verra, nous verrons etc. Imper. Vois, voyons, voyez. Thus: revoir, to see again; entrevoir, to have a glimpse of. For pourvoir and prévoir see Nr. 60. - Aller voir and venir voir qn. are rendered: to call upon a person. 66) S'asseoir, to sit down. P. pr. s'asseyant. P. p. assis. Pres. Je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied, nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient (s'asseyent). Imperf, Je m'asseyais. Pret. Je m'assis, tu t'assis, il s'assit, nous nous assîmes, vous vous assîtes, ils s'assirent. Fut. Je m'assiérai, tu t'assiéras, il s'assiéra etc. (or je m'asseierai, tu t'asseieras, il s'asseiera etc.) Imper. Assieds-toi, asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous. Words. A basket, un panier. the spring, le ressort.

the brother-in-law, le beau-frère. the hunter, le chasseur. the danger, le danger. to repeat, répéter. the bill, la lettre de change. criminal, coupable.

١

the looking-glass, la glave. .... damp, humide. N 1 010.471 thick; epsignate and the report, le bruit, la nouvelle. the star, littoile fin the month stop', amêter. · . . . the grass . Therberg and the in the direction . Ladresse f.

### Thème. 88.

31

I am to copy my exercise. We must set out. The slave owes me his liberty. You ought to come at two o'clock. I receive a letter every day. We receive our money from the banker (du banquier). My friend received (def.) a basket filled with grapes (de raisins). The hunter perceived a bird on a tree. They did not perceive the danger. He ought to do his exercise. The bill is due (échue). The spring which moves the whole machine, is very ingenious (ingénieuse). Does it rain? No, it does not rain; but it will rain this evening. If (the) men do not provide for it (y), God will provide for it. Before he left (avant de partir), he provided for (à) all. Can you come? I cannot come, but my brother can (come). We could see nothing; for it was dark (il faisait mui). I could do it myself, if I had (the) time. May you be happy! I could do no (pas) better. "Edward could not (has not been able to) do his exercise, because he got up (has got up) too late; but he will be able to do it this evening. could have told it [to] you fast hight. Thev · · , · · · , · . . . .

89.

I know that he is your friend, but I did not know that he is your brother-in-law. Do you know why he has (is) not come? No, I do not know (it). When you know (Fut.) your lesson, come and repeat it to me. These pens are worth nothing. It is (vaut) better to be unfortunate than guilty. How much do you think (that) this looking-glass is worth (Subj.). It is worth a hundred franks at most (tout au plus); it would be worth more, if the glass was thicker. Can't you see that star? I do not see it. Take this telescope (lunette), and you will see it. Will you take coffee? No, Sir, I will take tea. I should like to see her to-morrow. Sit down there a minute. Why do not you sit down? Let us sit upon the grass (Therbe). I would sit down upon the grass, if it were not so damp. Can you (do you know) speak French? I can read, but I cannot speak [it]. Is this report true? I cannot (Cond.) tell (it you). He does not choose to (will not) est. If I chose (would), I should tall Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. 13

you where he lives. What would you have me do (that I should do)? (*Impf. Subj.*). We could have stopped him, if we had *chosen*. I send you herewith (*ci-joint*) the direction of Mr. L. I have found the ring which my cousin has lost, and I shall send it to her.

67) Envoyer, to send. P. pr. envoyant. P. p. envoyé. Pres. J'envoie, tu envoies, il envoie, nous envoyons etc. Imperf. J'envoyais. Pret. J'envoyai.

Fut. J'enverrai, tu enverras etc. Cond. J'enverrais.

68) Aller, to go. P. pr. allant. P. p. allé.

Pres. Je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont. Pres. Subj. Que j'aille, que tu ailles, qu'il aille, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils aillent.

Imperf. J'allais, tu allais, il allait etc.

Pret. J'allai, tu allas, il alla, nous allâmes, vous allâtes, ils allèrent.

Imperf. Subj. Que j'allasse, que tu allasses etc.

Imper. Va, allons, allez. Perf. Je suis allé, I have gone. Fut, J'irai, I shall go; tu iras, il ira, nous irons, vous irez, ils iront. Cond. J'irais, tu irais etc.

## Conjugation of S'en aller, to go away.

We give the reflective verb S'en aller, to go away, at full length, because its conjugation is rather difficult on account of its two pronouns. Observe, that en is never separated from the accusative m, t, s, nous etc.; hence it follows, that the compound or Perfect must not be written: je me suis en allé, but je m'en suis allé, tu t'en es allé etc.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je m'en vais, I go away tu t'en vas etc.	nous nous en allons, we go away vous vous en allez etc.
il s'en va etc.	ils s'en vont det.
Neg. Je ne m'en vais pas tu ne t'en vas pas etc.	M'en vais-je, do I go away? etc. Ne m'en vais-je pas? etc.
_	_

Imperfect. Je m'en allais, tu t'en allais. M'en allais-je, did I go sway? Je ne m'en allais pas. Ne m'en allais-je, pas?

ι.

Je m'en allai. Je ne m'en allai pas.

M'en allai-je? Ne m'en allai-je pas?

Future.

Je m'en irai. Je ne m'en irai pas. M'en irai-je? Ne m'en irai-je pas?

Imperative Mood.

affirmative.

Va t'en (qu'il s'en aille) allons-nous-en allez - vous - en (qu'ils s'en aillent).

negative. Ne t'en va pas (qu'il ne s'en aille pas) ne nous en allons pas ne vous en allez pas (qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas).

### Perfect.

Je m'en suis allé, I have gone nous nous en sommes allés tu t'en es allé . il s'en est allé elle s'en est allée

[away vous vous en êtes allés ils s'en sont allés elles s'en sont allées.

· Negatively.

Je ne m'en suis pas allé nous ne nous en sommes pas allés tu ne t'en es pas allé vous ne vous en êtes pas allés tu ne t'en es pas allé vous ne vous en êtes pas allés il ne s'en est pas allé ils ne s'en sont pas allés.

Interrogatively.

M'en suis-je allé? t'en es-tu allé? s'en est-il allé?

nous en sommes-nous allés? vous en êtes-vous allés? s'en sont-ils allés?

### Negative-interrogatively.

ne t'en es-tu pas allé? ne s'en est-il pas allé?

Ne m'en swis-je pas allé? ne nous en sommes-nous p. allés? ne vous en êtes-vous pas allés? ne s'en sont-ils pas allés?

#### Pluperfect. ۱.

Je m'en étais allé. M'en étais-je allé? Ne m'en étais-je pas allé? Je ne m'en étais pas allé.

## Subjunctive Mood.

### Present.

Que je m'en aille que tu t'en ailles qu'il s'en aille

que nous nous en allions que vous vous en alliez qu'ils s'en aillent.

Imperfect.

Que je m'en allasse que tu t'en allasses qu'il s'en allât etc. etc. Perfect.

Que je m'en sois allé. *Pluperfect.* Que je m'en fusse allé.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. S'en aller. — Past. S'en être allé.

Participles.

Pres. S'en allant. — Past. S'en étant allé

Words.

Obliged, obligé.	to strike, <i>sonner</i> .
last Thursday, Jeudi dernier.	health, la santé.
music, la musique.	to importune, importuner.

### Thème. 89.

I go to London. Thou goest to Paris. He goes to Berlin. My brother has also gone to Berlin. Where are you going? I am going to the play (au spectacle). I would go with you, if I had time. Why are they going away so soon? They are obliged to go away. Will not your mother be angry (fâchée), if you go away before her? I told her that I would go away before her, and she has permitted (it to) me. My sister and I (we) went last Thursday to the concert. If you had gone (there, y) also, you would have heard a fine music. These men went yesterday from house to (en) house. At what o'clock will you go (away)? I should have already gone, if it had not rained so fast (fort). Is he really gone (away)? Yes, he has gone away this morning. I could not have believed (2nd Cond.) that he would go so soon. Let, us go (away), it is going to (il va) strike three o'clock. How is (va) your health? Thank you, it is not very good. I wish (should like that) the boy would go (away) (Imperf. Subj.). I wish they would go away. Be gone (go away), you importune me.

### Conversation.

Comment vous portez-vous, Pas très bien, je me sens très mon cher ami? faible.

Il est déjà mort cette après-Est-ce que le malade va - mourir? midi. Oui, il a reçu un coup de sabre! Ce soldat-est-il blessé? Avez-vous fait bouillir les L'eau ne bout pas encore. onufs? Veyez-vous cette étoile bril-Non, je ne la vois pas. lante? Oui, il approche de la côte. Voit-on arriver le vaisseau? Quel pavillon a-t-il hissé? Il paraît avoir hissé le pavillon anglais. Viendrez-vous me voir de-J'irai vous voir demain soir. main? Certainement. Ce héros est Avez-vous entendu parler de mort aux Thermopyles. Léonidas? Non, il avait avec lui trois Est-ce qu'il combattait seul? cents Spartiates qui périrent avec lui. Qui fut Cicéron? Un célèbre orateur romain. Pourquoi lui a-t-on donné le . Parce qu'il a sauvé la patrie de nom de "père de la patrie"? la conspiration de Catilina. Où allez-vous, mon ami? Je vais au spectacle. Où va Mademoiselle votre Elle y va aussi. sœur? Votre compagnie nous sera très Permettez-vous que je vous accompagne? agréable. Oui, Monsieur, il est de retour Votre cousin est-il revenu depuis Dimanche dernier. de son voyage? Va-t-il rester ici maintenant? Je vous demande pardon, il s'en ira encore. A Steel Où ira-t-il? in fera in voyage en Suisse. 2 ..... Reading - lesson. ch'ari UNE LON t

Il y a quelques années qu'un incendie consume tout un village, et réduirit à la misère plus de trente familles, qui, aux approches de l'hiver, ne envaient où trouver un abri. Le respectable curé du village incendié, qui avait lui-même perdu toute sa fortune, était moins inquiet de son sort que de célui de ses paroissiens. Il parcourut les villes et les villages voisins pour recueillir des secours en faveur de ces malheureux,

et fit insérer dans les feuilles publiques le récit de l'événe+ ment affreux qui les avait réduite à la misère. Ses efforts furent couronnée d'un plein succès. Il requt de tous côtés de l'argent, des vivres et des objets d'habillement.

Un jour qu'il réfléchissait au meilleur usage qu'il ferait des derniers secours qui lui étaient parvenus, il vit entrer chez lui un garçon des environs, qui lui remit une pièce de deux francs et un vieil habit, en le suppliant de vouloir bien accepter ce don pour les incendiés. "Je sais bien, dit-il au curé, que c'est peu de chose, et, si j'avais cru ma sœur, je ne serais jamais venu chez vous; mais enfin le malheur de votre commune m'a touché, et il m'a été impossible de résister à l'envie de vous offrir le peu que j'avais."

A ces mots le curé ne put retenir ses larmes, et il dit au vertueux enfant, en l'embrassant: "Tu as donné, comme la veuve de l'Évangile, tout ce que tu avais, et par conséquent, tu as donné plus que tous les autres. Ton offrande est agréable au Seigneur. Conserve, ô mon fils, tes excellentes dispositions, et Dieu te bénira."

Un abri, a shelter, refuge. le curé, the curate. les paroissiens, the parishioners. l'envie, the wish, desire. insérer, to advertise. le récit, the account. affreux, frightful.

supplier, to supplicate. la commune, the congregation. la veuve, the widow. l'offrande; the offering. conserver, to keep, preserve.

## FORTIETH LESSON.

## Of the defective Verbs.

Verbs whereof some tenses or persons are wanting, are called *defective verbs*. They are as follows:

- 69) Braire, to bray. Pres. Il brait, ils braient. Fut. Il braira, ils brairont. Cond. Il brairait, ils brairaient.
- 70) Bruire, to roar. P. pr. bruyant. Imperf. Il bruyait, ils bruyaient.
- 71) Choir, to fall. P. p. chu.

- 199 -
- 72) Clore, to close. P. p. clos.
   Pres. Je clos, tu clos, il clôt.
   Fut. Je clorai, tu cloras etc. Cond. Je clorais.
- 73) Éclore, to be hatched. P. p. éclos.
   Pres. Il éclôt, ils éclosent. Pres. Subj. Qu'il éclose, qu'ils éclosent. Fut. Il éclôra, ils éclôront. Its compound tenses are formed with être.
- 74) Faillir, to fail. P. pr. (faillant.) P. p. failli. Pres. Il faut.
  - Pret. Je faillis, tu faillis, il faillit, nous faillimes, vous faillites, ils faillirent. Perf. J'ai failli, I had nearly.
  - " Thus: défaillir, to faint.
- 75) Férir, is used only in the expression: sans coup ferir, without striking a blow.
- 76) Frire, to fry. P. pr. wanting. P. p. frit. Pres. Je fris, tu fris, il frit. Plur. wanting. Fut. Je frirai. Cond. Je frirais. Perf. J'ai frit etc.
- 77) Ouir, to hear. P. p. ouï.
  - Pret. J'ouis, tu'ouis etc. Imperf. Subj. Que j'ouisse etc. Further the compound tenses, as: J'ai oui.
- 78) Gésir, to lie. P. pr. gisant. Pres. ci-gît, here lies, pl. ci-gisent (used on tombstones). Further: nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent. Imperf. ci-gisait; pl. ci-gisaient.
- 79) Issir, to be born, is used in the Part. past issu only.
- 80) Sourdre, to rush out of the ground, as water, has only the infinitive and the Pres. elle sourd, elles sourdent.
- Seoir, to fit. P. pr. séant. P. p. sis. Ind. pres. Il sied. Fut. Il siéra. Cond. Il siérait.

- ei \* - i

٠,

82) Surseoir, to put off. P. p. sursis, , Pres. Je surseois. Pret. Je sursis.

. . .

Note. Most of these verbs are not much in use.

-1.

. •

. . . .

. 7

# An alphabetical list

## - of all the French irregular and defective verbs.\*)

i... (Containing their five primitive Tenses).

Infinitive.	Present.	Part. pres.	P. past. Preterile.	Nr.
Absoudre	j'absous	absolvant	absous, te wanting	13.
Acquérir	j'acquiers	acquerant;		5 <b>8.</b>
Allar	je vais	allant	alle, e ; j'allai, juit	68.
Assaillir	j'assaille	assaillant	assailli, e j'assaillis	47.
S'asseoir	je m'assieds	s'asseyant	assis, e je m'assis	66.
Atteindre	j'atteins	atteignant	atteint, e j'atteignis	44.
Boire	je bois	buvant	bu, e je bus	19_
Bouillir	je bous	bouillant	bouilli, e je bouillis	50.
Braire	il brait		wanting wanting	69.
Bruire Im	p. il bruyait	bruyant		70.
Ceindre	je ccina	ceignant	ceint, e je ceignis	14.
Choir, see dé	choir	<u>^</u>		56.
Circoncire	je circoncis		circoncis je circoncis	2.
Clore	je clos	· · · · · · ·	clòs	12.
Conclure**)	je conclus	concluant	conclu, e je conclus.	
Concevoir	je conçois	concevant	conçu, e je conçus	55.
Conduire	je conduis	conduisant	conduit, e je conduisis	5.
Confire.	, je confis	confiscant	confit, c''' je confis	2:
Connaître _	je connais	connaişşan	t sonnu, e 🛛 je connus 🦂	264
Goudre	je couda	OOUSANS !	icoustis, ije edusis, in	11.
Courir	je cours	courant	conru, e je courus	41 <sub>e</sub>
Couvrir	je couvre	couvrant	couvert, e je couvris	<b>46.</b>
Craindre	je crains	craignant	craint, e je craignis	15,
Croire	je crofs	croyant	cru, e 🗥 je crus	20
Croître	je croîs	croissant	crû, e 'je crûs	21.
Cueillir	je cueille	cueillant	cueilli, e je cueillis	42.
Cuire	je cuis	cuisant	cuit, e je cuisis	4.

\*) The *derivatives* which are not in this Table, will be found with the primitives, under their respective number.

\*\*) See page 96, 4.

١

·

Infinitive.	Presbut.	Rart. pres.	P. past.	Preterise Nr.
<b>D</b> áchoir	je d <b>échots</b>	una i	déchu, e	je déchule 1 / 56.
Devoir .	je dois'	devant	dûr	je dus (11.54)
Dire	je dis	disant	dit, e	je dis 🕺 🕺
Dormir	je dors	dormant	dormi .	je dor <b>mis 85</b> 4
İ choʻir	il échoit	échéant	.éćhu	il échut ". 56.
Éclore	il solôt	-	éclos	- 73.
Écrire	j'écris	écrivant	écrít, e	j'écrivis 17.
Envoyer	j'en <del>v</del> oie	envoyant	envoyé	j'envoyni 67
Falloir	il faut		fallu	il fallut 57
Faillir		faillant	failli	je faillis. 74.
Faire 👘	je fais -	faisant	fait, e	je fis ' 274
Feindre -	je fei <b>ns</b>	feignant	feint, 🖢 🕠	je feignit 14
Férir		<u>لم</u>		- 75
Frire	je fris -	<u> </u>	frit, e	- 76.
Fuir	je fuis	fuyant -	fui, i	· ·
Gésir	il gît	gisant	<u> </u>	- 78.
Joindre	je joins	joignant	joint, e	je joignis 16.
Lssir	-	<del>,</del>	issu, e	- , 79,
Instruire	j'instr <b>u</b> is	instruisent	instruit, e	j'instruisis
Lire .	je list -	lisant	lu, e	je lus 18;
Luire ,	je luis	lujşant	lui .	— <u> </u>
Xentir 👝 -	je mens	mentant	menti · ·	je mensista 187.
Mettre	je mets	mettant ·	mis, e	je mis 🛛 🔐 281
Moudre —	je mon <b>ds</b>	monlant	•	je moulus 12.
Mourir	je menrs	mourant	imort, e :	jo motrus - 493
Mouvoir	je mens	monvant	mu, e	je mus <sub>vi li</sub> 58y
<b>Taître</b> şt' - 2	jo nais	naissant/	neve i	je naq <b>uis</b> 🕕 804
Nuire	je nuis.	nuisant	<b>nui</b> ···. ·	je nuisis i 1953.
Øffrir Y	j'offre	offrant '	offert, e	j'offris 11.43.
Ofndre	j'oins	<u>. 1</u>	oint	j'oignis * v10.
Ottir ''	· _ · · ·	<u>. 11</u>	ouï' ′	j'ouis 77.
Ouvrit (	j'ouvre ՝	ouvrant	ouvert, e	j'ouvris <sup>11</sup> 1 45.
Paître	je pais	paissant	pû	- 25.
Paraître	je parais	paraissant i	paru	'je 'partis' 24.
Partir	je pars	_partant	parti	je partis 36.
Peindre	je peins	peignant	peint	je peignis 14.

.

Infinitive.	Present.	Part. pres.	R pait.	Preterite.	Nr.
Plaindre	je plains	plaignant	plaint	je plaignis	151
Plaire .	je plais	plaisant	plu	je plus	221
Pleuvoir.	il pleut	pleuvant	plu	il plut	59.
Prendre	je p <b>rends</b>	prenant	pri <b>s</b>	je pris . 💀	29:
Poindre	je poins	poignant	(point)	(je poignis)	16.
Pourvoir	je pourvois	pourvoyant	pourvu, e	je pourvus	60.
Pouvoiŗ	je peux (puis)	pouvant	pu	je pus .	61.
Repentir, se,	je me repens	repentant	repenti	je me repentis	391
Restreindre	je restreins		restreint	je restreignis	14;
Rire*)	je ris	riant	ri	je ris.	•
Saillir .	il saille	saillant	sailli	il saillit	481
Savoir	je sais	sachant	su, e	je sus	62.
Sentir	je sens	sentant	senti, e	je sentis	38.
Seoir	il sied	séant.	sis, e	·	81.
Servir .	je sers	servant	servi, e	je servis ·	84.
Sortir	je sors	sortant	sorti .	je sortis	40.
Souffrir	je souffre	souffrant	souffert, e	je souffris	44.
Sourdre	elle sourd	`	' —	<u> </u>	80.
Suivre	je suis	suivant	suivi, e	je suivis	9.
Suffire	je suffis	söffisant	súffi	je suffis	2.
Surseoir	je, surseois	surso <b>yan</b> t	sursis	je sursis ·	82.
Taire	je tais	taisant	tû, e	je tus 92.	23.
Teindre	je tei <b>ns</b>	teignant:	teint, e 👘	je teignis	1 <b>4</b> .
Tenir	je ti <b>ens</b>	tenant	tenu, e	je tins 🕚 !	52.
Traire 1 53	jo <b>trais</b>	trayant	trait		• 8.
Tressaillir	je tressaille	tressaillant	trossailli-	je tressaillin	471
Valoir	je vaux '	valant	valuj	je valus	63.
Vaincre 🧭	je vaincs:	vainquant	vaincu, e	je vainquis	101
	je viens	venant	venu, e	je vins 🕔	51-1
Vêtir 🔍 👘	je vêts.	vêtant.	vêtu		334
	je vis	vivant	vécu ,	•	31,
Voir	je vois	voyant	<b>vu,</b> e .	•	6 <b>5</b> .,
Vouloir .	je veux.	voulant	voulu, e ,	je voulus 🖓	64.
		10 × 1	<b>.</b>	· .	đ
*) This ver	rb is found po	<b>.g</b> e 96, 3.	¥' :	۰. ۱	. :
· :	: : <del>.</del>		- 64		., t
* ;			ador -	· .	*

.

### Promiscuous Exercises for Translation.

......

, **", ", ", ", ", "**, " · / · · · · · · 1 Have I the book? .Yes, you have the book. --- Has he a stick ? Yes, he has a stick. - Has she a flower? She has a rose. - Have you a pear; or an apple? I have a pear, and Charles has an apple. - Have you a pair of gloves? Yes, Sir, I (j'en) have two pair. - Have you any friends? I have some friends. - How many friends have you? I have six good friends. - Have your friends any wine or beer? They have some wine. --- Has, the shoemaker good shoes? He has always good shoes and good boots. - What have the Englishmen? They have fine horses. - Has the captain<sup>2</sup> any good sailors<sup>3</sup>? He (il en) has some good [ones] and some bad [ones]. - Have you had much bread? We have had a good deal. - Have you cheese enough? I have not enough. — What day<sup>4</sup> of the month is it? It is the twelfth. - Is it not the thirteenth? No, Sir, I assure you, it is the eleventh or twelfth. --- Which horses have you? We have our own<sup>5</sup> horses. 1.1.1. 1

1) canne f. 2) le capitaine. 3) maielot m. 4) See p. 59, 2. 5) propre.

Had you much salt? I had only a little, but I had enorigh. — Has the woman much silk '? She has 'not much, she has not enough. — Have you any more (encore du) wine? I have some more wine. — Have you any more money? I have no more money. — Which volume of my work' have you? I have the second: — Have you as much gold as silver? I have neither gold hor silver. — Have you as many boots as shoes? I have as many of these as of those. — Have you as much courage ' as this soldier [has]? We have quite ' as much. — Has the foreigner [a] mind (envis) to buy this house? He has a mind to buy it. — Have you time ' to make' my pen? I have time to mend ' it, but I have no mind. — Has your cousin a mind to sell his horse? No, he has no mind to sell jt.

1) soie f. 2) See p. 109, 2, - 3) outrage m. 4) courage m. 5) tout. 6) put the article : le temps. 7) tailler.

Am I right (ai-je raison) to take a walk? You are right. Is he wrong 1 to spend<sup>2</sup> his money? He is wrong to spend too much money. - To whom do you wish to (voulez-vous) go? I wish to (je veux) go to my uncle's. - Is your brother at home? He is not yet at home, but he will be at home at six o'clock. - Do you wish to speak? Yes, I wish to speak: - To (a) whom do you wish to speak? I wish to speak to your aunt. - Do you wish to drink some red wine? I prefer<sup>s</sup> some white wine — What does the girl wish to drink? She wishes to drink some milk . - Do you wish to go home? Not yet, but in an hour. - Do your boys like to ( $\dot{a}$ ) go to school? They prefer to have private lessons<sup>5</sup>. Who wishes to write a letter? My daughter wishes to write several letters. - To whom will she write? She will write to her friends<sup>6</sup>. — Who will take<sup>7</sup> these letters to the postoffice<sup>8</sup>? The servant may (*peut*) take them there (y). , .°• 1) a-t-il tort? 2) de dépenser. 3) préférer. 4) lait. 5) des leçons particulières. 6) amies f. 7) porter. 8) la poste.

#### 4.

What have you to do (à faire)? I have to (à) write a French exercise. — What has your brother to do? He has to do his German exercise for to-morrow. — What did \*) the Englishman answer you? He answered nothing. — Did \*) he not say, he ' would come to me? No, Sir, he said \*) nothing at all<sup>2</sup>. — Where is the child of my neighbour? He is in your garden. — Have you many flowers in your garden? We have flowers of all kinds<sup>3</sup>. — Are you in want of (vous faut-il) a knife? No, but I want a penknife, — What o'clock is it? It is four o'clock, or half past four. — Did \*) your friend not say, it was a quarter past four? No, Sir, he said, it was a quarter to five. — At what o'clock do you go out? I go out at six o'clock this evening.

1) qu'il viendrait. 2) du tout. . 3) sorte f.

ali

. . . .

1 ...

Will you stay here? I cannot stay here, I am engaged (engage). — Is it late? It is not late, it is but (n'est pue)

\*) Observe that, in French, in all such short sentences (quest tions and answers) the Perfect tense is used; whereas in English the imperfect tense is found.

1) un met. 2) regarder. 3): domestique. 4) le tabac (def. art.).

6.

Do you find what you are looking for 1? I find what I look for. - Who has looked for me? Your master looked for you. - Can the cook<sup>2</sup> find what he looks for? He cannot find it. — What is he doing? He is killing a chicken<sup>3</sup>, Do you go for 4 anything? I go for something. - What do you go [for]? I go for some meat. - What has your mother sent you? She sent me a letter. - Do you learn (the) German? I do learn it. - How long (depuis quand) have you learned it? I began it two months ago. - Do you speak French? No, Sir, not yet, but I learn it. - How many lessons have you a (par) week? I have a lesson every other day<sup>5</sup>. — Are these men English? No, they are Scotch<sup>6</sup>. — Do they study German? I do not know, but I believe [they do]. - What does your pupil want'? He wants a new book. - Does he want 7 anything else 8? Yes, he wants a new coat and a pair of boots.

1) chercher. 2) le cuisinier. 3) un poulet. 4) to go for = aller chercher. 5) tous les deux jours. — 6) Écossais. 7) See p. 138, 3. — 8) autre chose.

No, he intends [te] depart. — When do you intend to sell your house? I intend to sell it to-day. — Whose' cloak is this? It is mine. — Whose hats are these? They belong (nont) to the Englishmen. — Which book do you read? I read a novel<sup>2</sup> by Sir Walter Scott. — Do you know that man? I do not know him. — Have you seen him already? I have seen him somewhere. — Where have you been? I have been at (the) church. — Where has your husband<sup>3</sup> been? He has also been at church. — Has your sister ever been in France? She has never been there. — Does she intend to go there? She intends to go there next<sup>4</sup> year. — Were you (Have you been) at the ball last night<sup>5</sup>? I was not (have not been) there. Is there a ball this evening? There is none (en.. pas). When were you (have you been) at the theatre? I was (have been) there yesterday.

1) See p. 111, 2. — 2) un roman. 3) mari m. 4) l'année prochaine. 5) hier au soir.

۶.

Can you (savez-vous) swim as well as a sailor<sup>1</sup>? I cannot swim so well as a sailor. - Can this boy swim better than I? He can swim better than you. - At what o'clock did Mr. Green breakfast? He breakfasted at nine o'clock. -Did he dine before he left (avant de partir)? No, Sir, he left before dinner. - Have you told it me? I told it you the day before yesterday. - Which words have you written? I have written these three words. - Which books have you read? I have read the book (which) you have lent me. -Are your shoes mended<sup>2</sup>? They are not yet mended. — Must I send them to the shoemaker's? Yes, send them there (y) directly. — Are your handkerchiefs<sup>3</sup> and your stockings washed? Neither the one<sup>4</sup> nor the other(s) are washed. --Why do you not eat? I do not eat because I am not hungry<sup>5</sup>? Why are you not hungry? Because I have eaten some bread and ham (du jambon). - Are you thirsty 6? I am not thirsty, I have drunk (bu) some beer.

1) un matelot.
 2) raccommodés.
 3) mouchoir m.
 4) les uns.
 5) to be hungry = avoir faim.
 6) to be thirsty = avoir soif.

9.

Where is your dear mother? She is gone ont. — Where has William bought this beautiful bird? I do not know where he has bought it. — Were you not looking for ' my brother in the garden? No, I was looking for him in the house. — Why did you not look (have you not looked) for your copybook? I (have) looked for it, but I could not find it. — Is the brown<sup>2</sup> sugar sweeter than the white? No, on the contrary, I think (that) the white is sweeter. ..... Do you not advance the beauty 3 of this plant? O yes, [I do]; it is indeed beautiful. .... Why have you not shown † your letter to Henry? I should have shown it to him, if he had been at home. .... Why have you not lent your book to Edward? Because I have promised it to another boy.

1) to look for = chercher. 2) brun. 3) la beauté. 4) montré.

### 10.

Have you a good servant? I have two good servants. Is John as good as mine? I think he is better than yours. Are you satisfied with him? Quite satisfied. — Do you like fish <sup>1</sup>? I like fowl<sup>2</sup> better. — Does your wife like mutton<sup>3</sup>? She likes roast (rôn) muttor and veal. — Do the scholars like to (à) learn by heart (par cœur)? They do not like learning by heart, they like better writing<sup>4</sup>. — To whom do you address your letters? I address them to a friend. — Do you admire this work? I [do] admire it. — How do you annuse the ladies? I play on the (du) piano. — Have you helped<sup>5</sup> your sister? I could not help her. — Have you asked<sup>6</sup> for some wine? No, I have asked [for] beer. — Have you bought this map<sup>7</sup>? I have borrowed<sup>6</sup> it. — Have you satisfied your relations<sup>6</sup>? They ask nothing. — Do you guess <sup>10</sup> what I think? I cannot guess it. — Have you sold your field? I do not intend to sell it.

Use the article: le poissag. 2) le poulet. 3) le mouton. —
 4) écrire (Inf. without à). 5) aidé. 6) to ask for == demander. —
 7) carte géographique t. 8) empruntée. 9) parents. 10) deviner.

### **11.**

Have you lost anything? I have lost nothing. — Has the gardener planted some trees? He has planted many trees. — Has the soldier cleaned ! his gun (*fusil* m.)? He is just cleaning it. — Why has the tailor not cleaned the coat? Because I have not sent it to him. — Has the cook <sup>2</sup> roasted the hare? She will roast it to-morrow. — Has the maid had <sup>3</sup> her gloves washed <sup>3</sup>? She has had them washed. — Who has had <sup>4</sup> these boots mended <sup>4</sup>? The servant took them (*les a portées*) to the shoemaker. — Why does she open the window? She likes fresh air <sup>5</sup>. — Why does she shut the door? She would not have a draught <sup>6</sup>. — Has the man risen early? He has risen late, because he is ill. — Will he not put out<sup>7</sup> the fire? No, he wants <sup>8</sup> it still. — What does he boil? The boils pointoes and carrots<sup>9</sup>: — Did you empty <sup>10</sup> the bottles? All the bottles are emptied. — Are they clean? They are very clean; you may put <sup>13</sup> in them (y) what you like (ce one core could as).

Did you receive this fine watch from your father? No, I received it from my grand-father. - Do you live at Paris now? Yes, Sir, since (depuis) some weeks. - Are you going to Calais? No, I shall remain here, I have some business (des affaires). - Have you seen the count's 1 new pictures? Yes, I have seen them; they are very valuable<sup>2</sup>. - Has the shoemaker already brought my shoes? Not yet, he will bring them this evening. - Have you chosen<sup>3</sup> these shoes or those? I have chosen these, they are finer and more comfortable<sup>4</sup> than those. — Why do you throw this paper out of (par) the window? It is good for nothing<sup>5</sup>. — Where do you buy your books? I buy them at the bookseller's in William - Street<sup>6</sup>. — Do you hope to see your friend once more (encore une fois)? I hope to see him many more times (encore souvent). 1.12.1

1) comte m. 2) précieux. 3) shaisi. 4) commode. 5) il ne vaut rien. 6) rue Guillaume.

18.

Is the boy dressed? He is dressed. — Did he dress himself? Yes, he dressed himself. — Were his shoes cleaned? The servant (has) cleaned them. — Did he wash his hands? He washed his face<sup>1</sup> and his hands. — When did the ship set sail<sup>2</sup>? The ship set sail the day before yesterday; — Do they travel by (par) land or by sea? They travel by land. — [For] whom do you wait? I wait [for] my-coachman<sup>3</sup>. — Have you spoken about the matter <sup>4</sup>? We had no time to speak about it (en). — Of whom have you learned reading <sup>5</sup>? I learned it of my elder <sup>6</sup> brother. — Do you know your lesson? I think (that) I know it; I have taken paina<sup>7</sup>. — Does the pupil read well? He reads pretty (asses) well: — How many pages<sup>6</sup> does he write every day? He writes only one page, and that is enough.

1. 1) visage m. 2) to set sail = mettre à la voile. 3) le cocher. 1) de l'affaire : f. 5) à bie. 6) atné. 7) de la peine. 8) page f.

**14.** Which is the best place? The first place is the best. At what hour do we dine? We dine at one o'clock. --What kind of meat is that? This is mutton. - How much do you charge 1 for (the) dinner? One shilling<sup>2</sup>. — Is dinner ready ?? It is not yet ready; but it will be ready in a quarter \* of an hour. --- Where is my dog? It is before the door. --- To whom does that house belong? It belongs to Mr. Lion, --- Is it true that you have been robbed (vold)? No, that is not true. - Did 5 you understand me? Yes, Sir, [I did]. - Is the carriage come? The carriage is not yet come, but the horses are come. - How do you call that country? It is Bavaria<sup>6</sup>. -- Will you come with mc? I have no time. - Have you been at the post-office ?? I shall go there directly. - Are there any letters for me? Not to-day. What do you think of this letter? I cannot understand it. - Has the boy cleaned the cage of his birds? He cleans it every morning.

1) demander. 2) un sheling. 3) prêt. 4) un quart d'heure. 5) see the foot-note p. 204. - 6) la Bavière. 7) à la poste.

#### 15.

Did you tell him to come? Did you get up early? I got up very late --- Has this boy no handkerchief 1? He has lost it. -- What is the price (le prix) of that article? This article is very cheap<sup>2</sup>. — Have you no better cloth? I have some better, but it is dearer. - How is the weather to-day? It is very fine. - Shall we have fine weather to-morrow? I think it will rain. - Is the (dinner) served? The servant is serving it. - Shall I give you some soup? Yes, Madam, if you please<sup>3</sup>. — Do you like (the) fish? I like it very much. - Will you have some potatoes? I will take some. — Do you breakfast before you take 4 a walk? No, I take a walk before breakfast. — Have you been at the market? I have been there. - Has your aunt been in (à) the country? She was not yet there, but she will go soon. — Has she been anywhere else (ailleurs)? She has been with (chez) her cousin (9.) at N.

1) mouchoir. 2) à très bon marché. 3) s'il vous plait. 4) faire.

Who has burnt my letters? The servant has burnt them. Has Charles torn his coat himself? No, his brother has torn

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar.

it. — Has the boy broken a' chair? He has broken a table and a chair. — Is your neighbour as poor as he says'? He is not so poor. — Does your tailor make good coats'? His coats are all well made. — Have you consulted <sup>2</sup> your friends? They were not at home, when I called <sup>3</sup> upon them. — Have you paid [for] the wine? I have paid for the dinner but not for the wine. — Did<sup>4</sup> the servant light<sup>4</sup> the professor? He had no candle<sup>6</sup>. — Had they warmed the bed? They had warmed it. — Where were? you born? I was<sup>8</sup> born in Italy. In which of these streets does he live? He lives in Frederick-Street. — How will you spend<sup>9</sup> this evening? I hardly know myself. — Will you go to the play <sup>10</sup> with me? I thank you; I shall be ready at seven o'clock.

#### 17.

١

Is tea' ready? It will be ready in a moment. — When may (can) I send you this letter? When[ever] you please<sup>2</sup>. Where must I send it [to]? I shall give you my direction (adresse). — When will you set out for Paris? The day after to-morrow. — Might I trouble<sup>3</sup> you with (d) a letter? I shall take it with great pleasure. — Will you sup<sup>4</sup> with me? I thank you, I am engaged; it is impossible for me. — When shall I see you again? I will call upon you<sup>5</sup> this evening after supper. — Will you play at (aux) cards? I seldom<sup>6</sup> play at cards. — Do you like to play at whist (au whist)? Yes, I like it. — How high<sup>7</sup> do you play? As you please<sup>2</sup>. — How many points (points) have you? I have only (ns — que) ten points. — Were many spectators there? There were a great many<sup>6</sup>. — Will you soon go into (d) the country? I intend setting out (partir) in a week.

1) Use the article: le thé. 2) vous voudrez. 3) charger. — 4) souper. 5) j'irai vous voir. 6) rarement, put the adverb after the verb. 7) à combien. 8) use the subst. nombre.

### 18.

Have the pupils done their exercise? They are doing it still. — Which verb have they learned? They have learned an irregular verb. — Have they written it? They must not write it. — Will you help me work '? I am sorry, I have no time<sup>‡</sup>. — Will you have the kindness to pass that plate to me? With great pleasurder — When shall we go [to] bathe ? IThis evening, if you like house coules, mr. How is your grand-mother? She is not quite well, she bas caught? a\_cold in \_\_\_\_\_ Does Mr. Gray look well<sup>5</sup> to - day? Herlooks very well; he is in very good health. --- Why did he send for the physician? He (has) sent for him, because his daughter is ill. ----- Of (de) what illness did your neighbour die (Rerfect)? He died of apoplexy (-ie). - Why does this little girl shed tears? What has happened to her? She cries because her mother died yesterday. - Why, do, you laugh at (de) this man? I do not laugh at him, I laugh at his dress !--- When shall we set off? In a few days, ---Will you take a walk in the garden? If you will go with me. — How long were you ill? I was ill for 7, a fortnight. 2) put the def. article. 8) se porte. 4) to 1) Inf. with à. catch cold = se refroidir, rafl. verb. 5) to look well = avoir bonne mine. 6) to send for = envoyer chercher (acc.). 7) pendant quinze jours. . I £

19.

Have you' known 2 this professor long? I have known? you ask your nephew (Dat.) whether he is satisfied with the cloth (which) I have sent him? When I see him, I will ask him. - May I ask you [for] a little water to (paur) wash my hands? You will have it directly. - Have they (on) served up the soup? It was served up some minutes, ago. -Do the windows look (donnent sur) on the street 2, No, they look on the yard. - Which is the shortest way to the library ??,... Go down this street, and when you come to the bottom (a la fin), turn to the right', and you will see it in the great square , J. Did you forget your books, when you went to school? ... We never forget anything How many times have you been at Paris? Only three times. - How many birds has the hunter shot (mes)? He has killed about? thirty. - Does this merchant sell on (a) credit?, He does not sell on credit. — Have you seen the fine gun <sup>8</sup> I have bought? I should like to see it. - Whom have you seen at the (au) ball? A great many fine ladies 9 and young gentlemen.

Y a-t-il longtemps que ... 2) use the present tense. —
 servi. 4) la bibliothèque. 5) à droite. 6) la place. 7) environ.
 fusil m. 9) demoiselles.

14\*

### 20,

'Ard you acquainted with' the French captain" M.? Yes, Sir, I made his acquaintance last year at Baden. — Has the servant cleaned my spurs'? He is still cleaning them. — Has the butcher" bought fat oxen? He has bought fat oxen and cows, but neither calves, nor sheep. — What is his manner" of life? He leads (mène) a very retired life. — What services does he render (to) his fellow-citizens"? None, that (à ce que) I know [of]. — Is he resolved, to sell his estate?? He will sell it, if he finds a purchaser". — How much does he ask for it? He asks 5000 pounds. — How long" have you been (Pres.) in Germany? I have been here these three months <sup>10</sup>.

1) Connaissez-vous? 2) capitaine. 3) Eperon m. 4) le boucher. 5) manière. 6) concitoyen. 7) campagne. 8) acheteur. 9): combien 3 a t = il que? 10) il y a trois mois que ...

### 81.

How many English miles<sup>4</sup> make one German mile? Five English miles make one German mile. — How much do you pay, a month for your lodgings<sup>2</sup>? I pay two hundred franks a month. — How many rooms have you? I have five rooms, *riz<sup>3</sup>*: a parlour (*un valon*), a dining-room, and three bedrooms. — What courtains<sup>4</sup> have you? I have white and red courtains. — Have you your own furnitúre<sup>6</sup>? No, I have hired<sup>6</sup> it. — How much do you pay for it (*in*). Two hundred and twenty franks for six months. — How far is it<sup>7</sup> from Heidelberg to Frankfort? It is ten German miles oil, fifty English miles. — Were your parents in Switzerland last year<sup>6</sup>? They were not there last year, but they intend going there this year. — Has the prince bought the beautiful carriage<sup>6</sup> of which I spoke to you? I am not sure if he has bought it already; but he said he would buy ft.

1) mille m. 2) appartement. 3) sapoir. 4) rideau m. — 5) meubles pl.m. 6) loues. 7) combien y a-t-il. 5) l'année dernière. 9) la voiture. 5760 la voiture.

ار کار کار کار کار در در این کار در بیان ایر بر باری ایران ایران کار کار در در ایران ایران کار در ایران کار کار در در کار در ایران کار در ایران کار در ایران کار کار در در کار مراجع میران کار در کار کار کار کار

# SECOND PART.

.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II.

le Ha - en ha - en ha - en

7. 15

; 1 1

,

•

15

١

۱

•

## ON ORTHOGRAPHY.

**、** ··

1

· · · · · ·

See warden

٠,

A construction of the second sec

the second second second

Having given at the beginning of the First Part the rules on *Pronunciation*, we now proceed to give the necessary rules on *Orthography*; and though most of them have already been practised in the First Part, they may follow here in a systematical order and serve as a repetition.

§. 1. Use of the signs of punctuation.

1) The cedills (la cédille) is placed under the letter c = c before a, o, u, to give it the sound of a sharp s or ss, as in façade, arçon, reçu, français, nous plaçons etc.

2) The diaeresis (le tréma) is placed:

<sup>1</sup>) over the vowels *e*, *i*, *u*, whenever they form a distinct syllable, as: hair, naïf, Moïse, Antinoüs, Esail.

<sup>2</sup>) at the end of the feminine of some adjectives over the mute e which follows the syllable gu, to make the u sounded, as: contiguë, aiguë etc.

3) The apostrophe marks the elision of a vowel before a word beginning with a vowel or h mute, as in *l'enfant*, for *le enfant*; *l'âme*, for *la âme*; *l'habit*, for *le habit* etc.; a and e are the only two vowels which are thus cut off; *i* is only suppressed in the word si before *il* and *ils* (s'il, s'ils); o and u are never cut off.

The *elision* of *e* takes place further:

<sup>1</sup>) in many monosyllables, such as: je, ne, de, me, que, te, se, le, ce (the latter before the verb être), as:

15\*

j'ai, je n'ai pas, m'as-tu vu? c'est; and in conjunctions compounded with que, as: quoiqu'il soit, puisqu'elle sait.

4) The hyphen (le tiret or trait d'union) serves to join two words as it were in one. It is used:

) in connecting the separate parts of compound substantives and adverbs, as in: chou-fleur, cauliflower; porte-feuille, portfolio; are-en-ciel, rainbow; peut-être, perhaps; sur-le-champ, immediately, etc.

2) between a personal pronoun and même, as: moimême, nous-mêmes, lui-mêms etc.

) between the particles *ci* ar *D*, and the word which precedes them, as: *celui-ci*, *cenx-là*, *ce have-ci*, *ces*, *ce*, *plumes-là*, *là-bas*, *ci-dessus*,

\*) The hyphen is further used whenever the personal pronoun takes its place after the verb to which it belongs; this is always the case in interrogations and in the imperative mood, as: avez-vous? es-tu? at-je? sait-il? que dit-on? me cherche-t-il?\*); dis-moi, donnez-lui-en, rendez-la-moi.

Note. The hyphen between tres (very) and the following adjectivel, such as tress grand etc., is getting out of used though it is still found in many French anthors.

\*). When a verb interrogatively used ends with a vowel, we ethert a't with two hyphens between it and the pronoun il, elle or. or i was entried the month of the second states and the second states a

Ġ1

serve to indicate a quetation (2014) (les guillements) serve to indicate a quetation. (2014) (les 'guillements) of which the names and characters' are as follows:

(.) la virgule, the commu;

(;) le point et virgale, the semicolon;

(:) les deux points, the colon;

(.) le point, the full stop (period);

(?) le point interrogatif, note of interrogation;

(!) le point exclamatif, note of exclamation.

, The use of these marks in French is nearly the same as that in English.

8, 2. On the use of the accents.

(See p. 4.)

I. The acute accent (laccent aigu) is used:

1) Over the first  $\ell$ , when there are two joined at the end of a noun, as in: *l'année*, the year; *l'armée*, the army; *l'a pensée*, the thought.

2) Over the é final in words, which end in té in French, and by in English, as: la liberté, the liberty; ba charité, charité; l'humanité, humanity.

3) Over é followed by another vowel, which does not belong to the same syllable, as in the words: réalité, réunion, oréaseur, préoccupé esc.

4) Over the é final in the participles past of all verbs of the first conjugation, as: donné, parlé, aimé, cherché; prié, essayé etc.

II. The grave accent (Pacent grave) is used:

1) Over the open è, followed by the final s, in très, very; près, near, and des, from (preposition, not article) and in all dissyllables ending in es, when the e before s impronounced as "auprès, exprés, succes; progrès.

2) Over the wowel e when it is followed by a mitte syllable, as: pè-re, mère, fidè-le, seorète, je mène etc.

Except the nouns in ege, which are spelled dge not dge, as: piége, collége, manége etc. (...,3) Over the following four words, to distinguish them from four others which have exactly, the same sound, viz. to distinguish à, to (preposition), from the lverb a, has; là, there (adverb), from the article la, the; ou, where (adverb), from the conjunction ou, or; dès, from (prep.), from the article gen. pl. des; of the.

III. The circumflex (l'accent eirconflexe) is used:

1) Over long syllables, in which a letter; especially s, has been dropped; such are ame,\*) tempête, pâte, tête, impôt, même, le nôtre, le pâtre, l'apôtre, (the apostle).

2) Over *i* when followed by the termination -tre, especially in infinitives, as: une épître, an opistle; croître, to grow; paraître, to appear; naître, to be born, etc.

3) Over the penultimate vowel of all verbs, in the first and second persons plural of the preterite indicative, as: nous donnâmes, vous donnâtes, nous finîmes, vous finîtes, nous reçûmes, vous reçûtes.

4) Over the last vowel in the third person singular of the imperfect subjunctive, as: qu'il donnât, qu'il finît, qu'il attendît, qu'il reçût.

5) Over the u in some monosyllabic participles, to distinguish them from similar words, as in: du, due, part of *devoir*, from the article genitive du; cru, grown, part, of croître, from cru, part of croire, to believe, as well as from the adjective cru, raw; tu, part of se toire, to be silent, from the pronoun tu, thou.

S. 3. Of the proper spelling of some French words. 1) Nasal sounds followed by 6 or 28 must end in m.

not in n, as: jambon (not janbon), chambre, camper, emballer, impossible stc.

١

\*) From the Latin anima, tempestas etc.

2). Naval sounds followed by  $d_{j,i}, i_{j,i}, g$  must and in **B**, never in m, as: bands (not bands), encrier, incapable, manger etc.

3) In most words derived from the Latin, the consonants are doubled, when they are double in that language, as: opprimer, apprendre, offrir.

4) The consonants l, m, n, p, s, t are very often doubled; b, d, g seldom; h, j, k, q, v and x are never double; as: aller, homme, canne, nappe, laisser, patte, assistet; laboureur, abbé, coudre, addition, adresser (not addresser), bagage (not baggage).

§. 4. Division of syllables.

1) At the end of a line, when there is no room to write the whole word, this word must be divided by means of a hyphen, but so that the syllables are divided, but, not the letters of the same syllable. And here the general rule is, that in French, in the middle of a word, the conconant begins the syllable, but the vowel does not. If, for instance, the word romain is to be divided, you cannot end one line with rom- and begin the other with ain, but you must divide ro-main. Ex.: cé-lé-ri-té, re-mè-de, i-nu-ti-le.

2) A vowel can only commence a syllable, when it is preceded by another vowel, as: lou-er, pri-é, ac-ti-on.

3) When the consonant is double, or when there are two different ones, the two consonants are considered as belonging to two different syllables, as: al-ler, rapport, es-poir, gar-der, ins-truire (not in-struire).

4) However the following combinations of consonants always belong to the same syllable, and connot be separated: bl, br; cl, or; dr; fl, fr; gl, gr; pl, pr; tr, ch, ph, th, gn. Ex.: sa-ble, so-bre, a-cre, va-che, stro-phe, vi-gne, ap-pren-dre, man-dre.

"S: 5. Orthography of words which are very alimin ... similar in both languages. 1) Most words ending in -al, -ble, -ace, -ance, -ence, -ice, -acle, -age, -ege, -ge, -ile, -ine, -ion, -ant, -ent, are spelled alike in both languages, only, when French, the e at the beginning or in the middle of a word often takes an accent. Ex.: -ace: face, force, surface, province. · -acle: oracle, miracle, spectacle, obstacle. -age: page, rage, image, cage, bandage. animal, moral, principal, cardinal. -al: -ance: lance, complaisance, chance, ignorance. -ant: éléphant, constant, arrogant, ignorant, élégant. -ble: fable, bible, noble, double. -ege: collége, privilége, siége, sacrilége. -ence: diligence, patience, présence, prudence. -ent: compliment, fréquent, content, elément, violent, -ge: charge, orange, déluge, refuge. 123 · -ice: avarice, édifice, justice, précipice. 11 -ile: docite, fragile, débile. -ine: mine, machine, marine, famine, héroine. nation, action, religion, légion, opinion. · -ion : -ude: prélude, habitude, servitude. 2) Many other words require only the change of termination, in the following manner: "-ary into aire, as: military, militaire. oire, as: glory, gloire. -ory . -cy ce, as: constancy, constance. . 77 ., té, as: liberty, liberté. -ty " eux, ast vigo(u)rous, vigoureux. · -- '0415' " eur, as: favour, faveur. -our " if, as: active, actif. • .f -ive " rie, as: fury, furie. 11. Or a -TV " eur, as: doctor, docteur. -or ۲,

230

3) Many English verbs ending in ise, use, use become French by adding an r to the final, as: to baptise, to realise, - baptiser, réaliser. -ise : to excuse, to abuse, — excuser, abuser. -1186 : -ute:\*) to dispute, to refute, - disputer, refuter. 4) Most English verbs ending in ate, ish and fy become French by changing the final, as follows: -ate into er: to abrogate, moderate, - abroger, modérer. -ish , ir: to abolish, accomplish, - abolir, accomplir. " fier: to rectify, justify, — rectifier, justifier. -fv §. 6. Orthography of homonymous words. The following words are differently spelled, though pronounced nearly in the same manner: L'air, m. the air. , le bond, the leap. Faire, f. the thrashing-floor. bon, good. **!**. Fère, f. the aera, epoch. w. Ve bois, the wood. . ... il boit, he drinks. Cancre, f. the anchor. *l'encre*, f. the ink, · le camp, the camp.  $\cdots$  guand, when. *Calène*, f. the awl. Chaleine, f. the breath. 'la chaîne, the chain. le chêne, the oak. lamande, f. the almond. `le champ, the field. lamende, f. the fine. "le chant, the song. lantre, m. the cavern. la chair, the flesh. entre, between. 1 *l'autel*, m. the altar. 'cher, dear. *Chôtel*, m. the hotel. la chère, the repast. 9-11 le bal, 2 le clerc, the clerk. the ball. 1. 1 la balle, ) clair, clear. 1,1 le ban, the ban, la cour, the court, yard. . 1 , a\ le banc, the bench. le cours, the course. le price te g a t \*) The verbs ending in -bute and -tute are excepted from this

rule and become French by changing -bute into -buer and -tute into -tuer, as: to contribute, contribuer; substitute, substitute. le comte, the count. le compte, the account, le conte, the tale, story. le cuir, the leather. cuire, to boil, cook. le corps, the body. be cor, the horn. le coin, the corner. le coing, the quince. la date, the date (fruit). la datte, the date (time). la dent, the tooth. dans, in, into. le daigt, the finger. il doit, he must. le don, the gift. donc, then. dont, whose. la foi, the faith, belief. la fois, the time. le foie, the liver. la goutte, the drop. il goûte, he tastes. le last, the milk. laid, ugly. le mois, the month. moi, 1. le mont, the mount. mon, my. le poil, the hair. le poêle, the stove. la poéle, the pan. le poids, the weight. le pois, the pea. la poix, pitch.

. .

la plaine, the plain. plaine, f. full. · · 11 penser o to think .... panser, to dress, clean. le sang, the blood. le sens, the sense. cont, a hundred. sans, without. le sout the leap. le sot, the fool. le seau, the bucket, pail. le sceau, the seal. saint, saint. . 7 le sein, the bosom. sain, s, healthy, sound. cinq, five. ceint, girt. la scène, the scene. la Seine, the river Seine. la cène, the Lord's Supper. saine, f. sound, healthy. le sel, the salt la selle, the saddle, la tâche, the task. la tache, the spot. la tante, the aunt. la tente, the tent. la veine, the vein. vaine, f. vain. le ver, the worm. le verre, the glass. *le vers*, the verse. vers, towards. vert, e, green. ٠.ft la voix, the voice. la voie, the way. il voit, he sees.

### - 220 --

## FIRST LESSON.

On the genders of substantives.

I. Rules on the gender of simple nouns. S. 1. Masculine by their signification are:

1) The names of all masculine beings, as: Henri, Henry; *l'empereur*, the emperor; *le maître*, the master; *le Français*, the Frenchman; *le taureau*, the bull, etc.

2) The names of countries, places and rivers not ending in e mute, as: le Portugal, le Wurtemberg, le beau Paris, le Rhin.

3) The names of metals, trees, seasons, months and days, as: *le fer*, iron; *le chêne*, the oak; *le printemps*, spring; *le joli Mai*, (the) fine May; *(le) lundi*, Monday, on Mondays, etc.

4) All words that are made substantives by prefixing the article. as: le vert, the green (colour); le bien, the good; le boire et le manger, drinking and eating; le oui et le pon, the yes and no.

S. 2. Masculine by their terminations are:

1) All nouns ending with the liquid -l, not -ile,\*) as: is détail, the detail; le soleid, the sun; le recueil, the collection; l'aril, the eye; le fusil, the gun, etc.

2) Nouns ending with a nasal sound; \*\*) as: le voloan, the volcano; le vent, the wind; 'le moment, the moment; le daim, the buck; le sein, the bosom; le vin, the wine; le fond, the bottom.

Except: la main, the hand; la faim, hunger; la dent, the tooth; la legon, the lesson, and all nouns ending in -sion and -sion, see below § 4, 8), p. 225.

3) Nouns ending
ac: le lac, the lake; le sac, et: le mulet, the mule.
the bag. is diri , eu & in 194 s ye sate, the wish.
al: le cheval, the horse. is: le tapis, <sup>4</sup> ) the carpet.
age: le courage, 1) courage, ieme: le paganisme paganism.
ard: le renard, the fox. it: le profit, 5) the gain, profit.
ard: le renard, the fox. it: le profit, 5) the gain, profit. as: le repas, the meal. it is out it is miroir, the mirror: le
au: la tableau, the picture. tippir, the drawer. [] []
el: le sel, salt. or : le présor, the treasure
ege: le siège, the seat. os: le dos, the back. ème & ême: le poème, <sup>2</sup> ) the ot: le mot, <sup>6</sup> ) the word. <sup>(1)</sup>
ème & ême: le poème, <sup>2</sup> ) the ot: le mot, <sup>6</sup> ) the word.
poena
er & ier: le rocher, 3) the rock; our & ours: le sejour sithe stans
le pommier, the apple-tree. l'amour, love; le secours,
ès: le progrès, the progress. the help.
S. 3. Feminine by signification are:
1) All names of female persons and animals, as:
Marie, Mary; la reine, the queen; la fille, the girl; la
jument, the mare, etc.
2) The names of fruits, flowers and herbs; as: la
poire, the pear; la pomme, the apple; la rose, the vose;
poire, the pear; la pomme, the apple; la rose, the 4056, Cherbe, f. the grass.
Except: le marron, the chestnut; le citron; the lemon;
le raisin, the grape; un abricot, an abricot; un coillet, a pink;
le lis, the lily, and a few more, on account of their mas-
le raisin, the grape; un abricot, an abricot; un geillet, a pink; le lis, the lily, and a few more, on account of their mas- culine termination.
3) The names of countries, places and rivers ending
in e mute, as: la France, là Prusse, l'ancienne Rome,
la Loire, la Seine, etc. Ward and the start of the start
Except: le Hanoure, Ve Mersigue, le Danube: (1995) - 191
1) Except?' la cage; 'the bage; Fimage, f. the intege, picture;
la page, the page; la plage, the strand; [A: mage;   rage; ] la nege,
swimming. 2) Except: la créme, "cream. ball off annu al autority and an annu and an annu an an annu an an an an an an an
3) Except: la mer, the sea the second with more in adout
4) Except: la souris, the unouse; la breble, //a sheeps la vie
(pronounce visse), the screw.
5) Except: la nuit, the night. 6) Except: la dot (pronounce dotte), the dewryd 4
7) Except. Is some the county is the total the total.

7) Except: la cour, the court; la tour, the tower, when "

real 8, 4. Feminine by their terminations are: ..... 1) All nouns ending with emute preceded by another vowel, as: la vie, life; la vue, the sight; l'épée, the sword. 11 : Except : " le' fois uthe liver un invendie . a fire. "" 19 The nouns ending in the liquid sound fille, as: la fille, the daughter; la feuille, the leaf (see 6). 11.11

3) Those ending in:

eur: la douleur,<sup>3</sup>) the pain; la ace: la glace,<sup>1</sup>) the ice. ade: la salade, the salad. grandeur, greatness. aine & eine!. "la plaine, the vore: la lumière,") the light. : agiain : la peine, the trouble ... inet la famine, the famine. ance: la constance, (the) con- ion: l'action, the action. ote: la pelote, the ball. stancy. ence & ense: l'innocence,<sup>2</sup>) son: la maison, the house; la innocence : la défense, dechanson, the song; la moisson, " the harvest. fence. ande, ante & ente: la viande, "té: la bonté,") the kindness. iment; is tante; the aunt; ude: la gratitude, gratitude. ête: la tête, the head. ure: la piqure,<sup>6</sup>) the sting.

4) These four words ending in *i* are feminine: la foi, faith; la loi, law; la fourmi, the ant; la merci, mercy. 5) Most nouris ending in oire (not oir) are feminine, as: la gloire, glory; l'histoire, f. history; la victoire, victory: la machoire, the jaw.  $W_{1}$  ( ) and (

of the same kind before e mute: (-asse, atte, elle, esse, ette, amme, emme, omme, white, olle, otte, outte, arre, : 111-1-1-1 W. Landa G

1) Except: l'espace, m. the space.

'' '2) Except: 'le silence, silence.

(1118) Except: le bonheur, happiness ; le malheur, misfortune; l'honneur, the honour; le deshannour, disgrace; le cour, the heart, and all masculine names and appellations, as: le tailleur, the tailor; le professeur, the professor, etc. 4) Except: le cimetière, the church yard

1111

5) Except :' le côte, the side; le pate, the pie; 'te traite; the treaty; Pete, m. the summer; le comté, the county. . .... 6) Except: 'ls murnure, murnur; le parjure, perjury.

erre, ourse etc.). Ex.: la chassé, hunting; la natte, a mat; la chapellé, the chapel; la charrette, the cart; la noisette, the bazelnut; la femme, the woman; la gomme, Indian rubber; la somme, the sum; la lionne, the lionest; la carotte, the carrot; la goutte, the drop; la barre, the bar; la terre, the earth; la pierre, the stone, etc.

Exceptions: l'homme, m. man; le somme, the nap, sleep; le verre, the glass; le tonnerre, the thunder.

II. Gender of compound substantives.

This depends upon the manner of their composition:

1) When the first component is a noun, it determines the gender of the whole, as:

Un cerf-volant, the stag-beetle. Le chou-fleur, the cauliflower.

Un arc-en-ciel, a rainbow.

2) When they consist of a preposition and a noun, the gender of the noun remains for the whole, as:

 $Le\ contre-coup$ , the counter-buff.

L'avant-bras, m. the forearm.

L'avant-main droite, the right fore-hand.

3) Those nouns compounded with a verb and noun, are always of the masculine gender, as:

Le porte-manteau, the portmanteau.

Le tire-bouchon, the corkscrew.

Le porte-feuille, the portfolio (though feuille is feminine).

### Thème. l.

Indicate the gender of the following nouns, by placing an article, first the definite or also the indefinite, before them:

The horse, — cheval. The pear, — poire. The metal, — métal. A winter, — hiver. Italy, — Italis. The cherry, — cerisie. The cherry-tree, — cerisier. The house, — maison. The vapour, — vapeur. The nut, — noix. A leaf, — feuille. The truth, — vérité. The van-guard, — avant-garde. The cart, — charette. The work, — travail. The shell, — coquille. The hat, — chapeau. The shoe, — soulier. The honey, — miel. The carpenter, — charpentier. The nurse, — sourrice.

ھر

The sun, — solsil. The earth, — torre. A year, — onnée. The life, — vie. The feast, — fête. The treaty, — traité. A minfortune, — malheur. The master-key, — passe-partout. The spit, — tourne-broche. Christianity, — christianisme.

### III. Double gender of some nouns.

The following nouns have a double gender: §. 1. L'aide, m. the assistant. 'laids, f the help, support. *faigle*, m. the eagle. *l'aigle*, f. the standard. *laune*, m. the alder tree. *l'aune*, f. the ell, yard. un couple, a couple, husband une couple, a brace, two of a and wife. sort. ma enseigne, an ensign. une enseigne , a sign. la forêt, the forest, wood. le forêt, the gimlet. le garde, the keeper. la garde, the guard, watch. le guide, the guide. la guide, the rein in driving. le livre, the book. la livre, the pound. le manche, the handle of a tool. la manche, the sleeve. la mémoire, the memory. le mémoire, the memorandum. le mort, a desd man. la mort, death. le mousse, the cabin-boy. la mousse, the moss. Forgue, m. sing. the organ. les orgues, pl. organ, is feminine. le page, the page of a prince. la page, the page. la paillasse, a straw-bed. un paillasse, a merry andrew. Pâques, pl. m. Easter. la pâque, the Passover. le poéle, the stove. la poéle, the frying-pan. la poste, the post-office. le poste, the post, military post. un somme, a nap, slumber. la somme, the sum. le tour, the trick, turn. la tour, the tower. le trompette, the trumpeter. la trompette, the trumpet. un voile, a veil. une voile, a sail.

§. 2. There are in French some nouns which have no particular form for the feminine and remain always masculine, even when applied to a woman. Such are:

Un autour, ) m. & f. an author. Un écripein, ) Un oratsur, m. & f. an orator. Un peintre, m. & f. a painter. Un soulpteur, m. & f. a sculptor. Un témoin, m. & f. a witness. Note. Sometimes the word femme may precede, as: Une femme quieur, les femmes poètes.

§. 3. On the contrary, there are a few feminine nouns which apply also to male individuals:

La caution, the bail. la basse, the base.

la pratique, the customer. la sentinelle, the sentry.

IV. Formation of the female appellations.

Many appellations of *male* individuals allow also a female appellation to be formed from them, by changing the termination.

§. 1. Male appellations which are originally *adjec*tives, form their feminine according to the rules on the adjectives (see Part I, p. 65 and 66), as:

Masculine.	Feminine.
Le Français, the Frenchman.	la Française, the Frenchwoman.
un Russe, a Russian.	une Russe, a Russian lady.
un juif, a Jew.	une juive, a Jewess.
Fépoux, the hysband.	l'épouse, the wife.
<b>–</b> <i>i</i>	la veuve, the widow.
le Grec, the Greek.	la Greeque, the Greekwoman.
§. 2. Those ending in	one of the nasal sounds an,
on, ien (not in), and those	in $t$ double their $n$ before

the feminine e, as:

Le paysan, the peasant. le lion, the lion. le chrétien, the christian. le baron, the baron. le chien, the dog. S. 3. Nouns ending in e mute or é. form their feminine in esse, as:

Le comte, the count. le nègre, the negro. le maître, the master. le prince, the prince. l'âne, the ass. l'abbé, the abbot.

la contesse, the countess. la négresse, the magress. la maîtresse, the mistress. la princesse, the princess. Lânesse, the she-ass. Labbesse, the abbess.

§. 4. Those in -eur change, this termination into -euse, those in -teur into -trice, as:

Le danseur, the dancer.	la danseuse, the dancer f
le chasseur; the hunter.	la chasseuse, the huntress.
l'acteur, the actor.	Factrice, the actress.
le bienfaiteur, the benefactor.	la bienfaitrice, the benefactress.
le tuteur, the guardian.	la tutrice, the tutoress.

The following nouns form their feminine in §. 5. 1.1 an irregular way: .1. la déesse, the Goddess. Le dieu, the God. le duc, the duke. la duchesse, the duchess. l'impératrice, the empress. *Cempereur*, the emperor.

la reine, the queen. le roi, the king. *l'héroïne*, the heroine. le héros, the hero. le gouverneur, the tutor. la gouvernante, the governess. le serviteur, the man-servant. la servante, the maid-servant. le pécheur, the sinner. la péchèresse, the sinner f. la compagne, the companion f. le compagnon, the companion. le larron, the thief. la larronnesse, the thief f. la louve, the she-wolf. le loup, the he-wolf. la mule, the mule f. le mulet, the mule. *le dindon*, the turkey-cock. la dinde, the turkey-hen.

#### Thème. 2.

Form and write the feminine of the following masculine nouns according to the above rules: 1 ... 1

The neighbour, le voisin; f. : ---. The hunter, le chaeseur; The dwarf, le nain (§, 1); f. -... The talker, le barard f. —, (§. 1); f. —. The prisoner, le prisonnise. (§. 1); f. —. The dumb man, le muet; f. —. The teacher, l'instituteury; f. —. The master, le maître; f. ..... A musician, un musicien; f. ..... The founder, le fondateur; f. —. The Englishman, l'Anglaie; f. —. The German, l'Allemand; f. —. The actor, l'acteur; f. ---. The inventor, Finventeur; f. ---. The liar, le menteur (root ment., termination -sur); f. —. The traitor, le traiter; f. ---. The singer, le chapteur; f. ---. The idler, le paresseur; f. —. The lion, le lion; f. —. The tiger, le tigre; f. ..... المسريين الالاتوان ----110.1017 ۰,

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II.

ł

. . .

### Reading-lesson.

Vraie Générosité.

Un honnête père de famille, chargé <sup>1</sup> de biens et d'années, voulut régler d'avance<sup>2</sup> sa succession entre see trois fils, et leur partager ses biens, le fruit de ses travaux et de soa industrie. Il en fit trois portions égales, et assigna à chacun son lot. — Puis il leur dit: "Il me reste encore un diamant de grand prix; je le destine à celui de vous qui saura le mieux le mériter par quelque action noble et généreuse, et je vous donne trois mois pour vous mettre en état de l'obtenir."

Aussitôt les trois fils se dispersent, mais ils se rassemblent au temps prescrit<sup>3</sup>. Ils se présentent devant leur juge, et voici ce que raconte l'aîné<sup>4</sup>: "Mon père, durant mon absence, un étranger s'est trouvé dans des circonstances qui l'ont obligé de me confier<sup>5</sup> toute sa fortune: il n'avait de moi aucune sûreté par écrit<sup>6</sup>, et n'aurait pu produire contre moi aucune preuve du dépôt; mais je lui ai tout remis fidèlement. Cette fidélité n'est-elle pas quelque chose de louable<sup>7</sup>?"

"Tu as fait, mon fils, lui répondit le vieillard, ce que tu devais faire. Il y aurait de quoi mourir de honte, si l'on était capable d'en agir autrement, car la probité est un devoir. Ton action est une action de justice; mais ce n'est point une action de générosité."

1) laden. 2) beforehand. 3) prescribed, appointed. 4) the elder one. 5) to trust. 6) in writing. 7) laudable.

### Suite.

Le second fils plaida<sup>1</sup> sa cause à son tour, à peu près en con termes: "Je me suis trouvé pendant mon voyage, sur le bord d'un lac; un enfant venait<sup>2</sup> imprudemment de s'y laïsser<sup>2</sup> tomber; il allait se noyer<sup>3</sup>; je l'en ai tiré, et je lui ai sauvé la vie, aux yeux des habitants d'un village situé au bord du lac; ils pourront attester la vérité<sup>4</sup> du fait."

"A la bonne heure, interrompit<sup>8</sup> le père; mais il n'y a point encore de noblesse dans cette action; il n'y a que de l'husnanité."

Enfin, le dernier des trois frères prit la parole. "Mon père, dit-il, j'ai trouvé mon ennemi mortel, qui, s'étant égaré la nuit, s'était endormi, sans le savoir, sur le penchant<sup>6</sup> d'un abîme<sup>7</sup>; le moindre mouvement qu'il eût fait, au moment de son réveil<sup>8</sup>, ne pouvait manquer<sup>9</sup> de le précipiter;

.

sa vie était entre nies mains; j'ai pris soin de l'éveiller 10 avec les précautions convenables, et l'ai tiré de cet endroit 11 fatal." - "Ahl mon fils, s'écria le bon père avec transport, et en l'embrassant tendrement, c'est à toi, sans contredit 12, que la bague 13 est due." 1) to plead. 2) had just fallen. 3) to be drowned. 4) the fact. 6) to interrupt. 6) the slope. 7) abyss. 8) of his awaking. 9) fail. 10) to wake. 11) place, spot. 12) without doubt. 13) the ring. Conversation. Qui voulut régler sa succes- Un honnête père de famille. sion? 1. 1. A. A. A. A. Que fit-il à cet effet (for this Il partagea ses biens entre ses trois fils. purpose)? Un diamant de grand prix. Que lui restait-il? A celui d'entre eux qui ferait A qui le destina-t-il? une action noble et généreuse. Combien de temps leur donna-Il leur donna trois mois pour t-il pour cela? obtenir ce prix. Que firent ensuite les fils? Ils se dispersèrent, mais au bout du temps prescrit, ils revinrent à la maison. Quelle avait été l'action de Il avait remis fidèlement à un l'aîné? étranger la fortune que celuici lui avait confiée sans reçu (receipt). Qu'avait fait le second fils? Il avait sauvé un enfant qui allait se noyer. Qui avait vu cela? Les habitants d'un village situé au bord du lac. Enfin, quelle avait été l'action Il avait retiré son ennemi endu dernier des trois frères? dormi au bord d'un abîme, où le moindre mouvement l'eût précipité. Laquelle de ces trois actions Celle du plus jeune fils. était la plus noble? Les actions des deux autres Non, la première était une action de justice, la seconde n'étaient-'elles pas nobles une action d'humanité. • et généreuses? Il s'écria avec transport: "Mon Kt qu'est-ce que lui dit le fils, c'est à toi, sans contre-

père?

16\*

dit, que la bague est due."

### SECOND LESSON.

### Of the Plural of nouns.

(See Part I., 2nd lesson, p. 15.) The general rules on this subject have already/been given in the second lesson of the I. Part. We have to add here the following particulars.

§. 1. Nouns of two and more syllables, ending in -ant and -ent are spelled by some French writers in the plural -ens and -ans, instead of -ents and -ants, as: momens for moments, enfans for enfants. This orthography however is not to be recommended.

§. 2. The following nouns in al and ail do not form their plural in aux, but take an s.

le bal, the ball.	l'éventail, m. the fan.
le cal, callus.	l'épouvantail, m. the werewolf.
le narval, the narwhale.	un portail, a portal, frontgate.
le carneval, the carnival.	le poitrail, the poitral.
le régal, the regale.	le serail, the seraglio.
le détail, the particulars.	<i>l'ail</i> , garlic (has in Plur. both
le gouvernail, the helm, rudder.	les ails and les aulx).
Plural: les bals, les cals,	les détails, les éventails etc.

Note. Le bétail, cattle, makes in the plural les bestique.

§. 3. The usual plural of *oiel* is *cieux*, the heavens; there is however a regular plural *les ciels*, meaning 1) the testers, 2) the climats, 3) the skies of pictures.

§. 4. Aieul takes an s in its plural, when it means (great-)grandfathers or (great-)grandmothers, taken in the particular sense, and aieux, when in the sense of ancestors.

§. 5. How compound words form their plural.

1) When a word is composed of a substantive and an adjective or of two substantives, both take the mark of the plural. Ex.:

Les beaux-frères, the brothers-in-law.

Les choux - fleures, the cauliflowers. Les choux - fleures, the cauliflowers. Les chiefs - liciux, the chieftowns (of counties):

2) But when a word is composed of two substantives separated by a preposition, the first alone takes the plural termination. Ex.:

Les chefs-d'œuvre, the master-pieces.

Les arcs-en-ciel, the rainbows.

3) When a word consists of a substantive and a verb or preposition, the substantive alone can take the sign of the plural, if required by the sense. Ex.:

Les tire-bottes, the boot-jacks. Les essuie-mains, the towels. Les garde-fous, the balusters.

٠

4) When there is no substantive in the compound word, none of the components can take the mark of a plural.  $Ex_n$ :

Les passe partout (not passe partouts), the master-keys. Les forte piano; the pianos.

5) The words: la grand mère, the grandmother; la grand tante, grand-aunt; la grand rue, the main street; la grand route, the highway, have in the plural les grand mores, les grand tantes etc.

is 5.5. The following nouns take in plural another meaning than, in singular:

moilt vill singulat. It distributes in the chisel. les ciseaux, the scissors. la lunette, the telescope. les lunettes, the spectacles. le fer, iron. le gage, the pawn, pledge. les gages, the wages. la mesure, the measure. les mesures, the measures. les herbes, herbs. la viande, meat. les troupes, the troops. les toiles, the linen. les toiles, the curtain. les toiles, the curtain. Plural: Plural: les ciseaux, the scissors. les ciseaux, the scissors. les ciseaux, the scissors. les tes annetes, the spectacles. les fers, the fetters, chains. les gages, the wages. les mesures, the measures. les troupes, the troops. les toiles, the curtain.

la lumière, the light.	les lumières, knowledge.
laboi, the barking.	les abois, agony.
la défense, the defence.	les défenses, the tusks, fangs.

§. 7. Substantives which have no singular in French:

Les annales, f. annals.	les gens, m. people.
les ancêtres, m. ancestors.	les 'hardes, f. clothes.
les alentours, m. ) the en-	les légumes, m. vegetables.
les environs, m. virons.	les mathématiques, f. mathematics.
les broussailles, f. briars.	les matériaux, materials.
les décombres, m. rubbish.	les mours, f. the manners.
les débris, m. the remains.	les mouchettes, f. suuffers.
les dépens, m. cost.	des mouchettes, a pair of anuffers.
les entrailles, f. the entrails.	les pleurs, f. the tears.
les frais, m. expences.	les ténèbres, f. darkness.
les funérailles, f. funerals.	les vivres, m. victuals.

### Thème. 3.

We had many balls last winter<sup>1</sup>. Are these fans deat? No, they are not dear. The heavens declare<sup>2</sup> the glory<sup>\*</sup>) of God. The frontgates of those churches are beautiful. We honour<sup>3</sup> the virtues of our ancestors. The eyes of (de l') man are the mirror<sup>4</sup> of his soul. The eyes of a mother watch<sup>5</sup> over her child's life. I have two brothers-in-law and three sisters-in-law. These pictures are master-pieces. I want<sup>6</sup> two or three towels. These master-kays must be very old. Both my (mes deux) grand-aunts are dead; but my grandmothers are still alive (*en vie*). Lend me your scissors, if you please. The fetters are made of iron. Do you know the environs<sup>\*\*</sup>) of London? Yes, I know them: Bring me w pair of snuffers. Do you like (the) vegetables? I like them, when they are dry. I found this ring<sup>7</sup> under the rubbish in my garden. The little humming-birds (*oiseaux-mouches*) are the jewels<sup>8</sup> of nature<sup>\*\*</sup>) (def. art.). I study<sup>9</sup> mathematics.

1) Use the article, see p. 241, 2). — 2) to declare == annoncer. 3) honorer. 4) mirroir m. 5) veiller. 6) il me faut (see Part. I. p. 138, 3. — 7) bague f. 8) bijou m. 9) étudier.

\*) Sec page 220, 2),

\*\*) In this Second Part, those words whose last letter is printed in *italics*, are at the same time French words and spelled in the same manner.

### Reading - losson.

1. 1-1

Le castor. The beaver. Dans le nord de l'Amérique, sur les bords des fleuves et des grands lacs du Canada, loin des grand'routes, habite le castor. La partie la plus singulière de son corps est sa queue 1. Ses pattes de devant (fore-feet) sont des espèces de mains, dont il se sert fort adroitement<sup>2</sup>. Ils entreprennent des travaux très considérables pour se construire des habitations solides et commodes. Ce sont des cabanes (huis) on plutôt des espèces de maisonnettes bâties dans l'eau, avec deux issues, l'une pour aller à terre, l'autre pour se jeter à l'eau. La forme de cet édifice<sup>8</sup> est presque toujours ovale ou ronde; il y en a depuis quatre ou cinq pieds jusqu'à huit ou dix de diamètre et de deux ou trois étages 4. Les murailles<sup>5</sup> ont jusqu'à deux pieds d'épaisseur<sup>6</sup>; elles sont élevées à plomb 7 sur un piletis , qui sert en même temps de fondement et de plancher à la maison. × 4 .

Les castors aiment à ronger <sup>9</sup> continuellement de l'écorce (bark), et ils en font ample provision pour se nourrir péndant l'hiver. Chaque cabane a son magasin, et ils ne vont jamais piller <sup>10</sup> leurs voisins. Ces cabanes contiennent quelquefois jusqu'à trente castors qui vivent toujours en paix ensemble. Si quelque castor aperçoit un ennemi, il donne un grand coup, de sa queue, sur l'eau: A ce signal, tous les autres plongent dans l'eau, ou se réfugient dans les cahanes,

GORTE	rsation.
Où habite le castor?	Il habite dans le nord de l'An
	mérique, sur les bords des
· · · · · · · · ·	fleuves et des lacs.
Quelle est la partie la plus	mérique, sur les bords des fleuves et des lacs. C'est sa queue.
remarquable de son corps?	
Comment sont ses pattes de	Ce sont des espèces de mains
devant?	dont il se sert fort adroite- ment.
Que font les castors de cu-	Ils bâtissent des cabanes dans
rieux ?	l'eau.
De quelle manière les bâ-	Ils font deux issues, l'une pour
tissent - ils ?	aller à terre, l'autre pour se
and the second	rijeter à l'eau. Anny fait

maisonnettes?

Y a-t-il plusieurs étages?

Les murailles sont-elles so-"lides?

Y'a-t-il plusieurs castors dans un tel édifice?

Que font-ils, quand un ennemi approche? 6 2939

thing the second standard and وأحرار والجراني المجار والمحافظ

1670 - 2011

annani an

v

Quelle est la forme de ces. La forme en est ordinairement ronde ou ovale.

> Oui, les cabanes sont de deux ou trois étages.

> Très solides; elles ont jusqu'à deux pieds d'épaisseur.

Ces cabanes contiennent quelquefois jusqu'à trente castors qui vivent ensemble en paix.

Ils se jettent tous dans l'eau, ou se réfugient dans les cabanes.

# -dant of end of THIRD LESSON.

of the use of the article.

The French article offers a great many deviations from the English usage. In general, the article is more frequently used than in English, and as a perfect knowledge of these peculiarities is of great importance, the learner must be careful to observe the following rules.

Ins The definite article is used in French and - may at the area not in English.

1) Before abstract notions, when taken in their whole 41 extent; as . ... L'amitie, f. friendship. . . . . . . . la bonté, goodness. ١ *loccupation*, f. employment. la paresse, idleness.

l'amour, love. la patience, patience. la nigillegse, old age. la jeunesse, youth. -attacks their area -

### Examples.

Le temps est précieux, time is precious. Le vice est odieux, vice is odious.

La modestie est une belle vertu, modesty is a fine virtue or L'occupation est le meilleur remède contre l'ennui.

Occupation is the best remedy against weariness.

2) Before collective names of corporations, bodies, governments, sciences, religious creeds, seasons, metals etc., as:

La noblesse, nobility.	le christianisme, Christianity.
le gouvernement, government.	le judaïsme, Judaism.
la monarchie, monarchy.	Thiver, m. winter.
<i>Chistoire</i> , f. history.	l'or, m. gold.
la géographie, geography,	le fer, iron.

3) Before concrete ideas which represent a whole genus or species, as:

L'homme est mortel, man is mortal.

Les voix des animaux sont très différentes.

The voices of animals are very different.

11.11 4) Before the following and some similar substantives: Man, l'homme. law, la loi. men, les hommes. chance, le hasard. .11 nature, la nature. fate, le sort. custom, l'usage, la contume. heaven, le ciel. . . manners, les mœurs. earth, la terre. life, la vie. hunger, la faim. · . . . . . . death, la mort. thirst, la soif. · i1 time, le temps. tea, le thé. dinner, le diner. 11 (11 fortune, la fortune misfortune, le malheur. de breakfast, le déjeaner. adversity, l'adversité.

5) When particular qualities of an organic body are mentioned, as: 35.011

Ce garçon a la tête très petite.  $\sim 6V$ This boy has a very little head. .. ..

· Cette femme a la bouche petite et les yeux bleus. 11 This woman has a little mouth and blue eyes. 110 Le loup a la tête longue, le nez effilé et les oreilles étroites. The wolf has a long head, a lean nose and small ears.

La fille aux yeux bleus, the blue-eyed girl. ......

6) When in English the Saxon genitive is used, as: My father's house, la maison de mon père. Ne. The king's palace, is palais de roi. 7

11.

7) Before adjectives used substantively, as:

Les riches ne donnent pas toujours. Rich men do not always give.

8) Before proper names of countries, provinces, rivers and mountains, as:

L'Angleterre est riche, England is rich. Le mont Vésuve, Mount Vesuvius.

La France est plus grande que l'Italie. France is larger than Italy.

Note. Further particulars on proper names will be found in the sixth lesson.

9) In French, the definite article precedes nouns of dignity and titles, followed by proper names, as:

Admiral Nelson, l'amiral Nelson.

Professor Arnold, l'e professeur Arnold.

10) In French, the definite article replaces the English indefinite article, when the price of wares is indicated, as:

Three franks a pound, trois france la livre.

Five shillings a yard, cinq chelins l'aune or le mètre.

11) In the following phrases the definite article is used:
La plupart des hommes, most men.
à l'école - à l'église, at or to school - at or to church.
Il s'est cassé la jambe, he has broken his leg.

"' L'épée à la main, a sword in his hand.

Apprendre le français, l'anglais, l'italien etc. To learn French, English, Italian etc.

Je vous souhaits le bon jour, I wish you good morning. Il, elle etc. entra le premier, la première, le dernier etc. He, she etc. entered first, last etc.

- Je n'ai pas le temps. Il n'a pas le sou.
- I have not time. He has not a farthing.

Jai mal à la tête, — mal aux dents.

: I have a head-sche, — a taoth-sche. Soyez le bienvenu, — la bienvenue sta, be welcome. La semaine passée (dernière), last week.

#### 12) After dont between nouns, as:

. Un homme dont la réputation est perdue, est malheureux. A man whose good reputation is lost, is unhappy.

## II. Repetition of the articles.

The article must be repeated in French before every substantive. Ex.:

The mind and heart, l'esprit et le cœur.

The shoemaker, hatter and tailor.

. )

Le bottier, le chapelier et le tailleur.

I have hought meat, cheese and fruits.

J'ai acheté de la viande, du fromage et des fruits.

### Thème. 4

Virtue is the highest 1 good (bien m). Men are mortal. Modesty\*) adorns<sup>2</sup> youth. Human life is short. Man is liable<sup>3</sup> to a variety") of (a bien des) changes . Gold and silver cannot render<sup>6</sup> man happy. Men of (d'un) real genius<sup>6</sup> are scarce. Black and white are two opposite' colours.\*) Beer is sold<sup>8</sup> [for] five-pence<sup>9</sup> a (le): pot.\*\*) Beauty \*) and wit<sup>10</sup> are valuable<sup>11</sup> endowments (avantages), when heightened (relevés) by modesty. Iron and steel are more useful than gold and silver. How much a pound? The love of glory\*) (def. art.), the fear of shame<sup>12</sup> are often the cause\*\*) of great valour.\*) The instructions of adversity\*) are wholesome (salutaires), though unpleasing<sup>18</sup>, the lessons of prosperity<sup>\*</sup>) are pleasing, but often pernicious.\*) Summer is warm, but winter is cold. Geography is a very useful science. Painting 14, sculpture and poetry 15 belong to the imagination. Good and bad seem to be blended (mêlés) together through all nature. Hypocrisy is an homage which vice pays (rend) to virtue. Do you know general Knox? Yes, I know him. White garments <sup>16</sup> are the symbol of innocence. The knife and fork are broken. Let us go to church. The boys were at school this morning. Fear<sup>17</sup> and ignorance are the sources of superstition. Good wine is sold (se !vend) [for] four shillings a bottle.

1) grand. 2) orner. 3) sujet. 4) changement m. 5) rendre. 6) orai génie. 7) opposé. 8) se vend. 9) dix sous. 10) esprit. — 11) précieux. 12) la honte. 13) désagréable. 14) la peinture. — 15) la poésie. 16) vétements. 17) peur f.

\*) See p. 220, 2). - \*\*) See the foot-note p. 284.

III. The definite article is omitted:
1) Before the ordinal numbers which come after the

names of sovereigns, as: Henry the fourth (see p. 59, 3), Henri quatre. Lewis the eighteenth, Louis XVIII (dix huit). George the third, George trois. 2) Before the ordinal numbers used in quotations, as: Book the first, chapter the fifth. Livre premier, chapitre cinq. IV. The indefinite article is omitted in French: 1) Before national and professional names, when the subject is a noun or personal pronoun, as: Je suis Anglais, I am an Englishman. an and L Ce jeune homme est Allemand, this young man is a German. Mon père était médecin, my father was a physician. Note. But it is expressed after c'est and world, and also when the noun is qualified by an adjective. C'est un Anglais, he is an Englishman. Voici un officier, here is an officer. M. Dubois était un médecin distingué, Mr. Dubois was an cléver physician. 11112-11 2) It is also omitted in the apposition, that is when a substantive is used to qualify another, astanon L'Avare, comédie par Molière. The miser, a comedy by Molière. Auguste, fils de M. S., Augustus, a son of Mr. S. Munich, ville d'Allemagne, Munich, a city of Germany 3) In the title of a book; ... I also mind out indereduce. A French grammar, Grammaire fronçaise. 5 97. - 400 961 A history of England, Histoire d'Angleterre. 4) After the word what, used to express surprise, as: What a noise you make! quel bruit yous failes! -5) Before the words quantité, a quantity; nombre, a number; force, a great number, when they are used adverbially. Ex.:

ten 1 Je Bal ou nombre de fois, I have seen him many times.

- He gave me a great many pretty things.

6) The indefinite article is left out in French and supplied by par, before substantives that denote time, or in mentioning what is paid for salary, wages etc., as:

Five guineas a month, cinq guinées par mois. So much a lesson, tant par leçon.

7) Sometimes after jamais, never, as: Jamais général ne s'est plus distingué. Never has a general distinguished himself more.

8) In the following expressions: Trouver moyen, to find (a) means. faire signe, to make a sign. faire présent, to make a present. mettre fin, to put an end or stop. livrer bataille, to fight a battle. prendre exemple, to take an example. rendre service, to render a service. ne dire mot, to say not a word.

Thème. 5.

Book the tenth, chapter the third. Charles the second, king of (d) Spain, son of Philip the fourth, left his kingdom (royaume) to Philip the fifth. William the third, king of England married (épousa) the princess Mary, daughter of James (Jaques) the second. I am a German, but you are an Englishman. Apelles was a painter 1. Socrates<sup>2</sup> was a philosopher, Cicero<sup>3</sup> an orator (-teur). Is your father a physician?  $No_{d}$ . Sir, he is a lawyier (avocat). Henry's uncle is a skilful<sup>4</sup> physician. Who is that gentleman? He is (c'est) an officer. How much do you charge (demandez-vaus) for your lessons? I charge three francs <sup>5</sup> a lesson. A German Grammar. A Roman history, from the foundation<sup>6</sup> of Rome to (jusqu'à) the destruction of the Roman empire. What an unhappy situation! How much does the bookseller 7 pay you for your novels 8? He pays me five crowns (écus) a sheet<sup>9</sup> We went to Caen. a large town of Normandy 10. The duke of York, a prince of the blood royal. I am reading the "Misanthrope", a comedy by Molière. I shall find a means to satisfy <sup>11</sup> him. He said not a word: Our neighbour made us a sign to leave <sup>12</sup> the room.

1) peintre. 2) Socrate. 3) Oiceron. 4) habile. 5) franc. — 6) fondation. 7) libraire. 8) roman m. 9) feuille. 10) de Normandie. 11) satisfaire. 12) guitter.

V. The article is omitted in both languages:

1) In many proverbs, as:

Contentement passe richesse, content surpasses wealth. Pauvreté n'est pas vice, poverty is no disgrace. Mauvaise herbe croît toujours, ill weeds grow apace.

2) In enumerating several substantives in the partitive sense, when comprised with tous or rien, as:

Hommes, femmes, enfants, tous voulaient le voir. Men, women, children, all wished to see him.

3) After ni - ni, soit — soit, when the nouns are taken in the partitive sense, as:

Ni or ni argent, neither gold nor silver. Ni prières, ni menaces ne pouvaient l'engager à etc. Neither prayers nor threats could induce him to etc. Soit crainte, soit ignorance, il ne voulait rien dire. Be it fear, or ignorance, he would say nothing.

4) The partitive article is further omitted after the prepositions avec, sans, par, when the noun following forms with them a kind of adverb, as:

Avec plaisir, with pleasure.	par jour, daily, a day.
avec patience, with patience.	par an, yearly, a year.
avec soin, with care.	par mois, monthly, a month.
avec élégance, elegantly.	sur mer, by water, by sea.
sans argent, without money.	par mer, ( <sup>5</sup> , <sup>1</sup>
sans façons, without cere- monies.	sur terre, by land.
sans peine, without trouble.	sous peine de mort, on pain of
sans péril, without danger.	death.

5) No article is used before a substantive, which is repeated with a preposition, as:

Promesses sur promessés, premises upon promises. De temps en temps, fram time to time. De siècle en siècle, from age to age.

6) In the following expressions, where the noun forms but one idea with the verb antecedent, as:

Avoir faim, to be hungry. prendre patience, to have patience. avoir soif, to be thirsty. prendre soin, to take care. avoir soin, to take care. faire grâce, to grant pardon. avoir pour, to be afraid. faire attention, to pay attention. avoir bonne mine, to look well. faire grand cas, to value. avoir pitié, to have pity. fairs pour, to frighten. avoir honte, to be ashamed. faire mention, to mention. avoir raison, to be right. fairs fortune, to make one's avoir tort, to be wrong. fortune. rendre compte, i to account for. avoir sujet, to have occasion for. avoir dessein, to intend. avoir envie, to have a desire, a rendre visite, to visit. porter envie, to envy. avoir besoin, to want. [mind. avoir coûtume, to be in the courir risque, to run risk. habit, to use. demander pardon, to beg one's prendre part, to join. pardon. prendre garde, to take care. demander grace, to beg for grace. prendre congé, to take leave. ajouter foi, to give credit. 7) Further after many verbs, which are followed by de, à or en, as: Combler de bienfaits, to load with benefits. Viere de pain, to live upon bread. Monter à cheval, to mount (get) on horseback. Monter en voiture, to enter a carriage. Tomber de cheval, to fall from horseback. Descendre de cheval, to alight. Se mettre à table, to go to dinner. Se lever de table, to rise from dinner. Perdre de vue, to lose sight of. Mourir de faim, to be starved, to starve with hunger. Mourir de froid, to die with cold, to freeze. Trembler de peur, to tremble with fear. Etre malade de chagrin, to be ill with grief. Sauter de joie, to jump for joy.

### Thème. 6.

Charity<sup>1</sup> begins at home (par soi-même). Necessity<sup>1</sup> has no law (loi). Games<sup>2</sup>, conversation, theatre, nothing diverts (distrait) him. Nobody was satisfied; father, uncles, aunts and brothers, all thought themselves (se crurent) neglected<sup>3</sup>. This man has neither vices nor virtues; neither talents nor defects. We expected our friend from day to day. It does not suffice to heap (d'entasser) facts <sup>5</sup> upon facts and to load<sup>6</sup> your memory<sup>1</sup>; you must exercise<sup>7</sup> also your judgment<sup>8</sup>. I shall do it with pleasure. One florin a day. Ten pounds a year. The poor woman was starving with hunger and (with) cold. You are always right; I have been wrong. Have pity on (de) my weakness<sup>9</sup>. The least noise<sup>10</sup> frightens me. Those who speak without reflection, are exposed to many (à bien des) errors 1. I must take leave of you. Many poor people live on (de) bread and potatoes only. The king has granted (foit) him Thisl pardon.

1) p. 220, 2). — 2) jeu m. 3) négligés. 4) défaut. 5) le fait. 6) charger. 7) exercer. 8) jugement. 9) faiblesse f. 10) bruit m.

## Reading-lesson.

1. 1997

#### Démosthène.

Démosthène, jeune homme d'Athènes, avait grande envie de devenir orateur habile; mais la nature semblait lui en avoir refusé tous les moyens.

D'abord il bégayait<sup>1</sup> à l'excès; puis il ne pouvait prononcer la lettre R.; ensuite il avait une voix désagréable, glapissante<sup>2</sup> et de faibles poumons<sup>3</sup>. D'autres ajoutent qu'il avait encore la mauvaise habitude de lever l'épaule<sup>4</sup>, quand il avait prononcé trois ou quatre mots. Aussi, la première fois qu'il haranguait le peuple, il s'en tira si mal, que non seulement il courut risque d'être renvoyé de la tribune, mais encore qu'il fut complètement siffét<sup>5</sup>.

Tout autre que lui aurait à jamais perdu courage. Mais Démosthène prit patience et résolut, en dépit<sup>6</sup> de la nature, de devenir bon orateur, et il le devint. Écoutez comment il s'y prit<sup>7</sup>.

Quelquefois il allait au bord de la mer, dans l'endroit où les vagues<sup>8</sup> venaient se briser (*break*) avec fracas<sup>9</sup>. Là, il débitait<sup>10</sup> un discours à haute voix, pour s'accoutumer à dominer le tumulte d'une assemblée populaire. D'autres fois, il mettait i dans sa bouche de petits cailloux (*finis*); puis il couraiti en gravissant<sup>11</sup> une montagne et en déclamant, afin de se contraindre <sup>12</sup> à prononcer clairement jusqu'à la moindre syllabe.

Enfin, on dit qu'il s'exerçait à parler dans une chambre souterraine <sup>18</sup>, et que pour se mettre dans la nécessité de rester longtemps enfermé, il s'était fait raser <sup>14</sup> la moitié de la tête.

Il se plaçait des heures entières devant un miroir, pour se donner une bonne contenance et des gestes convenables. On dit qu'il se mettait aussi l'épaule nue immédiatement sous la pointe d'une épée<sup>15</sup>, afin qu'elle le piquât <sup>16</sup>, toutes les fois que, d'après sa mauvaise habitude, il ferait son mouvement d'épaule.

C'est par des exercices soutenus<sup>17</sup> de ce genre, joints à une étude profonde des sciences, qu'il se réndit enfin le plus grand orateur qui ait existé, et aujourd'hui encore, après tant de siècles<sup>18</sup>, ses harangues sont admirées comme des chefs-, d'œuvre d'éloquence.

1) to stammer. 2) shrill. 3) lungs. 4) shoulder. 5) to hiss at. 6) in spite of 7) to behave, to manage. 8) the waves. 9) noise. 10) to deliver. 11) to climb. 12) to force. 18) subterranean. 14) to shave. 15) a sword. 16) to sting. 17) continued. 18) century.

Conversation.			
Quel était Démosthène?	Le plus célèbre orateur Grec.		
Est-ce que la nature l'avait bien favorisé?	Au contraire, elle semblait lui avoir refusé tous les moyens de devenir orateur.		
Quels défauts avait-il donc?	Il bégayait et ne pouvait pro- noncer la lettre r.		
Et quelle était sa voix?	Elle était désagréable et gla- pissante.		
Comment s'en tira-t-il, lors- qu'il prononça son premier discours ?	Il s'en tira si mal qu'il fut sifflé (hissed at).		
Fut-il découragé par ce ré- sultat?	Non, il ne perdit pas courage; au contraire, il persista dans son dessein.		
Et comment s'y prit-il?	Il s'exerçait continuellement et de différentes manières.		
Dites-moi un exemple.	Il mettait de petits cailloux dans sa bouche pour se défaire ( <i>rid</i> of) de l'habitude de bégayer.		

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. IL.

efforts ?

Ses harangues existent-elles Oui, elles sont encore aujourencore?

Est-ce qu'il réussit dans ses Il réussit si parfaitsment qu'il devint à la fin le plus grand orateur qui ait existé.

> d'hui admirées comme des chefs-d'œuvre d'éloquence.

# FOURTH LESSON.

## Special use of die and a.

In general we may say, de is used when made of, composed of, coming from, belonging to can be understood, whereas **à** is employed when for the purpose of is meant.

T. De alone (without article) is used:

S. 1. After the adverbs of quantity, mentioned in the 6th lesson, viz.: beaucoup, peu, plus, moins, tant, autant, trop, combien, assez, rien, jamais, ne - guère, quelque chose; see p. 32.

Exception. Bien is the only adverb of quantity which is followed by the article, as:

Elle a bien de l'esprit, she has a great deal of wit. Cet écolier a bien des fautes.

This pupil has a great many mistakes.

S. 2. As in English, after nouns expressing quantity, number, measure, weight etc., as:

Une quantilé de noix, a quantity of walnuts. Une paire de bas, a pair of stockings. Une livre de beurre, a pound of butter. Une pièce de toile, a piece of linen. Un morceau de fromage, a piece of cheese. ١. Une main de papier, a quire of paper. Une bouteville de vin, a bottle of wine.

íΖ

- S. BuilThe adjectives denoting dimension or age are followed by de, as:

- A wall twenty feet high: un mur haut de vingt piede or un mur dui a vingt piede de hout or de houteur. A boy ten years old, un (petit) gargon de dis ans.

A table six feet long, une table longue de six pieds or de six pieds de longueur.

Note. It may be observed here that with adjectives of dimension, the verb to be is rendered in French by avoir, as:

This tower 75 120 foet high. Cette tour a cent vingt pieds de hauteur.

§. 4. When an English adjective is rendered in French by a noun, the order of the substantives is inverted in English. In French the latter is preceded by *de*. Ex.:

A witty man, un homme d'esprit. A gold watch, une montre d'or. Silk stockings, des bas de soie. The Russian ambassador, l'ambassadeur de Russie. Irish linen, la toile d'Irland. Spanish wool, la laine d'Espagne. Burgundy wine, le vin de, Bourgogne. A droll fellow, un drôle de gargon.

§. 5. De is used, as in English, after common names followed by a proper name. Ex.:

Le royaume d'Éspagne, the kingdom of Spain. L'île de Maîte, the island of Malta. Le canton de Bâle, the canton of Basil.

La ville de Londres, the city of London.

Le lac de Genève, the lake of Geneva.

Except the combinations with mont, rue, place and église, as: le Mont-Blanc, le mont Éina, rue Richelieu, place Vendôme, l'église Saint-Sulpice etc.

§. 6. English nouns compounded with two substantives are generally rendered in French by two set parate substantives joined by de, when one expresses

17\*

the nature, species or quality of the other (compare p. 250). In English, the qualifying substantive is often used before the qualified, and the preposition is omitted. In French, the order must be altered, the last coming first, and a preposition is inserted. Westminster bridge, for instance, must be translated, as if it were bridge of Westminster = le pont de Westminster.

### French compound nouns with de.

1) De is used, when coming from, belonging to, can be understood, as:

A tooth-ache, un mal de dents. a head-ache, un mal de tête. the town-hall, l'hôtel de ville. a sea-fish, un poisson de mer. a feather-bed, un lit de plumes. a holy-day, un jour de fête. a gold mine, une mine d'or. the post-office, le bureau de poste. the moon-light, le clair de lune. a master-piece, un chef-d'œuvre.

2) When in the English word the second component denotes a person or an animal, in French de is always need, as:

A school-master, un maître d'école. a chambermaid, une femme de chambre. the dancing-master, le maître de danse. the music-mistress, la maîtresse de musique. the French ambassador, l'ambassadeur de France. a saddle-horse, un cheval de selle. a sea-fish, un poisson de mer.

§. 7. The preposition de is used before a substantive governed in the genitive case by an adjective or a participle, followed in English by with, from, of, by, in, after etc. Ex.: Full of andour, glein de feu.

\_ .

Greedy after money, avide d'argent. Dressed in black, vétu d e nair.

I am pleased with my situation; je suis indicent de ma position.

I am deprived of everything, je suis privé de tout.

#### Thème. 7.

Give me much bread and little meat. You must use more prudence. I have bought a quantity of apples and pears. You make too much noise. How many children has your She has four children. You have eaten too many aunt? cherries. We have not bread enough.\*) Mr. Henry has a great many friends. We had a great deal of pleasure. I bought a pound of cheese. We want a dozen pens, a bottle of ink and two quires of paper. A great number of friends remained attached 1 to me. They have built a wall eighty feet long and ten feet high. When my sister was a girl of seven years, she lived with my mother in Italy. Have you a gold or a silver watch? My watch is of gold. Do you know the Russian ambassador? No, Sir, but I know the French ambassador. Irish linen is as good as Dutch<sup>2</sup> linen. I prefer Burgundy wine to Spanish wine. The kingdom of Spain is larger than the kingdom of Portugal. The city of Paris is older than the city of Berlin. Is that gentleman<sup>3</sup> your music-master? No, he is my writing<sup>4</sup>-master.

1) attachés. 2) d'Hollande. 3) monsieur. 4) écriture, f.

8,

To-morrow is (c'est) a holy '-day; it will be a day of happiness<sup>2</sup>. Human life is full of disappointments<sup>3</sup>; Mr. E. is a young man endowed<sup>4</sup> with (d') wit<sup>5</sup> and judgment. We were very much pleased with his behaviour<sup>6</sup>. I was in England, but I have not seen Westminster-bridge. Burgundy wine is very dear. Spanish wool is better than German wool. I have sold my gold watch. Mr. B. always wears<sup>7</sup> silk stockings. My cousin is employed at the post-office. My sisters and I (we) have taken<sup>8</sup> a walk by (au) moonlight. The battle-field was covered with the dead and dying. This girl is the chambermaid of the duchess of L. — Who

<sup>\*)</sup> Asses, enough, is placed after the substantive in English, and always before in French.

are these gentlemen? One is my music - master and the other is my sister's dancing - master. Let us go to (allons dans) the dining-room; dinner<sup>9</sup> is served (serve). I shall not dine to - day; I have a bad <sup>10</sup> head - ache.

1) fete; f. 2) bonheur. 3) revers. 4) doué. 5) esprit. — 6) conduite, f. 7) porter. 8) to take a walk = se promener. — 9) See p. 237, §. 4. 10) violent.

# II. Special use of **a**.

1) The preposition **à** alone (without article) is used after a verb in the following expressions:

Condamner à mort, to condemn to death. fermer à clef, to lock. tomber à terre, to fall to the floor or ground. aller à pied, to go on foot, to walk. aller à cheval, to ride, to go on horseback. monter à cheval, to get or mount on horseback. tomber à genoux, { to kneel down. se mettre à genoux, } se mettre à table, to sit down to dinner.

2) When two substantives make a compound word in English, their order is inverted in French, and the preposition a intervenes, when the one expresses the use of the other, or when for the purpose of, by means of may be understood:

The silk-worm, le ver à soie.

a milk-pot, un pot à lait.\*)

a tea-cup, une tasse à thé.

a repeater, une montre à répétition. a windmill, un moulin à vent.

a paper-mill, un moulin à papier.

a powder-mill (a mill for powder), un moulin à poudre. gun-powder, de la poudre à canon.

a dining-room, une salle à manger!

a bedroom, une chambre à coucher.

' a wine-glass, un verre à vin. \*)

\*) un pot de lait, un verre de vin, signify a pot of milk, a glass of wine.

a coffee-cup, une tasse à café a steam-engine, une machine à vapeur. a steamboat, un bâteau à vapeur. fire-arms, des armes à feu.

3) If in French the second word begins with a vowel or  $\lambda$  mute, the article should be inserted, as:

An ink-bottle, une boutsille à l'encre (or à encre). a water-jug (pitcher), une cruche à l'eau (or à eau). a sac for oats, un sac à l'avoine.

4) When the compound word denotes a place where regularly certain things are sold or kept in quantities, the article is also used with  $\lambda$ , as:

The horse-market, le marché aux chevaux. the fish-market, le marché aux poissons. the corn-store, la halle aux blés. the hay-magazine or loft, le magasin au foin. the hay-market, le marché au foin.

5) à together with the article is further used to call a dish or drink after its principal ingredient, as:

A milk-soup, une soupe au lait.

coffee with milk, du café au tait.

a cream-tart, une tarte à la crème.

a pancake with herbs, une omelette aux fines herbes.

Note. But we say du syrop de groseille, not syrop à groseille, currant-syrup, because this is made entirely of currants.

6) Au, aux is further used in compound words, when they denote a person after what he usually sells, as:

The milkwoman, la femme au lait. the girl that sells vegetables, la fille aux légumes. the oyster-man, l'homme aux huitres. the rabbit-man, l'homme aux lapins.

7) To denote the different kinds of hunting, shooting etc., as:

A deer-hunt, la chasse a ux chevreuils. to go fox-hunting, aller à la chasse aux renards.

#### Thème. 9.

I have bought six tea-cups, take <sup>1</sup> them into the diningroom. Where is the oil<sup>2</sup>-bottle? Who has broken this foverpot? It has fallen to the floor. Bring me a wine-glass and twe tea-spoons. Why has he been condemned to death? He has committed <sup>3</sup> a murder. Your room is locked. Is this an inkbottle? No, it is a vinegar<sup>4</sup>-bottle. Let us sit down (mettonsnous) to dinner. Did you observe <sup>5</sup> that man with <sup>6</sup> black hair? You must buy another milk-pot. Is this the corn-market? No, Sir, this is the hay-market. I always keep (keep alw.) fire-arms in my bed-room for my safety <sup>7</sup> during the night; but I have no gunpowder at present, thus (ainsi) my fire-arms are useless<sup>8</sup>.

1) portez. 2) huile, f. 3) commis, P. p. of commettre. 4) vinaigre. 5) remarquer. 6) aux, pl. (see p. 237, §. 5). – 7) sureté, f. 8) inutile.

#### 10.

Whom have you called? The oyster-man is at the door, will you buy oysters? Yes, I must buy some (en). I have been to the fish-market; however I have bought no fish, because it was too dear<sup>1</sup>. I went fox-hunting yesterday and to-morrow I shall see a deer-hunt. What had you for dessert? We had cherry-pie<sup>2</sup> and a cream<sup>3</sup> tart<sup>4</sup>. Could you tell me where is the hay-store? It is near the horse-market. Who invented (the) gun-powder? Berthold Schwarz, a German monk<sup>5</sup>. The poor girl has broken a milk-pot, two wine-glasses and several tea-cups. The Leviathan is the largest steam-ship in the (au) world. Call the milk-woman, I must buy a pot of milk.

1) cher. 2) gâteau. 3) crême, f. 4) tourte, f. 5) moine.

## Reading lesson.

## Magnanimité d'un sauvage.

Un Indien qui n'avait pas eu de succès dans sa chasse, errait dans le voisinage d'une plantation européenne. Il s'approcha de cette plantation, et, voyant le propriétaire assis (sitting) à sa porte, il lui dit qu'il avait grand'faim<sup>1</sup>, et lui demanda un morceau de pain! sur le refus qu'il reçut en réponse, il demanda un verre de bière: même refus. "Mais je meurs de soif," reprit le sauvage; "donnez-moi au moins un peu d'eau." "Retire-toi, chien d'Indien," dit le planteur, "tu n'auras rien ici!" Il arriva<sup>2</sup>, quelques mois après, que ce planteur inhumain chassant dans un bois avec quelques amis, s'écarta<sup>3</sup> d'eux, en suivant une pièce de gibier<sup>4</sup> qu'il ne put atteindre et perdit ses compagnons. Après avoir erré toute la journée, accablé<sup>5</sup> de fatigue, et mourant de faim et de soif, il aperçut une cabane de sauvages: il y courut et demanda en grâce<sup>6</sup> qu'on le conduisit à la plantation européenne la plus prochaine. "Il est trop tard," lui dit le sauvage, maître de la cabane, "vous ne pouvez y arriver avant la nuit; restez ici, vous y serez le bien-venu, et demain je vous mènerai chez vous." Il lui présenta ensuite un morceau de venaison, et d'autres rafraichissements dont il avait besoin. Il le fit coucher sur un lit de mousse<sup>7</sup>, en lui souhaitant un repos tranquille.

La nuit se passa et le lendemain le sauvage accompagna son hôte, jusqu'à ce (till) qu'il reconnût les lieux et sa route. Au moment où il allait lui dire adieu, le sauvage s'arrêta, l'envisagea<sup>6</sup>, et lui demanda: "Me reconnais-tu?" En ce moment le planteur le reconnut pour le même Indien qu'il avait renvoyé autrefois avec tant de dureté<sup>9</sup>. Il avoua, en tremblant, qu'il reconnaissait ses traits 10, et il commençait à excuser sa conduite brutale, lorsque le sauvage l'interrompit, et lui dit froidement: "Quand tu verras un pauvre Indien mourant de soif, et demandant un verre d'eau, donne-le-lui, et ne lui dis plus: "Va-t-en, chien d'Indien! Souviens-toi surtout de cette belle et grande maxime de tous les temps et de tous les lieux: "Fais pour tes semblables 11 ce que tu voudrais qu'ils fissent pour toi: et ne te permets jamais aucune (any) action que tu ne voudrais pas éprouver<sup>12</sup> de leur part." Après cet avis, il lui souhaita un bon voyage, et le quitta.

Il est inutile de demander lequel de l'Indien ou du planteur méritait le nom *de* sauvage.

1) very hungry. ,2) it happened. 3) to go astray. 4) game. 5) overwhelmed. 6) to supplicate. 7) moss. 8) looked in his face. 9) hard-heartedness. 10) features. 11) fellow-creatures, neighbours. 12) suffer.

#### Conversation.

Qu'arriva-t-il un jour à un Il s'était égaré et se trouvait Indien? près d'une plantation européenne.

- Que fit-il en apercevant le propriétaire assis à sa porte?
- L'Européen lui en donna-t-il?
- L'Indien demanda-t-il autre chose?
- Est-ce que cela lui fut accordé (granted)?
- Comment l'appela-t-il?
- Qu'arriva-t-il quelques mois après?
- Où parvint-il ensuite?
- Dans quel état se trouvait-il?
- Que demanda-t-il au sauvage?
- Et que répondit l'Indien?
- Est-ce qu'il lui présenta quelque chose?
- Le lendemain matin, que fit le sauvage?
- Est-ce que l'Européen ne reconnut pas l'Indien?
- Et qui était-ce?
- Qu'avoua-t-il?
- Que lui dit froidement le sauvage?
- Que lui souhaita-t-il ensuite? Lequel de l'Indien ou du planteur méritait le nom de sauvage?

- Ayant grand'faim, il lui demanda un morceau de pain.
- Non, il le lui refusa.
- Il lui demanda un verre de bière ou au moins un verre d'eau.
- Non, le planteur inhumain lui refusa tout et le renvoya.
- Il l'appela: "Chien d'Indien".
- Le planteur s'égara à son tour en poursuivant une pièce de gibier.
- A une cabane de sauvages.
- Il était accablé de fatigue et mourait de faim et de soif.
- Il le pria de le reconduire à la plantation européenne.
- Il lui dit qu'il était trop tard et l'invita à coucher chez lui.
- Oui, il lui présenta un morceau de venaison et quelques rafraîchissements.
- Il accompagna son hôte jusqu'à ce qu'il reconnût les lieux et sa route.
- Si; au moment où il allait lui dire adieu, il reconnut ses traits.
- C'était le même Indien envers qui il s'était montré si cruel.
- Il avoua qu'il reconnaissait ses traits.
- "Quand tu verras un pauvre Indien etc., ne lui dis plus: ,Va-t-en, chien d'Indien<sup>c.</sup>"
- Un bon voyage.
- Sans doute le planteur plutôt que l'Indien.

# FIFTH LESSON.

## Peculiarities in the use of names of countries, towns etc. (See the First Part, p. 34-36.)

§. 1. As mentioned in the *First Part* (7th lesson), the definite article is put before names of countries, provinces, rivers and mountains. Besides those names given p. 35, we mention the following:

French. English.	French. English.
L'Australie, Australia.	l'Irlande, Ireland.
l'Autriche, Austria.	ls Mexique, Mexico.
la Bavière, Bavaria.	la Normandie, Normandy.
la Chine, China.	la Norvége, Norway.
, la Corse, Corsica.	la Perse, Persia.
le Danemark, Denmark.	le Piémont, Piedmont.
' l'Écosse, Scotland.	la Pologne, Poland.
· l'Égypte, Egypt.	le Portugal, Portugal.
🗤 la Grèce, Greece.	la Sardaigne, Sardinia.
le Hanovre, Hanover.	la Savoie, Savoy.
la Hollande, Holland.	la Saxe, Saxony.
la Hongrie, Hungary.	la Sicile, Sicily.
le Japon, Japan.	la Turquie, Turkey.

## They are declined as common names, as:

Fem.			em.		Maso.
N.		la	Russie	le	Portugal
G.	de	la	Russie	du	Portugal
D.	à	la	Russie	au	Portugal
Ac.		la	Russie.	le	Portugal.

## Examples.

The commerce of England, le commerce de l'Angleterre. The soil of Prussia, le sol de la Prusse

The frontiers of Denmark, les frontières du Danemark. The gold of Peru, For du Pérou.

• Paris is the capital of France, Paris est la capitale de la France.

§. 2. The names of countries and islands, which have the same name as cities situated in them, such as

Naples, Bade, Olderlaurg, Genes (Genoa), Malte, Candie etc., are used without article.

Except however: le Hanovre and le Luxembourg.

§. 3. Further, the definite article is always retained with names of countries which are only used in the plural and in those which are compounded with an adjective. Ex.:

The productions of India, les productions des Indes. The governor of the Netherlands.

Le gouverneur des Pays-bas.

The queen of Great-Britain. La reine de la Grande-Bretagne.

§. 4. In the following cases de only, without the article, is used before names of countries in the singular and not compound:

1) When sovereigns, courts and titles are spoken of. Examples:

La reine d'Angleterre, the queen of England. L'empereur de France, the emperor of France. Le roi de Prusse, the king of Prussia. Le Grand-duc de Bade, the grand-duke of Baden.

Note. With the names of some countries that are not European, the article is generally used, as:

L'empereur de la Chine, du Brésil, etc.

The emperor of China, of Brasil, etc.

However with Persia, la Perse, and Egypt, l'Égypte, only de is used:

Le roi de Perse, 'the king of Persia,

2) Where the names of countries have the meaning of an adjective (see also p. 247, §. 4), as:

L'ambassadeur de Russie, the Russian ambassador.

L'argent de France, the French money.

La laine d'Espagne, (the) Spanish wool.

La soie d'Italie, the silk of Italy.

Du fromage de Suisse, Swiss cheese.

3) After the verbs venir, to come; revenir, to come back, to return; arriver, to arrive, and the noun le retour, if the name of the country is feminine, as:

Il est venu de France, he has come from France. Lorsque je revins d'Espagne, when I returned from Spain. A mon retour d'Italie, on my return from Italy.

But if the name is masculine, the definite article is used, as:

Jarrive du Tyrol, du Mexique, du Portugal, etc.

4) After words, such as *empire*, royaume (kingdom), duché, ville, île (isle), as in English:

L'empire d'Autriche, the empire of Austria. Le royaume de Bavière, the kingdom of Bavaria. Le duché de Nassau, the duchy of Nassau. La ville de Paris, the city of Paris. L'île d'Elbe, the isle of Elba.

§. 5. Both to and in used after a word signifying going, coming, sending, living, being etc. before names of countries in the singular, must be rendered in French by the preposition en, without any article. Ex.:

We are going to America, nous allons en Amérique. He is to go back to Belgium, il doit retourner en Belgique. I send him to Switzerland, je l'envoie en Suisse. My brother lives in America, mon frère vit en Amérique. Rouen lies in France, Rouen est situé en France.

§. 6. If the name of the country be accompanied by an adjective, dans with the definite article must be used:

f

Dans la Suisse française, in French Switzerland. Dans l'Allemagne méridionale, in southern Germany. Dans les États-unis, in the United States of America.

§. 7. The article is omitted before names of towns, villages etc., as:

- 238 -

Anvers, Antworp. Livouville', Leghorn.
Bruxelles, Brussels. Lyon, Lyons.
Cologne, Cologne. Naples.
Douvres, Dover. Venise, Venice.
Douvres, Dover. Venise, Venice. Genève, Geneva. Vienne, Vienna.
Noie. A few names of towns are preceded by the article;
they are:
Le Havre, Havre. la Rochelle, Rochelle.
la Haie, the Hague. la Mecque, Mecca.
le Mans, Mans. le Caire, Cairo.
§. 8. The names of rivers and mountains are pre-
ceded by the definite article, as:
La Thamise, the Thames. I'Elbe, the Elbe.
la Seine, the Seine. le Tibre, the Tiber.
le Rhône, the Rhone. le Danube, the Danube.
le Rhin, the Rhine. la Movelle, the Moselle.
Les Alpes, the Alps. le Saint-Gotthard, the St. Gotthard.
les Pyrénées, the Pyrenees. le Righi, the Righi.
§. 9. Both to and at or in before names of places
are rendered by a. Ex.:
Are you going to Brussels, allez-vous à Bruzelles? He was at Rome and Naples, il était à Rome et à Naples.
Note. The name of a river preceded by la rivière takes de before it when feminine. Ex.:
La rivière de Seine, de Marne etc.
The river Seine, Marne etc.
It is however more usual to say simply:
La Seine, la Marne, la Loire etc.
§. 10. After partir, to set out, to leave, the pre-
position pour must be used before names of countries
with the article, before names of places without it.
Nous partirons pour l'Espagne et le Portugal.
We will set out (or leave) for Spain and Portugal.
Elle est partie pour Paris et Lyon.
She left for Paris and Lyons.

#### Thume. 11.

Europe, Asia, Africa, America and Australia are the five parts of the world. Sweden and Norway are called also Scandinavia (—*ie*). Do you prefer England to France? I prefer Portugal to Spain. We speak of America and not (*non pas*) of Africa. Italy is the garden of Europe. That regiment comes from (*des*) India. The traveller<sup>1</sup> has passed through Belgium, Holland, Hanover and Luxemburg. England has made peace (*la paix*) with China. Italy, Portugal, Spain and France are catholic countries. The interior<sup>2</sup> of Africa is as yet<sup>3</sup> little<sup>4</sup> known. The union of Ireland and Great-Britain took place<sup>5</sup> in <sup>6</sup> 1800. I prefer the wines of Germany to the wines of France. We shall soon go<sup>®</sup> to Switzerland and Italy.

1) voyageur, m. 2) l'intérieur. 3) jusqu'à présent. 4) peu connu. 5) a eu lieu. 6) en.

12.

Japan and China are parts of Asia. The north <sup>1</sup> of Eurrope contains<sup>2</sup> Sweden, Norway, Denmark, Great-Britain and Russia. Naples may (*peut*) be called a paradise<sup>3</sup>, from its (à cause de sa) beauty and fertility<sup>4</sup>. This merchant has bought Italian silk, Spanish wool and French wines. My grandfather lives in the West-Indies<sup>5</sup>. I set out for Egypt to-morrow. This cheese comes from Switzerland. Cologne is situated<sup>6</sup> on (*sur*) the Rhine. The Alps are higher than the Pyrenees. The principal rivers in Germany are the Rhine, the Weser, the Elbe, the Oder and the Danube. The emperor of Russia, Peter<sup>7</sup> the great, died at St. Petersburgh in the year (*en*) 1725. Sicily is the granary<sup>8</sup> of (§. 1) Italy, and Italy the garden of Europe.

1) le nord. 2) contient. 3) paradis, m. 4) fertilité. 5) les Indes occidentales. 6) située. 7) Pierre. 8) grenier, m.

## Reading-lesson.

## Charles douze.

Charles XII, roi de Suède naquit<sup>1</sup> à Stockholm le 27 Juin 1682. Il perdit sa mère dans sa onzième année et avait à peine quinze ans lorsque son père mourut. Selon<sup>2</sup> le testament du feu<sup>3</sup> roi, il ne devait être majeur<sup>4</sup> qu'après avoir passé

1) was born. 2) according to. 3) late. 4) of age.

sa dix-huitième année, mais sur la proposition du ministre Piper, les états hui déférèrent<sup>5</sup> le gouvernement déjà en 1697. L'an 1700, Pierre I., empereur de Russie, Frédéric IV, roi de Damemark, et Auguste, électeur de Saxe, lui déclarèrent la guerre. Il les attaque l'un après l'autre et remporta d'abord<sup>6</sup> des victoires éclatantes<sup>7</sup>, entre autres celle de Narva, où il défit<sup>8</sup> avec moins de 8000 Suédois quatre-vingt mille Russes dont il resta plus de<sup>9</sup> dix mille sur le champ de bataille, tandis qu'il ne perdait que six cents hommes. Mais plus tard, lorsqu'il pénétra en Russie, il perdit la bataille décisive de Pultawa et fut contraint de se réfugier sur le territoire turc avec une faible escorte de deux cent cinquante Suédois.

5) to transfer. 6) at first. 7) splendid. 8) to defeat. 9) than.

Conversation,

Où naquit Charles XII ? Dans quelle année? Perdit-il ses parents de bonne heure?	Ce roi naquit à Stockholm. En 1682, le 27 Juin. Oui, il perdit sa mère, quand il avait 11 ans, et son père, quand il avait 15 ans.
Quand fut-il déclaré majeur?	En 1697, à l'âge de quinze ans et demi.
Qu'arriva-t-il trois ans après?	Pierre I., empereur de Russie, Frédéric IV, roi de Danemark, et Auguste, électeur de Saxe, lui déclarèrent la guerre.
Que fit Charles XII?	Il les attaqua l'un après l'autre et les défit.
Quelle est sa plus éclatante victoire?	Celle de Narva, où il battit 80,000 Russes.
Avait-il une armée nom- breuse?	Il n'avait que 8000 Suédois.
Y eut-il beaucoup de tués?	Les Russes perdirent plus de dix mille hommes, les Sué- dois à peine six cents.
Charles XII a-t-il toujours été heureux dans ses ba- tailles?	Non, il perdit la bataille de Pultawa, et fut contraint de se réfugier sur le territoire turc.

## -- 261 -

# SIXTH LESSON.

Of the possessive adjectives. (See the First Part, p. 52.)

§. 1. Possessive adjectives must be repeated:

1) Before every noun of the same sentence, as:

My brothers and sisters are arrived.

Mes frères el mes sœurs sont arrivés.

2) Before two or three adjectives qualifying different things:

I love your great and your little children. Jaime vos grands et vos petits enfants.

Note. But when the two substantives relate to the same person, and when the two or three adjectives are of the like signification\*) and qualify the same object, the possessive adjective is not repeated. Ex.:

My teacher and friend, mon précepteur et ani. His good and useful advice, ses bons et utiles conseils.

§. 2. Custom requires the use of the possessive adjective before the name of relations, in addressing them, as:

Aunt, when do you leave? Ma tants, quand partez-vous? Cousin, will you go with me? Mon cousin (ma cousine), voulez-vous aller avec moi? Father is not at home, mon père n'est pas à la maison.

§. 3. When in English the possessive pronouns mine, thine, his, hers etc. preceded by the preposition of, are placed after a noun to which they relate, they are rendered in French by *mes, tes, ses etc.,* before the noun which is put in the plural. Ex.:

A book of mine, un de mes livres. A friend of yours, un de vos amis.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II.

<sup>\*)</sup> If they have a contrary signification, the possessive adjective must be repeated, as: Ses bonnes et ses mauvaises poneées (thoughts).

§. 4. When the verb to be is found before a genitive of a possessive adjective, and signifies to belong, in French the dative must be used. Ex.:

This book is my father's, ce livre est à mon père. That house is our uncle's, cette maison-là est à notre oncle.

§. 5. When parts of the body or physical and intellectual faculties are spoken of, the French generally use the definite article, whereas in English the possessive 'adjective is used (see p. 237, §. 5). Ex.:

I have a pain in my head, j'ai mal à la tête. He has lost his senses, il a perdu l'esprit.

Note 1. If, however, there were an ambiguity to be feared, the possessive adjective should be used in French as in English. In saying for instance: Je vois que la main enfle, it would be doubtful whose hand is meant. The English sentence: "I see that my hand swells" must therefore be rendered:

Je vois que ma main enfle.

Note 2. When an habitual complaint is spoken of, the possessive adjective is also properly used. Ex.:

His head-ache is returned, sa migraine l'a repris.

§. 6. After the verbs changer and redoubler, the possessive adjective is dropped and replaced by the preposition de, as:

He has changed his religion, il a changé de religion.

We have changed our opinion.

Nous avons changé d'opinion or d'avis.

They redoubled their activity, ils redoublerent d'activité.

§. 7. When in English the word own is found alone, i. e. without a noun, after a possessive adjective, the latter is rendered by a possessive pronoun: le mien, le tien, le sien propre etc. or in the feminine, by la mienne, la tienne, la sienne propre etc. Ex.:

The daughter of his friend and his own. La fille de son ami et la sienne propre. 263

One is glad to find one's money again. On est content de retrouver son argent.

§. 9. Though in most cases the English its and their, relating to an inanimate object of the preceding sentence, are expressed by son, sa, ses, leur or leurs, yet, sometimes, they must be rendered by en and the article before the noun. This is the case:

1) When the noun stands in the accusative without the verb avoir.

2) When it stands in the nominative not qualified by an adjective\*) and not governed by an *active* verb.\*\*) Ex.:

I like this country, its air (Nom.) is healthy, its soil fruitful etc.

J'aime cette contrée; l'air en est sain, le sol en est fertile. What plant is this? — I do not known its name (Acc.). Quelle est cette plante? — Je n'en connais pas le nom. Look at these trees; what is their height?

Voyez ces arbres; quelle en est la hauteur (not leur h.)?

But we must say:

Paris a ses beautés (on account of avoir). Paris has its beauties.

Jadmire la grandeur de ses rues (because genitive). I admire the size of its streets.

Ces arbres sont remarquables par leur hauteur. These trees are remarkable for their height.

(Because in the two latter sentences the possessive adjectives its and their are governed by a preposition.)

<sup>\*)</sup> Its regular buildings (Nom.) please me. Ses bâtiments réguliers me plaisent.

<sup>\*\*)</sup> Its trade produces (active verb) immense resources. Son commerce produit d'immenses ressources.

## §. 10. Observe the following gallicisms:

Let me soon hear of you. Donnez-moi bientôt de vos nouvelles.

I shall go to meet you. J'irai 'à votre rencontre.

They are cousins of mine.

Ce sont de mes cousins.

1 1

With regard to me, — to you, — to us. A mon égard, à votre égard, à notre égard.

#### Thème. 13.

<sup>1</sup> My father, mother and sisters are in the country. His uncle and aunt know it. I thank you for (de) your good and useful services. He is a friend of mine. I found a pencil of yours. Where are you, daughter? Here I am, mother. Come, friends, let us work. He will never betray <sup>1</sup> me, for he is my friend and protector<sup>2</sup>. We changed our mind<sup>3</sup> when we heard that news. He has worked much more for our good <sup>4</sup> than for his own. A cousin of ours came yesterday to see us. Give me my dictionary and grammar<sup>5</sup>. My mother has [a] pain in (a) her head. I have [a] pain in my ear<sup>6</sup>. The man who fell from the roof <sup>7</sup> of our house, dislocated (se démit) his wrist<sup>8</sup>. In (a) the last battle<sup>9</sup> our general lost his right leg, and I was wounded <sup>10</sup> in my shoulder<sup>11</sup>.

1) trahir. 2) See p. 220; 2, last line. 3) avis, m. 4) le bien. 5) grammaire, f. 6) oreille. 7) toit, m. 8) poignet, m. 9) bataille, f. 10) blesser, reg. v. 11) épaule, f.

14.

He tells<sup>1</sup> a falsehood<sup>1</sup> as often as (toutes les fois qu') he opens his month. Paris is a large city, its streets are too narrow<sup>2</sup>. I particularly<sup>3</sup> admire (I adm. p.) its rich warehouses<sup>4</sup>. Windsor is a fine town; I admire its situation, walks<sup>5</sup> and streets. London has its beauties. I like the size<sup>6</sup> of its streets. This illness<sup>7</sup> is dangerous. I know its origin<sup>4</sup> and effects<sup>9</sup>. This is (voici) a fine tree; its fruit is delicious <sup>10</sup>. Every science has its principles. An illustrious (-stre) birth<sup>11</sup> receives from virtue its (see foot-note \*\*) p. 263) most shining<sup>18</sup> lustre. Mr. Dubois has sold his father's house and his own. That is a pretty figure, its head is well drawn <sup>13</sup>. One sees so many things in one's travels.

1) mensonge, m. 2) étroit, e. 3) surtout. 4) magasin, m. 5) promenade, f. 6) grandeur, f. 7) maladie, f. 8) origine, f. 9) effet, m. 10) See p. 220, 2) 5th ex. 11) naissance, f. 12) beau. 13) dessinée.

## Reading-lesson.

### Eudamida's.

Eudamidas de Corinthe fit, en mourant, un testament qui semblerait ridicule à tout autre qu'à un ami. Il touchait à sa dernière heure, et laissait sa mère et sa fille exposées à la plus cruelle indigence, n'ayant pour tout bien que deux fidèles amis, Carixène et Aréthus. Eudamidas ne fut point alarmé; il jugea des cœurs de ses amis par *le sien propre*, et il fit ce testament qui ne doit jamais être oublié. "Je lègue <sup>1</sup> à Aréthus le soin de nourrir ma mère, et de l'entretenir dans sa vieillesse; à Carixène le soin de marier ma fille, et de lui donner une dot<sup>2</sup> convenable: et, au cas que l'un des deux vienne à mourir, je substitue en sa part celui qui survivra."

Carixène étant mort quelque temps après, Aréthus exécuta la commission de toús lés déux; et, pour rendre son action plus illustre, il maria la fille de son ami et *la sienne* en un même jour, et leur donna à toutes deux une même dot. Quant à (as to) la mère, il la nourrit jusqu'à la mort. Si la générosité d'Aréthus est digne d'admiration, la noble hardiesse<sup>3</sup> et la confiance du testateur <sup>4</sup> l'est encore davantage; car celui qui a la résolution de faire un semblable<sup>5</sup> testament, est capable non-seulement de l'exécuter, mais de quelque chose encore de plus; et il n'est pas douteux qu'il n'eût nourri la mère de son ami, et marié sa fille, aussi bien que *la sienne propre*, même sans en être prié.

1) I bequeath. 2) dowry, portion. 3) boldness. 4) testator. 5) such, similar.

#### Conversation.

Que fit Eudamidas de Corinthe Il fit un testament bizarre. en mourant?

Était-il riche?

Au contraire il était très pauvre; mais il avait deux fidèles amis.

- Que légua-t-il donc à ses amis?
- Devait-il la marier sans dot?
- Est-ce qu'il ne prévit pas le cas où l'un des deux amis viendrait à mourir?
- Les deux amis exécutérentils ce que le testament leur imposa?
- Et l'autre que fit-il?
- De quelle manière l'exécutat-il?
- Et comment agit-il envers la mère d'Eudamidas?

- Il légua à son ami Aréthus le soin de nourrir sa vieille mère et à Carixène le soin de marier sa fille.
- Non, avec une dot convenable.
- Si; pour ce cas, il substitua l'un à l'autre.
- L'un d'eux, Carixène, mourut quelque temps après.
- Aréthus exécuta la mission de tous les deux.
- Il maria la fille de son ami et la sienne en un même jour et leur donna à toutes deux une dot égale.
- Il la nourrit jusqu'à sa mort.

# SEVENTH LESSON.

### Of numerals.

(See the First Part, p. 55--60.)

§. 1. When the cardinal numbers are used substantively, they take the masculine article, as:

Un un, a one; - le trois, the three.

Ce huit est mal fait, this eight is badly made.

§. 2. The English one must be rendered by l'un, l'une, when it is preceded by a proper name and followed by a number, as:

Thalès était l'un des sept sages de la Grèce.

Thales was one of the seven sages of Greece.

If un is the subject of a sentence, no article is used before it, as:

Un des sept sages de la Grèce s'appelait Thalès. One of the seven Grecian sages was called Thales. §. 3. A and one before hundred and thousand are not translated. Ex.:

A hundred and twenty horses, cent vingt chevaux.

In the year one thousand one hundred and sixty. L'an (or simply en) mil cent soixante.

§. 4. Observe the following expressions with numerals:

Un à un, one by one.

Deux à deux, two by two.

L'un après l'autre, one after the other.

Vers six heures or vers les six heures, by six o'clock. Vers midi or vers le midi, towards (by) twelve o'clock. Une heure et demie, one hour and a half or half past one. Deux heures moins un quart, a quarter to two. Trois heures et (un) quart, a quarter past three. Tous les deux jours, every other day. D'aujourd'hui en huit, to-day week. D'aujourd'hui en quinze, to-day fortnight. Dans quinze jours, in a fortnight. Il y a huit jours, a week ago. Il y a um an, a year or a twelvemonth ago.

§. 5. More than and less than before numbers are rendered *plus de* and *moins de* instead of *plus que* and *moins que*. Ex.:

I have spent more than a hundred francs. J'ai dépensé plus de cent francs.

You have not less than ten mistakes in your exercise. Vous n'avez pas moins de dix fautes dans voire thème.

§. 6. Nearly before a number is translated près de. Ex.:

It is nearly five o'clock, il est près de cinq heures.

#### Thème. 15.

This six is well made; but this nine is badly made. Henry the fourth was one of the greatest kings of France. Numa is one of the seven kings of Rome. America was discovered <sup>1</sup> in the year one thousand four hundred and minety two. The shepherd <sup>2</sup> has sold a hundred sheep. When do you dine? I dine at 12 o'clock, sometimes at one o'clock. I sup <sup>3</sup> at half past eight, and I go to bed <sup>4</sup> at midnight. Is it four o'clock? No, Sir, it is a quarter to four. I must go out at a quarter past four. We went in (*entrâmes*) one by one. My brother will set out this day week, and will come back in a fortnight. Has Mr. L. three children? No, he has (*en a*) more than three. He has four or five. This book costs less than ten francs. How old is your son Charles? He is <sup>5</sup> nearly fourteen years old <sup>5</sup>. I have a French lesson <sup>6</sup> every other day.

1) fut découverte. 2) le berger. 3) souper. 4) se coucher. 5) See I. Part, p. 56, §. 5. — 6) une leçon de françois.

# Reading-lesson.

### La terre.

La terre, la plus petite des planètes, est celle que nous habitons. C'est un globe dont la forme ressemble beaucoup à celle d'une orange, car elle est un peu aplatie vers les pôles au sud et au nord. — La terre tourne continuellement autour du soleil, et cela se *fait* de deux manières: d'abord elle tourne sur son propre axe toutes les vingt-quatre heures, et c'est ce qui nous donne alternativement le jour et la nuit; puis elle fait sa révolution autour du soleil en trois cent soixante-cinq jours, cinq heures et quelques minutes, et cette révolution périodique produit<sup>1</sup> les quatre saisons, savoir: le printemps, l'été, l'automne, l'hiver. La terre a cinq mille quatre cents milles<sup>2</sup> de circuit, et sa surface se monte<sup>3</sup> à plus de neuf millions de milles carrés<sup>4</sup>.

Elle est divisée en cinq parties que l'on nomme les cinq parties du monde, savoir: l'Europe, l'Asie, l'Afrique, l'Amérique et la Polynésic ou les Terres australes.

1) produces. 2) miles. 3) amounts to. 4) square miles.

#### Conversation.

Quelle est la planète que<br/>nous habitons?C'est la terre, la plus petite<br/>des planètes.Quelle forme a-t-elle?Elle est un globe dont la forme

ressemble à celle d'une orange.

La terre reste-t-elle fixe?

- En combien de temps faitelle sa révolution autour du soleil?
- Que produit cette révolution périodique ?

Quel circuit la terre a-t-elle? Comment est-elle divisée?

- Non, elle tourne autour du soleil et en même temps sur son propre axe.
- En trois cent soixante-cinq jours, cinq heures et quelques minutes.
- Elle produit les quatre saisons: savoir: le printemps, l'été, l'automne et l'hiver.
- Elle a 5400 milles de circuit.
- Elle est divisée en cinq parties que l'on nomme les cinq parties du monde, savoir: l'Europe, l'Asie etc.

# EIGHTH LESSON.

# Of adjectives.

(See the First Part, p. 65-67.)

A. Concord of the adjective with the noun.

§. 1. In French, the adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it relates:

Une feuille verte, a green leaf.

De bons amis, good friends.

Les prunes sont mûres, the plums are ripe.

1) If it belongs to two or more nouns in the singular, it must be in the plural:

Le pauvre et le riche sont égaux devant Dieu. The poor and the rich are alike before God.

J'ai trouvé la porte et la fenêtre fermées.

I have found the door and the window shut.

La clémence et la majesté étaient peintes sur son front. Clemency and majesty were imprinted on his brow.

. 2) If the substantives are of *different* genders, and joined by *et*, and, the adjectives must be in the *masculine* plural:

Mon frère et ma sour sont très heuroux. My brother and sister are very happy.

Un crayon et une plume bien taillés (not taillée). A pencil and a well-made pen.

3) When the two adjectives are joined by ou, or, or when the conjunction is left out, the adjective agrees only with the latter noun:

Un château ou une maison ruinée. A ruined castle or house. Voici une souris ou un rat mort. Here lies a dead mouse or rat. Le fer, la flamme était toute prête. The sword, the flame was quite ready.

§. 2. The following adjectives and participles have a peculiarity which must be noticed: *demi*, half; *nu*, bare; *excepté*, except; *y* compris, included; supposé, supposed; *ci-joint*, inclosed, annexed. They are invariable when they precede the noun; *demi* and *nu* are then joined with their noun by a hyphen. Ex.:

Une demi-heure, half an hour. Marcher nu-pieds, to walk barefooted. Marcher nu-tête, to walk bareheaded. Feu mes tantes, my late aunts. Except hes deux premières pages. Except the two first pages. Y compris la somme de cent francs. The sum of a hundred francs included.

Suppose ces faits, these facts supposed.

But they must agree with their noun when they follow it, as:

Une heure et demie, an hour and a half. Avoir les jambes nues, to have bare feet. Les deux premières pages exceptées. The two first pages excepted. Copie de ma lottre est ci-jointe.

A copy of my letter is annexed.

§. 3. Feu, late, is invariable as the preceding ones, when it is before the article or possessive adjective; it is declined when following it, as:

Feu la reine or la feue reine, the late queen. Feu mes tantes or mes feues tantes, my late aunts.

§. 4. Some adjectives, as: bon, vite, bas etc., may be used adverbially; then of course, they are not declined. Ex.:

Ces roses sentent très bon (not bonnes). These roses smell very sweetly. Les cerfs courent très vite. The stags run very fast.

§. 5. If the expression avoir l'air, to look, is followed by an adjective, this latter remains unchanged when a moral or intellectual quality is spoken of, as:

Ces dames ont l'air bon.

These ladies look good-natured.

But if a bodily or organic quality is mentioned, or when the adjective refers rather to the subject, than to the word *air*, the adjective agrees with the subject of the sentence. In this latter case the verb to be must be understood, as:

Ces pierres ont l'air très dures. These stones seem to be very hard. Cette demoiselle a l'air bien faite (i. e. paraît bien faite). This young lady appears well-made. Madame F. a l'air mécontente (i. e. d'être mécontente). Mrs. F. appears to be discontented.

§. 6. If an noun is accompanied by an adjective in the superlative, the latter always agrees with it in gender and number. When the superlative follows, the article must be repeated:

La plus belle femme, the finest woman. Les gens les plus riches, the richest people. §. 7. When the superlative follows, it always remains in the nominative, though the noun may stand in other cases. Ex.:

S. N. & Ac. L'homme le plus actif, the most active man

G. de l'homme le plus actif, of the most active man

D. à l'homme le plus actif, to the most active man.

Pl. N. & Ac. Les hommes les plus actifs, the most active men.

G. des hommes les plus actifs, etc.

D. aux écoliers les plus appliqués, etc.

§. 8. Le plus and le moins are sometimes used adverbially before a participle; then, of course, the latter only agrees, and le is indeclinable, as:

Nous ne pleurons pas toujours quand nous sommes le plus affligés.

For plus — plus, the more — the more, and moins — moins, the less — the less, which are conjunctions, see 34th lesson.

#### Thème. 16.

I have a good friend. The leaves are green. These pears are riper than those apples. His brother and cousin are arrived. Miss Caroline and her sister are very handsome. Charles and Louisa are very industrious. Men and women are mortal. My son and daughter are happy. His uncle and aunt are dead. Lewis XIV had in France an absolute<sup>1</sup> power<sup>2</sup> and authority  $(-t\ell)$ . She left her room and her trunk<sup>3</sup> open. I found the windows and the shutters<sup>4</sup> shut. Give these presents to the most industrious pupils. Miss Emma is the daughter of the richest man in (de) this town. I remained there (y) [for] half an hour. The child slept two hours and a half. I have read the whole book, except the two last chapters<sup>5</sup>. The late queen was opposed<sup>6</sup> to that measure ?. Why do you go barefooted? A divine service for the late king Lewis XVII was performed<sup>8</sup> at the church of Notre-Dame, at Paris, on the (le) 14th of May 1814. These pears appear to be ripe. We are (the) (sing.) happiest when we are (the) most contented.

1) absolu. 2) pouvoir, m. 3) coffre, m. 4) volet, m. 5) chapitre, m. 6) s'opposait. 7) mesure, f. 8) eut lieu.

# B. Place of the adjective.

The principal rules have already been given in the seventeenth lesson (p. 70). We have to add here only the following.

When two adjectives refer to the same noun, we have to examine what kind of adjectives they are.

§. 1. If both of them are such as precede, when single, they may both remain before the noun, if one of them forms with the noun, as it were, but one idea, as:

Une jolie petite fille,\*) a pretty little girl. Un beau jeune homme,\*\*) a handsome young man.

§. 2. If both preceding adjectives are taken in their full sense, they must be joined by et, and; as:

Un grand et beau jardin, a large, beautiful garden.

§. 3. An adjective of the first class (see p. 70, A), when connected by a conjunction with another adjective, which is to be put after the substantive, is itself placed after the noun. Ex.:

Une action belle \*\*\*) et courageuse. A fine, courageous action.

Une femme petite, mais bien faite. A short but well-made woman.

§. 4. In English two or more adjectives may qualify a substantive, without a conjunction; but in French *et* (or sometimes *mais*) is always placed before the last of the adjectives, if these follow their noun. Ex.:

Une dame riche, jeune et aimable.

A young, rich amiable lady.

Un homme instruit, modeste et estimé de tout le monde. A well-instructed, modest and generally esteemed man.

\*\*\*) 'A fine action' would be: Une belle action.

<sup>\*)</sup> In Latin filiola.

<sup>\*\*) ==</sup> youth (juvenis).

# Thème. 17.

Charles is a handsome young  $(\S 1)$  man. Henry is a pretty little boy. This is a long (and) tedious <sup>1</sup> book. My friend is an amiable and virtuous man. He has a large and beautiful house. This is a drowned <sup>2</sup> man or woman. For this place I want an aged man or woman. Is it the elder brother or sister? The savage lived in a large, damp<sup>3</sup> cavern. Spain is a fertile country but badly cultivated <sup>4</sup>. A plain <sup>5</sup>, simple and natural style is the only one to be recommended <sup>6</sup>. Brave and trusty <sup>7</sup> men are generally humane<sup>8</sup> and merciful<sup>9</sup>. This is an interesting <sup>10</sup> and instructive study <sup>11</sup>.

1) ennuyeux. 2) noyé, e. 3) humide. 4) cultivé, e. 5) uni. 6) recommandable. 7) constant. 8) humain. 9) miséricordieux. — 10) intéressant. 11) étude, f.

C. Government of adjectives.

The government of adjectives is either a substantive or a verb, preceded by one of the prepositions de, d, en etc.

§.1. Adjectives and participles which denote plenty, desire, scarcity or want and most of those followed in English by of, with, from, govern in French the preposition de, as:

La vie est pleine de misères. Life is full of miseries.

Le jeune homme fut comblé d'honneur (loaded with h.).

§. 2. The following adjectives govern also the genitive, i.e. de:

Avide, greedy, desirous.	las, tired, wearied.
capable, capable.	libre, free.
content, contented, pleased.	mécontent, discontent.
digne, worthy.	plein, rempli, (full.
exempt, free.	rempli, V
honteux, ashamed.	satisfait, satisfied.
jaloux, jealous.	sûr, sure, etc.
Ex.: Avide de louange, greedy	of (after) praise.

Il est digne de récompense, he is worthy of reward.

§. 3. Adjectives denoting fitness, unfitness, disposition, inclination, readiness or any habit, require the following object to be put in the *dative* case. Ex.:

Il est propre à tout, he is fit for anything.

Le cheval est utile à l'homme, the horse is useful to man.

§. 4. The following adjectives govern the *dative* in French and the *genitive* in English:

Attentif à, heedful of. sensible à, sensible of. insensible à, insensible of or to.

Ex.: Soyez attentifs au danger, be heedful of (the) danger. Je suis sensible à votre bonté, I am sensible of your kindness.

§. 5. Some adjectives are followed in French by the preposition a and in English by in; such are:

Curieux à, curious in. habile à, skilful in. exact à, punctual in. patient à, patient in. impatient à, impatient in. zélé à, zealous in.

Ex.: Il est habile à tout, he is skilful in doing all. Elle est exacte à son service, she is punctual in her service.

§. 6. The following adjectives which are followed in English by to or towards when they express behaviour, require in French the preposition *envers*:

Affable envers, affable to.	poli envers, polite to.
bon envers (or pour), kind to.	reconnaissant envers, thankful to.
juste envers, just to.	respectueux envers, respectful to.
crucl envers, cruel to.	généreux envers, generous to.
honnête envers, civil to.	libéral envers, liberal to.

Ex.:  $\Pi$  a été très bon envers moi (or pour moi). He has been very kind to me.

Soyez poli envers tout le monde. Be polite (civil) to every-body.

§. 7. All others not mentioned in the foregoing §§ and which take in English the preposition to, are followed in French by the *dative*. Ex.:

That is easy to say, cela est facile à dire.

Religion is necessary to man, la religion est nécessaire à l'homme.

He was deaf to my prayers, il était sourd à mes prières.

### Thème. 18.

We were loaded <sup>1</sup> with honours. The basket<sup>2</sup> is full of fruit. Do not be so greedy of (after) riches. My cousin is worthy of your friendship. Are you pleased with your horse? Human life<sup>3</sup> is never free from troubles<sup>4</sup>. Voltaire was always greedy of praise and insatiable of glory. I am not satisfied with your exercise. That old man is not fit for that place; he is not punctual in his engagements. My servant is always ready to do his duty<sup>5</sup>. Nature<sup>3</sup> is content with little. Many people are dissatisfied with their condition. Let us be kind to everybody. These children are inclined<sup>6</sup> to idleness<sup>7</sup>. That is easy to say, but difficult to do. Scipio Africanus<sup>8</sup> was respectful to his mother, liberal to his sisters, good to his servants, just and affable to everybody. Children must<sup>9</sup> not be cruel to animals. He is insensible to all the remonstrances<sup>10</sup> of his friends.

1) comblé. 2) le panier. 3) put the article. 4) peine, f. — 5) devoir, m. 6) enclin. 7) paresse, f. 8) Scipion l'Africain. — 9) doivent. 10) remontrance, f.

## D. Adjectives of dimension.

§. 1. Adjectives relating to the dimension or size of objects, are expressed in French either by an adjective or a substantive. Thus long can be rendered by the adjective long or longue (f.) de, or by the noun de longueur. Observe that in the first case de follows, in the second precedes, and that these adjectives are placed after the substantive and before the dimension. Ex.:

A table ten fect long, une table longue de dix pieds. une table de dix pieds de longueur.

A tower a hundred feet high, (une tour haute de cent piede. (une tour de cent piede de hauteur.

§. 2. The verb to be connected with such adjectives must be expressed by être, when in French the adjective of dimension is preferred to the noun, as:

This table is ten feet long. Cette table est longue de dix pieds. That tower is a hundred feet high. Cette tour - là est haute de cent pieds.

S. 3. But the verb to be must be rendered by avoir when the dimension is expressed by a noun. Ex.:

This table is ten feet long. Cette table a dix pieds de longueur. That tower is a hundred feet high. Cette tour-là a cent pieds de hauteur.

§. 4. In a similar manner the age is expressed either with âgé de and the verb être, or with the verb avoir without the word *âgé*. Ex.:

A -boy eight years old, un garçon â g é d e huit ans.

\ je suis â g é d e vingt ans. I am twenty years old,

( j'ai vingt ans.

(The latter is much preferred.)

8.5. The word by, which is sometimes used in English after a comparative, to denote how much a thing exceeds another, is rendered in French by de, not by par. Ex.:

Charles is taller than I by three inches. Charles est plus grand que moi de trois pouces.

### Thème. 19.

I have seen a tree ninety feet high. We have a house eighty feet long and forty five high. This stick is three feet long. This plank<sup>1</sup> is two inches<sup>2</sup> thick<sup>3</sup>. This tree is fifty feet high. London bridge 4 is nine hundred and twenty feet long, fifty five high and fifty six wide<sup>5</sup>. The monument of London stands (est placé) on a pedestal<sup>6</sup> twenty feet high. This ditch is twelve feet deep<sup>7</sup>. The famous mine of Potosi

1) planche, f. 2) pouce, m. 3) épais, épaisse. 4) Le pont de Londres. 5) large or - largeur. 6) piédestal. 7) profondeur. Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II. 19

in (dans le) Peru is more than (de) fifteen hundred feet deep<sup>7</sup>. My room is forty feet long and thirty wide. The walls of Algiers<sup>8</sup> are fourteen feet thick and thirty feet high. Kingstreet<sup>9</sup> is about <sup>10</sup> a mile<sup>11</sup> and a half long and sixty five feet wide. My brother is elder than I by two years. I am taller than Robert by seven inches. Westminster-bridge is forty four feet broad<sup>5</sup>; the free way <sup>12</sup> under the arches of this bridge is eight hundred and seventy feet; it consists <sup>18</sup> of fourteen piers <sup>14</sup>, thirteen large arches, and two small ones; the two middle <sup>15</sup> piers are each (*chacun*) seventeen feet wide, and contain two hundred tons <sup>16</sup> of solid stones.

8) Alger. 9) La rue royale. 10) environ. 11) mille, m. – 12) the free way = le passage. 13) il consiste. 14) pile, f. 15) du milieu. 16) tonneau, m.

### Reading-lesson.

### L'éléphant.

L'éléphant est le plus gros des quadrupèdes; il habite les forêts épaisses 1, les bords des fleuves et les lieux humides. Ses jambes informes soutiennent un corps épais et lourd<sup>2</sup>. On aperçoit à peine sa petite queue<sup>3</sup>, tandis que de larges oreilles ombragent<sup>4</sup> les deux côtés de sa tête. Ses yeux sont petits en proportion de son corps énorme. Son nez qui se prolonge de plusieurs pieds et qui est très flexible, lui sert de main. A l'aide de ce nez, qu'on appelle trompe<sup>5</sup>, il puise (draws) de l'eau, cueille les herbes et les fleurs, dénoue<sup>6</sup> les cordes, ouvre et ferme les portes, débouche les bouteilles, ramasse par terre la plus petite pièce de monnaie; en un mot, il fait presque tout ce que nous faisons avec nos doigts. Quand il a soif, il remplit d'eau cette trompe, et boit ensuite comme s'il vidait 7 une bouteille. Il se nourrit d'herbes, de feuilles, de fruits et de riz (rice). Il mange environ cent cinquante livres d'herbes par jour.

De chaque côté de sa trompe sortent deux énormes dents, qu'on appelle défenses. Ces défenses sont des armes terribles, dont il épouvante<sup>8</sup> les plus féroces animaux. Elle fournissent une matière précieuse, qu'on appelle ivoire, et pèsent<sup>9</sup> jusqu'à cent livres chacune. (To be continued p. 286.)

1) thick. 2) heavy. 3) tail. 4) to shade, over-shade. — 5) trunk or proboscis. 6) to untie. 7) to empty. 8) to terrify. 9) to weigh.

### Conversation.

Que savez-vous (do you know) de l'éléphant? Où habite-t-il?

Qu'est-ce qu'il a de particulier?

De quoi se nourrit-il?

Combien mange-t-il par jour? D'où vient l'ivoire?

- L'éléphant est le plus gros des quadrupèdes.
  - Il habite les forêts épaisses, les bords des fleuves et les lieux humides.
  - Il a une trompe, à l'aide de laquelle il puise de l'eau, cueille les herbes et les fleurs, dénoue des cordes etc.
  - Il se nourrit d'herbes, de feuilles, de fruits et de riz.

Environ 150 livres.

L'ivoire se fait des défenses de l'éléphant qui pèsent jusqu'à cent livres chacune.

## NINTH LESSON.

### I. Of the personal pronouns.

§. 1. Conjunctive pronouns, in the first and second person, when the subject, should be repeated before every verb, as long as this is in a simple tense. Ex.:

Je vous aime et je vous aimerai toujours. I love you and (1) shall always love you.

Vous dites et vous direz toujours.

You say and (you) will always say.

§. 2. Pronouns, when the object (régime), are repeated before every verb. Ex.:

Je 'le vois et je l'entends, I see and hear it. Il nous ennuie et nous obsède sans cesse. He wearies (us) and besets us unceasingly.

Note. With a compound tense, or when the pronouns are in the third person, they are hardly ever repeated, as:

Je l'ai vu et entendu, I have seen and heard it.

19\*

Il écoute et ne peut comprendre etc. He listens and cannot conceive etc.

§. 3. When an emphasis is laid upon the personal pronoun, it must be repeated in French, but then, the first is disjunctive. Very often it is then preceded by c'est, or for the third person plural, by ce sont. Ex.:

I say so, { moi, je le dis. c'est moi, qui le dis.

H'e has pretended this, il ui, il a prétendu cela. c'est lui qui a prétendu cela.

We have not said so, It is not we who said so,  $\begin{pmatrix} nous & navons & pas & dit cela, & nous, & nous & navons & pas & dit cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit & cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit & cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & ons & dit & cela. & ce & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & n'est & pas & nous & qui & av & n'est & pas & nous & n'est & pas & nous & n'est & pas & n'est & n'est & pas & n'est & n$ 

They have done it, { eux, ils l'ont fait. ce sont eux qui l'ont fait.

Note. Observe that in such cases the verb is put in the same number and person as the pronoun, which is the antecedent of the relative qui, as:

Is it I who told this news? Est-ce moi qui ai dit cette nouvelle?

§. 4. When a verb relates to subjects of different persons, it is put in the plural with nous, if one of the several subjects is in the first person, - or with vous, if the subjects are in the second and third person. Ex.:

My brother and I shall go into the country.

Mon frère et moi, nous irons à la campagne.

or: Nous irons à la campagne, mon frère et moi.

I told you and him or both you and him. Je vous l'ai dit à toi et à lui.

You and your friend will come with me. Vous et votre ami, vous viendrez avec moi.

§. 5. When the verb governs two pronouns (both being persons) one in the accusative, the other in the dative, the dative is a disjunctive (see p. 99). Ex.:

Je vais vous présenter à lui.

I am going to introduce you to him.

§. 6. When two personal pronouns in the dative come after a verb, both should be disjunctive and therefore after the verb. Ex.:

I forgive both you and her. Je pardonne à vous et à elle.\*) I speak to him and not to you. Je parle à lui et non à vous.

§. 7. The pronouns himself, herself, themselves, when with a *reflected* verb, are expressed, in French, by se; otherwise by *lui-même*, elle-même, euxmêmes, elles-mêmes. Ex.:

He (she) does not know himself (herself). Il (elle) ne se connaît pas. They highly distinguished themselves. Ils (elles) se distinguierent beaucoup. — But: Has he done it himself? Yes, himself. L'a-t-il fait lui-méme? Oui, lui-méme.

§. 8. Soi, one's self, is used in a sentence of a general or vague sense. Ex.:

Il est sage de parler rarement de soi. It is wise to talk seldom of one's self.

§. 9. The pronoun itself, preceded by a preposition and relating to an inanimate object, is expressed by soi, when the antecedent noun is taken in an abstract sense. Ex.:

L'aimant attire le fer à soi. The loadstone attracts iron to itself. La vertu est aimable en soi. Virtue is amiable in itself.

§. 10. But it is rendered by *elle*, when the inanimate object is of an *individual* nature and of the *feminine* gender. Ex.:

\*) This sentence may also be translated thus: Je vous pardonne ainsi qu'à elle. La rivière entraîna tout avec elle. The river carried everything away with itself. Ces raisons sont solides en elles-mêmes. Those reasons are solid in themselves.

§. 11. When however such inanimate objects, not being abstract nouns, are *masculine*, another way of expressing 'itself' or 'it' must be chosen. Ex.:

I am so fond of coffee that I cannot live without it. Jaime tant le café que je ne puis vivre sans en prendre.

§. 12. The English personal pronouns are always rendered by the disjunctive (moi, toi, lui etc.), when they are used alone, without a verb, or when after a preposition or after que. Ex.:

Qui a fait cela? Moi, lui, elle etc. Who has done that? I, he, she etc. Voulez-vous aller avec moi, avec lui, avec eux? etc. Will you go with me, with him, with them? etc. Je parle de toi, d'elle, d'elles, de vous etc. I am speaking of thee, of her, of them, of you etc. Il est plus jeune que moi, he is younger than I.

Thème. 20.

I believe and will always' believe that you were (avez eu) wrong. He says so, but he does not believe it. I honour and respect him, but I do not love him. We come and go. A passionate<sup>1</sup> temper<sup>2</sup> renders a man unfit<sup>3</sup> for business<sup>4</sup>, deprives<sup>5</sup> him of his reason, and makes him unfit (makes that he is not fit) (propre) for society<sup>4</sup>. I have always loved and esteemed her. They (on) flatter<sup>6</sup> and praise us. They have flattered and praised us. It is I who have written it. It is they who have seen it. They and my brother are come. You like the town and I the country. I speak to you and to him. I forgive [both] you and him (dat.), because I hope (that) you will behave<sup>7</sup> better for the future (à *l'avenir*). The governor is your enemy; if you apply<sup>8</sup> to him (§. 5), you will never succeed<sup>9</sup>. I do not trust<sup>10</sup> to (à) him, but I should trust to his brother. That man works for himself. Each acts for himself (§. 7). If you do this for him and for her, you will greatly oblige me. One ought not<sup>11</sup> [to] speak of one's self, unless (qu') with modesty. That man is too proud; he does not know himself. The moon brought<sup>12</sup> a change<sup>13</sup> of weather with it (§. 10).

passionné. 2) caractère. 3) inepte. 4) put the def. article.
 priver. 6) flatter. 7) se conduire. 8) s'adresser à qn. 9) réussir.
 10) se fier à qn. 11) On ne doit pas. 12) amena. 13) changement, m.

## II. Particular use of en and y.

§: 1. The pronouns it and them, used with regard to inanimate objects, are rendered by **en**, when the French verb requires *de* or governs the genitive, by whatever preposition they are preceded in English. Ex.:

A-t-on parlé de mon ouvrage? Oui, on en a parlé. Did they speak of my work? Yes, they spoke of it. Vous m'avez rendu service. Je vous en remercie. You have done me a service. I thank you for it.

§. 2. En is further used to express the words some and any, when they come after a verb, and supply the place of an antecedent substantive, as:

Voici du jambon; en veux-tu? Donnez-m'en, s'il vous plaît. Here is ham, will you have some? Give me some, if you please.

Jai des noix, en voulez-vous? Donnez-m'en trois.

I have some walnuts; will you have any? Give me three of them.

Donnez-lui-en, give him some. Offrez-leur-en, offer them some.

Note. Observe 1) that, when en meets with another personal pronoun, it goes last; and 2) that, in the affirmative imperative, moi and toi are changed into m' and t' before en, as: donnez-m'en.

§. 3. Y stands for in it, into it, to it, there, and with the verb *penser* for of it, of them. Like the other *conjunctive* pronouns, it takes its place imme-

diately before the verb, except with the affirmative imperative, where it follows it. \*) Ex.:

Votre père est-il au jardin! Oui, il y est.

Is your father in the garden? Yes, he is in it (there). Allez-vous au spectacle? Non, Monsieur, je n'y vais pas. Are you going to the theatre? No, Sir, I am not.

Y pensez-vous? Je n'y pense plus.

Do you think of it? I do no more think of it.

Alley-y, go there.

N'y allez pas, do not go there.

### Thème, 21,

We speak of it. You speak of them. I am sorry for it. I have heard that your uncle is arrived, and I am very glad of it. She spoke to him of it. Talk<sup>1</sup> no more of it, for I will not hear of it. Have you [any] books? Yes, I have. Have you bought some flowers? Yes, I have bought some. Give me three of them, if you please. You have bread, give some to the poor. I thank you for it. Do not thank me for it. Do you not see the beauty of them? I study that language<sup>2</sup>, I know its rules well. Since<sup>3</sup> you have no apples in your garden, I will send you some. If I had money, I would give you some. Send us some. Send me none. Mr. Adam is a true friend; I shall never forget the services, which I have received 4 from him. Is your father in his garden? Yes, he is (in it). Do you agree<sup>5</sup> to it? Yes, I agree to it. Are you<sup>6</sup> just returned from the country? No, I am going thither. We shall think of it. We have forced 7 them to it. There is a ditch<sup>8</sup>, take care<sup>9</sup> [not] to fall into it. Our orchard<sup>10</sup> is very fruitful, we see all sorts 11 of fruits in it. It is (c'est) a good book, one (on) reads excellent things in it. This picture is very good, put a frame 12 to it.

 parler. 2) langue, f. 3) puisque. 4) reçu. 5) consentir.
 revenez-vous? 7) forcés. 8) un fossé. 9) prenez garde. — 10) verger, m. 11) toutes sortes de. 12) une bordure.

\*) Except moi and toi which follow the word y, with the affirmative imperative, as: Conduisez-y-moi, rends-y-toi (go there), .whereas we say: Conduisez - nous - y. When both en and y happen to be governed by the same verb, y stands before en. Ex.: Je vous y en porterai, I will bring you some there.

III. Of the supplying pronouns le, la, les.

§. 1. The pronouns le, la, les are used in French to supply the place of an antecedent substantive or adjective, or of a phrase. In such case, their equivalent in English is so or it, either expressed or understood.

§. 2. When *le* refers to a noun with the *definite* article, it takes the gender and number of that noun. Examples:

Étes-vous la mère de ces enfants? Oui, je la suis.
Are you the mother of these children? Yes, I am.
Mesdemoiselles, étes-vous les nièces de Madame B.? Oui, Madame, nous les sommes.
Ladics, are you Mrs. B.'s nièces? Yes, Madam, we are.
Est-ce là voire chapeau? Oui, ce l'est.
Is this your hat? Yes, it is.
Sont-ce là vos domestiques? Oui, ce les sont.
Are those your servants? Yes, they are.
Sont-ce là vos gants neufs? Non, ce ne les sont pas.
Are those your new gloves? No, they are not.

§. 3. But when le supplies the place of an adjective, of a noun used adjectively, or of a phrase, it remains unchanged. Ex.:

Depuis quand êtes-vous malade? Je le suis depuis huit jours. How long have you been ill? I have been (so) these eight days.

Ces dames sont-elles mariées? Oui, elles le sont. Are these ladies married? Yes, they are (it or so). Étes-vous chrétiens? Oui, nous le sommes.

Are you Christians? Yes, we are.

Il le fera, s'il le peut.

He will do it, if he can.

A.

Note. Le must be declined  $(\S. 2)$ , when the adjective is used substantively, as:

Mademoiselle, êtes-vous la malade! Oui, je la suis.

§. 4. Le should also be inserted in sentences containing a comparative, after que - ne, as:

Il est maintenant plus actif qu'il ne l'était auparavant. He is now more active than he was before.

Elle est moins riche qu'on ne le pense. She is not so rich as one would think.

#### Thème. 22.

Is that your book? Yes, it is. Are those your books? Yes, they are. Are you the mistress of the house? No, I am not. Are these boys the pupils of Mr. Miller? Yes, they are. Are you my friend's sisters? Yes, we are. You want some men of good will'? We are all so. Are these your horses? Yes, they are. Are the brothers rich? No, they are not. Are the house and garden large? Yes, they are. Is not this pretty girl your gardener's daughter? Yes, Madam, she is. We need<sup>2</sup> only think ourselves happy and we shall be so. Young ladies, are you English? Yes, we are. Are you physicians? Yes, Sir, we are. Are you the physicians? Yes, Sir, we are. Is he sorry<sup>3</sup>? No, he is not. Is she rich? Yes, she is. Are those gentlemen brothers? Yes, they are. Are you still my friend? Yes, I am. Are you the sister of Mrs. Adam? Yes, I am. Are you the ladies whom my mother expects? Yes, we are. Because she is pretty, she must not imagine<sup>4</sup> that she will always be so. We were embarrassed <sup>5</sup> and are so yet (encore). Children ought to (doivent) apply<sup>6</sup> themselves to their studies as much as they can  $(\S. 8)$ .

de bonne volonté.
 nous n'avons qu'à nous croire.
 triste.
 il ne faut pas qu'elle s'imagine.
 embarrassés.
 s'appliquer.

### Reading lesson.

### L'éléphant (Continuation).

L'éléphant vit (*lives*) au - delà de cent cinquante ans, quand il est libre. Ces animaux marchent ordinairement de compagnie: le plus âgé conduit la troupe; le second d'âge marche le dernier; les jeunes et les femelles sont au milieu des autres; les mères portent leurs petits et les tiennent embrassés de leurs trompes.

L'éléphant dompté<sup>1</sup> est le plus doux et le plus patient de tous les animaux. Il s'attache à celui qui le soigne<sup>2</sup>; il le caresse, et semble deviner<sup>3</sup> tout ce qui peut lui plaire. En peu de temps il comprend les signes et même la parole. Il reçoit les ordres de son maître avec attention et les exécute avec prudence. Un éléphant domestique rend autant de service que six bons chevaux.

Ils ne cassent ni endommagent rien de ce qu'on leur confie. Ils posent doucement les paquets qu'ils portent, et les rangent dans l'endroit<sup>4</sup> qu'on leur montre. Ils essaient avec leurs trompes flexibles, s'ils sont bien situés, et quand un tonneau<sup>5</sup> commence à rouler, ils vont d'eux - mêmes chercher des pierres pour l'établir solidement.

1) to tame. 2) to take care. 3) to guess. 4) place. 5) cask.

#### Conversation.

Il vit au-delà de 150 ans.
Oui; et quand il est dompté,
il est le plus doux de tous
les animaux.
Très intelligent; il comprend

- Se rend-il utile aux hommes?
- Les éléphants sont-ils maladroits (awkward)?
- Que font-ils quand un tonneau commence à rouler?
- les signes et même la parole.
- Un seul éléphant rend autant de service que six bons chevaux.
- Non, pas du tout; ils ne cassent ni endommagent rien de ce qu'on leur confie.
- Ils vont chercher des pierres pour les établir solidement.

## TENTH LESSON.

# Of the interrogative pronouns.

(See pp. 111. 112.)

In regard to the interrogative pronouns lequel? qui? que? and quoi? the following observations are to be made:

§. 1. Lequel, which?, always refers to some noun either preceding or immediately following, and agrees with it in gender and number. Ex.:

Voici deux routes, laquelle prendrez-vous? Here are two routes, which will you take?

Lesquels de vos souliers sont déchirés? Which of your shoes are worn out?

Note. The interrogative adjective what joined to a noun, is always expressed by quel, f. quelle (see p. 50, §. 2). Ex.: What book do you read, quel livre lisez-vous? What are your reasons, quelles sont vos raisons?

§. 2. The interrogative pronouns who? whose? to whom? whom? are expressed by Nom. qui? G. de qui (not dont)? D. à qui? Acc. qui (not que)? Ex.:

Who comes, qui vient? Of whom do you speak, de qui parlez-vous? Whom do you seek, qui cherchez-vous?

§. 3. Instead of the simple qui? the form qui est-ce qui, who? is often used for the Nom. and qui est-ce que, whom? for the Acc. This compound form is more euphonic and consequently more frequently employed. Examples:

Qui est-ce qui vient là, who comes there? Qui est-ce que vous cherchez, whom are you looking for?

§. 4. The same is the case with que? for which  $qu'est-ce \ qui?$  is often used in the Nom. and  $qu'est-ce \ que?$  in the Acc. The latter has a still stronger form  $qu'est-ce \ que \ c'est \ que \ \dots$ . In This compound form is generally used in the expression what is that? and also when a simple noun follows, e.g.:

Qu'est-ce que cela? Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela? { what is that? Qu'est-ce que la vie? Qu'est-ce que c'est que la vie? } what is life? §. 5. The pupil must be careful however not to confound qui est-ce qui, who? with qu' est-ce qui, what? the latter of which is used for the wanting Nominative of the conjunctive pronoun. We say:

• Who has offended you? ) qui est-ce qui vous a offensé? qui vous a offensé?

Whereas:

What (Nom.) makes you so sad? Qu'est-ce qui vous rend si triste? What (Acc.) are you { qu'est-ce que vous faites là? doing there? { que faites vous là? What is the news? { qu'y a -t-il de nouveau? qu'est-ce qu'il y a de nouveau?

§. 6. Que, what? as the conjunctive form can only be used before the verb or in close connection with it, but the disjunctive form quoi, what? stands either alone or after a preposition, or is even used as an interjection. Ex.:

Vous cherchez quelque chose; quoi donc? • You are looking for something; what is it? A quoi pense-t-il, of what does he think? De quoi parle-t-on, of what do people talk? Quoi! vous êtes marié! what! you are married!

Note. Quoi is also used instead qu'y a-t-il, as:

Quoi de plus magnifique qu'une belle nuit d'été! (instead of qu'y a-t-il de plus magnifique!)

What is there more splendid than a beautiful summer's night?

§. 7. In antithetical questions with or" (e.g. you or I?) the French usage departs very widely from the English inasmuch as the contrasted persons or objects, instead of standing in the Nominative as in English, are usually put in the Genitive with *de*. Ex.:

Qui de vous ou de moi remportera le prix? Who will take the prize, you or I? Qui a été le plus appliqué de toi ou d'Émile? (or: Qui de toi ou d'Émile a été le plus appliqué?) Who has been the most diligent, you or Emil?

§. 8. De may be omitted however when two or more, ou''s occur, and also when a de or des with lequel precedes. Ex.:

Qui a le plus de force, ou le vin ou les rois ou les femmes? (or also: ou du vin ou des rois ou des femmes?) Which is the mightiest, wine, kings or women?

- Laquelle des deux nations était la plus vertueuse, les Grecs ou les Romains? (But also: des Grecs ou des Romains?)
  - Which of the two nations was the more virtuous, the Greeks or the Romans?

#### Thème. 23.

Which of your brothers is married? Which of your sisters has (est) gone to England? Of all these pictures, which should you like best 1. Which of your daughters learns. Italian<sup>2</sup>? Here are two pencils, which will you take? What countries did Alexander the Great conquer<sup>3</sup>? What are your terms 4? Who goes there? 'To whom do you speak? For whom does a miser<sup>5</sup> hoard<sup>6</sup> riches<sup>7</sup>? Who will be bold<sup>8</sup> enough to attack him? Who are these women? Whose<sup>9</sup> gloves are these? Here are two grammars, to which do you give the preference? Who sustains 10 this globe in the air? What is more pleasant than to do good <sup>11</sup>? What is human life? What (Nom) should prevent <sup>12</sup> your father from buying (d'acheter) this house? A little more fame <sup>13</sup>, a little more wealth, --- what does all this signify 14? What are you speaking of? Of what do you accuse me? On (sur) what will you interrogate 15 him? What! Charles has been arrested <sup>16</sup>! Which of you has been sick, Emily or Emma? Which was the greatest man, Alexander, Cæsar or Napoleon the first?

1) le mieux. 2) put the article. 3) put: has conquered, conquis. 4) condition, f. 5) l'avare, m. 6) amasser. 7) richesse. 8) hardi. 9) See p. 111, §. 2, 2. à qui. 10) soutenir. 11) du bien. 12) empêcher. 13) gloire. 14) signifier. 15) interroger. 16) arrêté.

## Reading - lesson. \*)

Servilius se défend devant le peuple.

"Si l'on m'a fait venir ici pour me demander compte ' de ce qui s'est passé dans la dernière bataille où je commandais, je suis prêt à vous en instruire; mais si ce n'est qu'un prétexte pour me faire périr, comme je *le* soupçonne<sup>2</sup>, épargnez-moi<sup>3</sup> des paroles inutiles: voilà mon corps et ma vie que je vous abandonne, vous pouvez en disposer.

"Quel est donc mon crime? Quelle faute ai-je commise jusqu'ici? On m'accuse d'avoir perdu beaucoup de monde dans le dernier combat. Mais quel est le général qui puisse livrer des batailles contre une nation aguerrie<sup>4</sup> qui se défend courageusement, sans qu'il y ait de part et d'autre<sup>5</sup> du sang de répandu? Quelle divinité s'est-engagée envers le peuple romain, à lui faire remporter des victoires sans aucune perte 6? A qui fera-t-on croire que la gloire s'acquiert<sup>7</sup> autrement que par de grands périls? J'en suis venu aux mains avec des troupes plus nombreuses que celles que vous m'aviez confiées; j'ai mis en déroute leurs légions, qui, à la fin, ont pris la fuite. Que me restait-il à faire? Qui d'entre vous eût pu se refuser à la victoire qui marchait devant moi? Était-il même<sup>8</sup> en mon pouvoir de retenir vos soldats, que leur courage emportait, et qui poursuivaient avec ardeur un ennemi effrayé? Que dis-je? Si j'avais fait sonner la retraite, si j'avais ramené nos soldats dans leur camp, de quoi ne m'accuserait-on pas aujourd'hui? Lequel de vos tribuns aurait approuvé ma conduite? Ne m'accuseraient-ils pas d'intelligence avec les ennemis?"

1) account. 2) suspect. 3) save. 4) warlike. 5) on both sides. 6) loss. 7) can be gained. 8) even. 9) to sound.

\*) The "Conversation" on this Reading-lesson will be found at the end of the following lesson.

# **ELEVENTH LESSON.**

۱

## Of relative pronouns. (See pp. 114-116.)

§. 1. The relative pronouns who, which and that are rendered by qui, when they are in the nominative case, whether they refer to persons or things, as:

The man who works, *l'homme qui travaille*. The pen which is on the table. La plume qui est sur la table.

§. 2. The same pronouns when in the accusative, whom, which, that, are expressed by que, as:

The man whom you know, l'homme que vous connaissez. The book which I have lost, le livre que j'ai perdu.

Note. Sometimes, however, *lequel* must be employed instead of qui and que, when by the use of the latter an ambiguity might arise. In such a case as this for instance: Le frère de Mad. Lebeau qui habite Paris, where two persons are mentioned, it would be doubtful whether we mean to say that the brother or the lady lives in Paris. In the first case, we must say:

Le frère de Mad. Lebeau le que l'habite Paris, or if the lady is meant;

Le frère de Mad. Lebeau la quelle or qui habite Paris. For the latter of the two persons qui can also be used.

§. 3. When the relative pronouns whom or which are in the *dative* or after a *preposition*, they are usually expressed by *qui* in speaking of *persons*\*), and by *lequel* or *laquelle* (pl. *lesquels*, *lesquelles*) in speaking of animals and things, as:

The little boy to whom I give the book, is diligent. Le petit garçon à qui je donne le livre, est appliqué.

<sup>\*)</sup> However, after entre, between, and parmi, among, we,must always write lesquels or lesquelles whether persons or things be spoken of.

The Englishman with whom I travelled. L'Anglais avec qui j'ai voyagé.

The glory to which heroes sacrifice etc. La gloire à la quelle les héros sacrifient etc. The cane with which he struck me etc. La canne avec la guelle il me frappa etc.

§. 4. The relative pronouns whose, of whom or which are commonly expressed in French by dont, both for persons and for objects, as:

The Frenchman whose brother arrived yesterday. Le Français dont le frère est arrivé kier (see p. 239, 12). I have seen the garden of which you speak. Jai vu le jardin dont vous parlez.

§. 5. But lequel must be employed when the noun which follows whose is in any other case than the Nom. or Acc.; or is governed by a preposition. We can consequently say:

The man whose merits are known.

L'homme dont les mérites sont (Nom.) connus.

The author whose works you have read.

L'auteur dont vous avez lu les ouvrages (Acc.).\*)

But we must say:

The man of whose modesty people talk so much. L'homme de la modestie (Gen.) duquel on parle tant.

The friend to whose honesty I have trusted, has deceived me.

L'ami à la probité (Dat.) du quel je me suis fié, m'a trompé.

§. 6. The relative pronouns whom, which, that, though understood, are aften left out, but in French qui and que are never comitted, and must always be added. Ex.:

The boy I saw with you yesterday. Le garçon que j'ai vu hier avec vous.

<sup>\*)</sup> Observe here the position of the noun. If the word depending upon dont, is an Aco., it must stand after the active verb. Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II.

I shall send you the books you have chosen. Je vous enverrai les livres que vous avez choisis.

§. 7. Quoi, what, is also used as a relative, but only in connection with a preposition, as:

C'est à quoi je pense le moins.

This is the thing of which I think the least.

Savez-vous à quoi il s'occupe à présent?

Do you know what he busies himself with now? Après quoi, after which. Sans quoi, otherwise. C'est pourquoi, on that account.

§. 8. The adverbs of place où, d'où and par où, are also often employed instead of the relative pronouns dans lequel, duquel, par lequel etc., when things are spoken of, as:

L'embarras où (for dans lequel) se trouve mon père. The embarrassment in which my father finds himself. Le village par où (for par lequel) nous vonons de passer. The village through which we have just passed.

§. 9. The correlative pronouns he who, fem. she who, pl. they who or those who, are rendered by celui qui, fem. celle qui, plur. masc. ceux qui, plur. fem. celles qui. Ex.:

He who is contented, is happy.

Celui qui est content est heureux.

They (or those) who are discontent, are unhappy. Ceux qui sont mécontents, sont malheureux.

§. 10. Both or either may be declined according to the verb they depend on; as:

I shall give it to him whom I love most. Je le donnerai à celui que j'aime le mieux.

§. 11. In French both pronouns must be joined, and the second part of the sentence is expressed the first. Ex.:

He is a bad citizen who rebels against his country. Celui qui se révolte contre sa patrie est un mauvais citoyen, §. 12. The English what, when not an interrogative pronoun, but a compound relative in the sense of that which, is translated by *ce qui* for the Nom., *ce que* for the Acc. and by *ce dont*, when the verb goyerns the Genitive, as:

What is fine, is not always good. Ce qui est beau n'est pas toujours bon. I shall do what I have promised. Je ferai ce que j'ai promis. I have sent him what he needed. Je hui ai envoyé ce dont il avail besoin.

§. 13. When ce qui, ce que or ce dont begins the sentence, c'est must be placed before the second clause, except (as in the first sentence above) when an adjective or a participle follows, as:

Ce que vous pouvez faire de mieux, c'est de partir tout de suite.

The best thing for you to do, is to leave directly. Ce qui me chagrine, c'est la perte de mon domestique. What grieves me, is the loss of my servant.

§. 14. Proverbial and general expressions usually commence with qui = whoever, instead of *celui qui*. Examples:

Qui court deux lièvres, n'en prend aucun. He who chases two hares catches none.

Qui casse les verres, les paie.

Whoever breaks the glasses must pay for them.

Sauve qui peut ! let him save himself who can !

### Thème. 24.

The man who has done this, is generally <sup>1</sup> esteemed. The flocks<sup>2</sup> which graze<sup>3</sup> in those meadows<sup>4</sup> are mine (à moi). The watch which I had, is broken. The books which you read, are good; but difficult<sup>5</sup> to be understood. The sister of my friend who (§. 2. Note) arrived here last week, is very

1) généralement. 2) troupeau, m. 3) pattre (see p. 177, Nr. 25). 4) prairie, f. 5) difficiles à comprendre.

20\*

ill. The physician's daughter of whom I spoke to you the other day, has married Mr. Brown. A bird whose wings have been clipped<sup>6</sup>, cannot fly [any] more. Bees<sup>7</sup> among which we find such admirable order<sup>8</sup>, are very useful insects. The professor<sup>9</sup> to whom I write, is very learned. The man you respect, is my friend. Idleness is a vice to which young people are much inclined. The country we inhabit <sup>10</sup> is beautiful and fruitful. The reasons upon which I rely <sup>14</sup>, are unanswerable <sup>12</sup>. Mr. B. is a man to whose discretion I dare <sup>13</sup> not trust. He who gets <sup>14</sup> riches, knows not for whom h gets them. The daughter of Minos gave a thread <sup>15</sup> to Theseus <sup>16</sup>, by means (au moyen) of which he went out <sup>17</sup> of the labyrinth (—the). A king to whose care <sup>18</sup> we owe <sup>19</sup> good laws, has done more for his [own] glory than if he had conquered the universe <sup>20</sup>.

6) rognées. 7) les absilles. 8) ordre, m. 9) professeur. – 10) habiter. 11) je me fonde. 12) sans réplique. 13) je n'ose me fier. 14) amasser. 15) un fil. 16) Thésée. 17) sortir. 18) sollicitude, f. 19) devoir. 20) l'univers.

25.

That is the object 1 at which he aims<sup>2</sup>. The study to which I am devoted<sup>3</sup>, gives me great pleasure. Nature whose beauty we daily \* admire, is an inexhaustible <sup>5</sup> source of enjoyment<sup>6</sup> for her friends. Your pupil's mother with whom I spoke yesterday, left<sup>7</sup> this morning. What sort of a book is that in which you are reading? It is a Roman History. There is nothing upon (a) which I think more frequently<sup>8</sup> than the sad fate<sup>9</sup> of my poor friend. What is true is also good. Virtue and freedom are the conditions without which we cannot be happy. Does the house in which you live lie upon the highway 10? No, it is tolerably far <sup>11</sup> from it (en). There is nothing for (a) which (§. 7) he is not disposed. That is the thing about which I would speak with you. The thing the miser thinks least about (à), is to aid 12 the poor. That is the thing with which he struck me. It is an illness to the progress 18 of which (§. 5) one cannot apply 14 too prompt remedies 15. , He who cannot keep a secret, is incapable of governing <sup>16</sup>. Those are mistaken <sup>17</sup>, who (§. 11)

1) le but. 2) tendre. 3) dénoué. 4) journellement. 5) inépuisable. 6) le plaisir. 7) est partie. 8) souvent. 9) le sort. — 10) la route. 11) assez éloigné. 12) assister. 13) progrès, m. — 14) apporter. 15) de trop prompts remèdes. 16) de gouverner. — 17) I am mistaken — je me trompe.

1

believe that all kings are happy. That which most deserves <sup>18</sup> our respect is virtue. What I most <sup>19</sup> wish, is to see you happy. What I like most, is to be alone.

18) mériter. 19) le plus.

## Reading-lesson.

### Suite de, "Servilius".

"Si vos ennemis se sont ralliès, s'ils ont été soutenus par un corps de troupes qui s'avançait à leur secours; enfin, s'il a fallu recommencer tout de nouveau le combat, et si, dans cette dernière action, j'ai perdu quelques soldats, n'est-ce pas le sort<sup>1</sup> ordinaire de la guerre? Trouverez-vous des généraux qui veuillent se charger du commandement de vos armées, à conditiou de ramener à Rome tous les soldats qui en seraient sortis sous leur conduite? N'examinez donc point si, à la fin d'une bataille, j'ai perdu quelques soldats, mais jugez de ma conduite par ma victoire.

"S'il est vrai que j'ai chassé<sup>2</sup> les ennemis de votre territoire, que je leur ai tué beaucoup de monde dans deux combats, que j'ai forcé les débris<sup>3</sup> de leurs armées de s'enfermer dans leurs places<sup>4</sup>, que j'ai enrichi Rome et vos soldats du butin<sup>5</sup> qu'ils ont fait dans le pays ennemi: que (*let*) vos tribuns s'élèvent, et qu'ils me reprochent *en quoi* j'ai manqué<sup>6</sup> contre les devoirs<sup>7</sup> d'un bon général.

"Mais ce n'est pas ce que je crains: ces accusations ne servent que de prétexte pour pouvoir exercer impunément leur haine<sup>8</sup> et leur animosité contre le sénat et contre l'ordre des patriciens. Faut-il que vous ne demandiez jamais rien au sénat qui ne soit préjudiciable au bien commun de la patrie, et que vous ne le demandiez que par des séditions? Si un sénateur ose<sup>9</sup> vous représenter l'injustice de vos prétentions, si un consul ne parle pas le langage séditieux de vos tribuns; s'il défend avec courage la souveraine puissance dont il est revêtu, on crie au tyran<sup>10</sup>. A peine est-il sorti de aharge, qu'il se trouve accablé d'accusations. C'est ainsi que; par votre injuste plébiscite, vous avez ôté la vie à Ménénius, aussi grand capitaine que bon citoyen. Ne devriez-

1) the fate. 2) driven out. 3) remains. 4) forteresses. — 5) booty. 6) to fail. 7) duties. 8) hatred. 9) dare. 10) behold the tyrant. vous pas mourir de honte d'avoir persécuté si cruellement le fils de ce Ménénius Agrippa, à qui vous devez vos tribuns et ce pouvoir qui vous rend à présent si furieux?

"On m'en voudra peut-être de la liberté avec laquelle je vous parle dans l'état où je me trouve à présent; mais je ne crains point la mort: condamnez-moi, si vous l'osez; la vie *ne* peut être *qu*'à charge à un général *qui* est réduit à se justifier de ses victoires: après tout, un sort pareil à celui de Ménénius ne peut me déshonorer."

### Conversation.

- 'Qui était Servilius?
- Pourquoi l'a-t-on fait venir à Rome?
- De quoi l'avait-on accusé?
- Est-il possible de livrer (une) bataille, sans qu'il y ait du sang de répandu?
- Peut-on remporter une victoire sans aucune perte?
- Comment se justifia Servilius du reproche qu'on lui faisait?
- Était-il en son pouvoir de retenir ses soldats?
- Avait-il manqué contre les devoirs d'un bon général?
- Si Servilius avait fait sonner la retraite, de quoi l'aurait-on accusé?
- Quels services avait-il rendus à (to) Rome?
- Quand un sénateur était sorti de charge, que faisaient les tribuns du peuple?

Un fameux général romain.

- Pour se justifier devant le peuple.
- On l'avait accusé d'avoir perdu beaucoup de soldats dans un combat.
- Non, ce n'est pas possible. Il doit y avoir de part et d'autre du sang de répandu.
- Il est impossible de défaire un ennemi nombreux et aguerri sans perdre du monde.
- Il rappela aux Romains qu'il avait remporté une victoire décisive et mis en déroute les légions des ennemis.
- Non, leur courage les emportait et ils poursuivaient avec -' ardeur l'ennemi effrayé.
- Non, on ne lui put rien reprocher.
- Les tribuns du peuple l'auraient accusé d'intelligence avec les ennemis.
- Il avait chassé les ennemis du territoire romain et enrichi Rome du butin qu'il rapportait du pays ennemi.
- Ils l'accablaient d'accusations.

Quel exemple d'injustice leur Celui de Ménénius. rappela - t - il?Qui fut Ménénius?

C'était un aussi grand capitaine que bon citoyen, que le peuple avait condamné à mort.

## sort semblable à celui de Ménénius?

Servilius s'attendait-il à un Oui, mais il déclara hautement qu'un sort pareil à celui de Ménénius ne pourrait le deshonorer.

i je

# TWELFTH LESSON.

## Use of the indefinite pronouns.

In regard to the indefinite pronouns treated of in lesson 27, the following peculiarities are to be observed:

§. 1. The word on derived from homme, man, serves to render all vague and general reports expressed in English by they say, people say, it is said, we say etc. The verb which follows is always in the third person singular, as:

People say, on dit.

One cannot have everything, on ne peut pas avoir tout.

Note 1. When in English the passive voice is used in this sense, the verb must be changed in French into the active voice with on, as:

It is said, on dit. It is believed, on oroit.

I was told, on m'a dit. I am deceived, on me trompe. Letters have been received, on a recu des lettres.

Note 2. For the cases where l'on is used instead of on see p. 119, remark 1.

§. 2. Chacun, e, each, has for the English his, her or its, which follows it, son, sa, ses, and leur, leurs, for their, as:

Put these books each in its place. Remettes ces livres chacun à sa place. The judges have given sentence each according to his conscience.
Les juges ont opinés chacun selon sa conscience.
The bees build each their cellule.
Les abeilles bâtissent chacune leur cellule.

§. 3. Aucun, personne and rien do not require ne before the verb, in a sentence interrogative or of doubt; aucun then stands for any; personne for anybody, and rien for anything. Ex.:

Je ne crois pas, qu'il y ait aucun homme sans défaut. I do not think thère is a try man without a fault. Je doute qu'il y ait rien de plus beau. I doubt whether there is anything more beautiful. Qui est là ? Personne. Who is there? Nobody,

"§. 4. When however these three pronouns serve to answer a question, without repeating the verb used by the enquirer, they retain their negative meaning, as: Qu'avez vous? Rien. Rien du tout. What is the matter with you? Nothing. Nothing at all;

§. 5. None, not one are rendered by aucus ne, and pas un ne. Ex.:

None of you were there, au cun de vous n'y étais. I have four sisters, none (not one) of them has married. J'ai quatre sours, au cune or pas une ne siset mariée.

§. 6. Somebody, some one, anybody and any one are expressed by quelqu'un, singular and masculine. Ex.:

Somebody told me so, quelqu'un me l'a dit.

Do yan know any one here, connaissen-vous quelqu'un ici?

§. 7. La plupart, most, is properly a collective noun and like most other collective nouns takes the Genitive plural after it. This requires the predicate (adjective or verb) which follows, to be put in the plurak Example:

La plupart de ces pommes ne sont pas encore mâres. Most of these apples are not yet ripe.

§. 8. Another is usually expressed by un autre, and others (Nom. and Acc.) by d'autres or les autres. Ex.:

Another would not have acted so. Un autre n'aurait pas agi ainsi.

Charity is contented that others be preferred. La charité est contente que les autres soient préférés. Buy some others, achetez-en d'autres.

§. 9. Autrui, others, only applies to persons and is indeed usually a plural; it is however also taken as a singular in the sense of another, and can on this account be followed indiscriminately by son or leur. It is employed only in the Gen. and Dat. (d'autrui, à autrui). Consequently when in English the indefinite pronoun others occurs in the Nom. or Acc., it must not be translated by autrui, but by d'autres or les autres (§.8). Ex.:

Charity rejoices in the happiness of others.

La charité se réjouit du bonheur d'autrui.

Attendez d'autrui ce que yous faites à autrui.

Expect from others the same treatment which you give them.

Souvent nous blémons les défauts d'autrui sans faire attention
 à leurs (or à ses) bonnes qualités.

We often censure the faults of others without observing their good qualities;

§. 10. When however the verb in the latter clause governs the Acc., en is used instead of son or ses. Ex.: Souvent nous blamons les défauts d'autrus, sans en reconnaître les bonnes qualités (without acknowledging their good qualities.

§. 11. Tel has two significations: such and many a (man). In the former it is an adjective, and agrees

with its noun, in the latter it is often a pronoun, i.e. is used without a substantive. Ex.:

Telle était la difficulté du terrain que etc. Such was the difficulty of the ground etc. Tel parle de choses qu'il n'entend pas. Many a man speaks of things which he does not understand.

Note. Un tel has also the meaning of so and so, as: Chez Monsieur un tel; Madame une telle.

§. 12. Tel que has the meaning such as or just as, and agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers. Ex.:

Telles que vous les voyez. Such as you see them (fem.).

§. 13. Notice also the expression: Il n'y a rien de tel que ..., or il n'est rien tel que ..., there is nothing like. Example:

Il n'y a rien de tel que d'avoir une bonne conscience. There is nothing like having a good conscience.

#### Thème. 26.

They speak of peace. People are not always fortunate. French is spoken here. People attribute 1 the invention of gunpowder to Berthold Schwarz of Friburg<sup>2</sup>. It is said that the queen is in London. We succour the unfortunate more readily<sup>4</sup> when we have been so (l) ourselves. Everybody has his faults What is the price of each of these medals ?? My children have each a good place. Every one has his [own] manner of thinking<sup>6</sup> and acting. I do not know any of his friends. Would anybody dare 7 deny<sup>4</sup> it? None of the judges were against you. Of all the nations of the earth, there is none (not one) but has (qui n'ait) an idea<sup>9</sup> of God. The epic 10 poem of Voltaire, and that of Milton have each their merit<sup>11</sup>. I expect somebody. Those apples are fine, I will take some. When we are in (en) town, we have almost every day somebody to dine<sup>12</sup> with us. I have lost my stick, I must buy another. Most of my books are new. Do not speak ill (mal) of others. Do not unto (a) others what thou wouldst not they should 18 do unto thee. Many a man sows 14 who does not reap <sup>13</sup>. There is nothing like being (que d'étre) an honest man. You must take them such as they are.

1) attribuer. 2) Fribourg. 8) secourir. 4) volontiers. 5) médaille, f. 6) de penser et d'agir. 7) oser. 8) nier. 9) idée, f. 10) ópique. 11) mérite, m. 12) à diner. 13) qu'ils te fissent à toi-même. 14) semer (see p. 85, §. 2). – 15) récolter.

# THIRTEENTH LESSON.

## Continuation of the indefinite pronouns.

§. 1. L'un et l'autre, fem. l'une et l'autre (plur. les uns et les autres, fem. les unes et les autres), both. These pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer; if they are preceded by a preposition in English, that preposition must be repeated in French before each part. Ex.:

Both are gone, l'un et l'autre sont partis.

I will do it for them both.

Je le ferai pour l'un et pour l'autre.

Note 1. When in English the word both is followed by a noun, it is rendered in French by les deux. Ex.:

I use both hands, je me sere des deux mains (Gen.).

Note 2. Both followed by and is a conjunction, and commonly left out in French, as:

She is both handsome and rich, elle est belle et riche.

§. 2. L'un ou l'autre, fem. l'une ou l'autre, either, also requires the repetition of the preposition. The verb is in the singular, as:

I will do it for either.

Je le ferai pour l'un ou pour l'autre.

§. 3. Ni l'un ni l'autre, fem. ni l'une ni l'autre, neither, requires ne before the verb, as:

Neither has obtained the prize.

Ni l'un ni l'autre n'a gagné le prix.

I will do it for neither of them (fem.).

Je ne le ferai ni pour l'une ni pour l'autre.

§. 4. L'un l'autre, fem. l'une l'autre (plur. les une les autres, fem. les unes les autres), one another, each other. The first of the two pronouns is always the subject and consequently stands in the Nominative in French. It is further to be observed that active verbs then require se, nous or vous to be added, although no reflective pronoun appears in English. When they are preceded by a preposition in English, that preposition must come between them in French. Ex.:

These two girls love each other tenderly.

Ces deux petites filles s'aiment l'une l'autre tendrement.

Charles and Henry speak ill of each other.

Charles et Henri parlent mal l'un de l'autre (not de Fun l'autre).

• §. 5. The word the same is expressed by le même or la même for the singular and by les mêmes for the plural of both genders, whether it be connected with a noun or not, as:

Is that the same pencil which I have lent you? Est-ce le même crayon que celui que je vous ai prêté? Yes, it is the same, oui, c'est le même.

§. 6. The same meaning the same thing is expressed by *la même chose*. Ex.:

He did the same, il a fait la même chose.

§. 7. When *mome* signifies even, it is an adverb and invariable. It may be placed before or after the nouns. Ex.:

Vos frères, vos amis, vos ennemis même. Your brothers, your friends, your enemies even.

§. 8. Every thing, all, are expressed by tout without any article, and it is placed, in compound tenses, between the auxiliary and the participle, as:

I have lost everything, j'ai tout perdu.

Every thing falls, tout tombe. All have perished there, tous y ont péri. I have seen them all, je les ai toutes vues.

§. 9. Le tout stands for a substantive singular and masculine, and answers to the English the whole, as:

Le tout est plus grand que la partie. The whole is greater than a part. Je prendrai le tout, I will take the whole.

§. 10. The English words all that, every thing that and whatever are rendered in French by tout ce qui (Nom.), or tout ce que (Acc.), always singular and masculine (see also p. 116, §. 8). Ex.:

I like all that is fine, j'aime tout a qui est beau. All that he says is true, tout a qu'il dit est vrai.

§. 11. In the sense of quite, entirely, before an adjective or a participle masculine of both numbers, and before an adjective feminine beginning with a vowel or h mute, tout remains uninflected; but it is declinable before an adjective or a participle feminine which begins with a consonant, and agrees with it in gender and number. Ex.:

Nous fûmes tout surpris, we were quite surprised. Ma sœur était tout étonnée. My sister was quite astonished. Elle fut toute surprise, she was quite surprised.

§. 12. When tout in connection with que stands for — as, although, however; it is used as a conjunction with the indicative mood; and in this use the above mentioned rule (§. 11) also holds good (see also §. 13). Ex.:

Tout riches que vous êtes, rich as you are. Toutes savantes que sont ces dames. Learned as these ladies are (however learned these ladies are etc.).

#### Thème. 27.

Both are (ont) right. Both serve the same purpose 1. Do you speak of my brother or (of my) sister? I speak of both. [Both] his uncle and aunt are dead. Either of you can do me a great favour. Yesterday I expected my two best friends, but neither [of them] came. Both suspect<sup>s</sup> him but neither will say why. Fire and water destroy<sup>s</sup> each other. Love<sup>4</sup> one another, said our Lord<sup>5</sup>. They speak ill of one another. It is rare to hear two authors<sup>6</sup> speak well of each other. They (ce) are the same reasons. This poem is the same that <sup>7</sup> I was mentioning<sup>8</sup> to you. How much do you ask for the whole? I will not sell the whole; I must keep<sup>9</sup> a part for myself. All is mutable<sup>10</sup> in this world. Everything displeases 11 you. He has taken everything for himself. All is not gold that glitters 12 (transl.: all that \*) glitters is not gold). Whatever is good in itself (en soi), it not always approved 13. She is quite altered 14 since her illness. His mother was (fut) quite cast down 15 at that news; however, sorry 16 though she was, she received me kindly and desired 17 me to dine with her. This fashion 18 is quite new. My friend, however learned he is, is sometimes mistaken 19.

1) usage, m. 2) soupçonner. 3) se détruisent. 4) aimez-vous. 5) Seigneur. 6) auteur. 7) que celui dont. 8) parlé. 9) garder. 10) variable. 11) déplaire. 12) brille. 13) approuver. 14) alterée. 15) abattue. 16) affligée. 17) prier. 18) mode, f. 19) se tromper.

§. 13. In a similar manner as tout — que is quelque — que, however, though — ever so, used; with this difference that tout — que supposes something more true or real, whereas quelque — que implies something as possibly assumed, and on this account always governs the subjunctive. Quelque, when before an adjective or participle, remains unchanged. The construction of the sentence is as follows: 1) quelque begins the clause, 2) the second place is taken by the adjective

\*) See p. 294. §. 11 and 12.

or participle, 3) then follows que, 4) the pronoun, 5) the verb in the subjunctive mood. Ex.:

Quelque habiles que vous soyez. However skilful you may be.

But when the subject is not a pronoun, but a substantive, then the verb takes the fourth place and the noun the fifth. Ex.:

Que lque louable que soit votre conduite, elle sera condamnée.

However praiseworthy your conduct may be - or

§. 14. Quelque, followed by a substantive and any other verb than to be, is an adjective and therefore takes an s before a noun plural. It corresponds with the English whatever. The construction is: 1) quelque(s), 2) the substantive, 3) que, 4) the pronoun, 5) the verb in the subjunctive mood; the rest as in English. Examples:

Quelques richesses qu'ils aient amassées, ils ne sont pas heureux.

Whatever riches they may have collected, they are not happy.

Quelques fautes qu'il ait commises, je lui pardonnerai.

Whatever faults he has committed, I will forgive him.

§. 15. Quel que, fem. quelle que, must be divided, when it is immediately followed by the verb to be, and agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it relates; it likewise requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood. Ex.:

Quelle que soit votre faute, on vous pardonnera.

Whatever your fault may be, they will forgive you.

Quels que soient les talents de votre frère, il ne réussira pas. Whatever your brother's talents may be, he will not succeed. §. 16: The English whoever and whoseever are usually rendered by *quiconque*, when they mean every one who or all those who. Ex.:

Quiconque n'observera pas cette loi, sera puni. Whoever does not observe this law, will be punished. Je parle à quiconque veut m'entendre. I speak to whomsoever will hear me.

§. 17. The same two pronouns who ever and whosoever are expressed in French by qui que ce soit (or fut)\*) qui when they mean whatever may be the person who. The verb is in the subjunctive mood. Ex.:

Whoever has done that, he is a man of talents.

Qui que ce soit qui ait fait cela, c'est un homme de talent.

Whomsoever you meet with, do not say what you have seen.

Qui que co soit que (Acc.) vous rencontriez, ne dites pas ce que vous aves vu.

§. 18. A shorter expression for qui que ce soit que (not qui) is qui que, which is often used, except before il and ils:

Qui que vous soyez, vous étes le bienvenu.

Whoever you may be, you are welcome.

Qui que vous rencontriez, ne dites pas etc.

Whomsoever you meet with, do not say etc.

§. 19. Nobody whatever is expressed by qui que ce soit and ne before the verb. Ex.:

Let nobody whatever enter my room.

Ne laisses entrer qui que ce soit dans ma chambre.

I trust nobody whatever.

Je ne me fie à qui que ce soit.

Note. But when nobody whatever begins the sentence, personne is preferred, as:

Nobody whatever has spoken ill of you. Personne n'a parlé mai de vous.

(\*) When speaking in the past tense, fut must be used.

§. 20. When the English indefinite pronoun whatever does not mean all that which or every thing which, but whatever may be the thing which, then it is rendered in French with quelque chose qui, quoi que, or quoi que ce soit (or fat)\*) qui or que. Ex.:

Whatever may be said to you, do not believe it. Quelque chose qu'on vous dise, ne le croyez pas.

or: Quoi qu'on vous dise, ne le croyez pas.

or: Quoi que ce soit qu'on vous dise, ne le croyez pas. Whatever you may order, I will do it.

Quelque chose que vous commandiez, je le ferai. or: Quoi que ce soit que vous commandiez, je le ferai.

§. 21. Nothing whatever, not anything whatever is translated with quoi que ce soit or  $fut^*$ ) and ne before the verb. Ex.:

Touch nothing whatever.

Ne touchez à quoi que ce soit.

Without application, it is impossible to succeed in anything whatever.

Sans application on ne peut réuseir en quoi que ce soit.

Thème. 28.

The wise man does not fear men however powerful they may be. Men, however great or small they may be, are never sufficiently<sup>1</sup> sensible how necessary they are to each other. Whatever wealth<sup>2</sup> you may have, you will never be happy, unless you<sup>3</sup> restrain your passions. Do not lose [your] courage whatever may happen to you. Distrust<sup>4</sup> every one who (§. 16) speaks ill of his friends. (The) laws condemn<sup>6</sup> all criminals<sup>6</sup>, whoever (§. 15) they may be. I tell it to every one who will hear. The count had given orders to receive in his absence every one whoever he might be (§. 17 and foot-note). I hope that you will not tell may secret to anybody whatever. Regulus did not allow himself to be moved?

assez. 2) richesse, f. 3) à moins que vous ne reprimiez.
 4) méfiez-vous de. 5) condamner. 6) criminel. 7) ne se laissa pas sorranter.

\*) See the foot-note p. 308. - Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II.

21

whatever the promises were that the Carthaginians<sup>8</sup> made him. Unfortunate [man]! whoever (§. 18) thou art, I will not betray<sup>9</sup> thee. Whatever (§. 20) may happen to you in this world, never murmur <sup>10</sup> against Divine Providence; for whatever we may suffer, we deserve <sup>11</sup> it. Of whomsoever you speak, always speak the truth. I have found nothing whatever. I complain <sup>12</sup> of nothing whatever. Young men <sup>13</sup>! whatever the destiny <sup>14</sup> may be that awaits <sup>16</sup> you, in whatever region of the earth your days may be <sup>16</sup> spent, nature will continually offer to you her products <sup>17</sup> and her wonders <sup>18</sup>: you will continually be surrounded <sup>19</sup> with the objects of your study.

8) Carthaginois. 9) trahir. 10) murmurer. 11) mériter. — 12) se plaindre. 18) gens. 14) le sort. 15) attendre. 16) doivent s'écouler. 17) produits, m. 18) merveilles. 19) entourés de.

### Reading-lesson.

### Cicéron.

Quelqu'un a prétendu que Cicéron n'était qu'un homme médiocre<sup>1</sup> et que rien dans sa vie n'autorisait à le compter parmi ces Romains, qui furent l'honneur et la gloire de leur patrie. Mais je demande à tout le monde si l'on a sujet de prétendre quelque chose de pareil! On sait que Cicéron devint<sup>2</sup>, par son génie, l'égal de Pompée, de César, de Caton. Il gouverna et sauva Rome; il fut vertueux dans un siècle<sup>3</sup> de crimes, défenseur des lois dans l'anarchie, républicain parmi des grands qui se disputaient l'en à l'autre le droit<sup>4</sup> d'être oppresseurs. Il eut cette gloire que tous les ennemis de l'État, qui se combattaient ou se soutenaient les uns les autres, furent aussi les siens. Quiconque sacrifiait la patrie à son propre intérêt, trouva en lui un adversaire. Quels que fussent les dangers contre lesquels il avait à lutter<sup>5</sup>, il n'en craignait aucun.

Il est vrai que quelques-uns lui reprochent de l'indécision, d'autres prétendent qu'il était tour-à-tour<sup>6</sup> brave et timide, d'autres ajoutent même que, faible par caractère, il n'était grand que par réflexion. Quoi qu'il en soit, il défendit toujours avec courage et même devant César, la patrie et l'ancien gouvernement. Tel n'aurait pas osé faire l'éloge de Caton. Cicéron le fit. En vain ses amis cherchèrent à l'en détourner; mais tout plausibles qu'étaient leurs arguments, il ne les écoutait pas. Tacite nous apprend que Cicéron, dans cet éloge, élevait Caton jusqu'au ciel.

1) middling. 2) became. 3) century. 4) the right. 5) to struggle. 6) alternately.

Conversation.

۰.

Qui était Cicéron? Qu'a-t-on prétendu à son égard?

Cette opinion est-elle fondée?

Quel est son mérite principal?

Fut-il vertueux?

Eut-il des ennemis?

Craignait-il César?

Est-ce que ses amis craignaient Qui, ils cherchèrent à l'en dépour lui?

- Cicéron suivit-il leurs conseils?
- Que nous apprend Tacite?

Un célèbre orateur romain.

Qu'il n'était qu'un homme médiocre.

Point du tout. Cicéron a eu ses défauts, il est vrai, mais il est devenu, par son génie, l'égal de Pompée, de César et de Caton.

Il a sauvé la patrie en découvrant la conspiration de Catilina.

- Oui, il fut vertueux dans un siècle de crimes.
- Tous les ennemis de l'Etat furent aussi les siens.
- Non. La preuve en est qu'il prononça l'éloge de Caton, le grand républicain.
- tourner.
- Non, il ne les écouta pas.
- Il nous apprend que Cicéron, dans cet éloge, élevait Caton jusqu'au ciel.

# FOURTEENTH LESSON.

## On adverbs.

(See 31st and 32d lesson, pp. 141-150.)

§. 1. As already observed, the manner or mode of the action is expressed by the adverbs of quality or manner, as:

21 \*

- 812 -

Il agit s agement (not sage), he acts wisely. Il écrit mal (not maurais), he writes badly.

§. 2. There are certain *adjectives* however which are used instead of the adverb. This is the case in the following expressions:

Aller vite, to walk fast. coûter cher, to be expensive. vendre cher, to sell dear. sentir bon, to smell sweet. sentir meilleur, to smell better. sentir mauvais, to smell badly. trouver bon, to approve. trouver mauvais, to take ill. voir clair, to see clearly. tenir ferme, to hold fast. tonir bon, to hold good. rester court, to stop short. demeurer court, payer comptant, to pay for cash. marcher droit, to walk straight. chanter juste, to sing correctly. chanter faux, to sing false. parler haut, to speak loud. parler bas, to speak low. faire exprès, to do on purpose.

§. 3. The adjectives in this case remain, of course, unchanged. Ex.:

Cette montre coûte trop cher (not chère). This watch is too dear.

Les enfants parlent trop haut (not hauts): The children speak too loud.

La chanteuse a chanté faux (not fausse). The songstress has sung false.

Note 1. In speaking of the state of the health, however, the adverb bien or mal in employed. Ex.:

Je suis bien, I am well.

Elle se trouve mal, she finds herself ill.

Note 2. Observe also the expressions: Elle est bien = she is pretty, and elle n'est pas mal; she is not ugly.

§. 4. It is further to be mentioned that some adverbs take after them an object with de or a, in case the adjective from which they are derived also takes one. Ex.:

Conformément à vos ordres. In conformity with your orders.

### Indépendamment de mes instructions. Independently of my instructions.

Cette rivière coule parallèlement à la Vistule. That river flows parallel with the Vistula.

#### Thème. 29.

Do not go so fast. The night is approaching; I no longer (*plus*) see clearly. The rose smells sweet but the pink<sup>1</sup> smells better. Do not speak low (in a whisper) in the presence of others. How does the singer<sup>2</sup> sing? She sings false (incorrectly). Do not speak so low, speak louder so that you can<sup>3</sup> be understood. You do not read well and you write no (*pas*) better. To-day I am not very well. Do not eat so fast. This merchant sells his goods<sup>4</sup> very dear. I have distributed<sup>5</sup> the money according to (in conformity with) your orders.

1) l'æillet.
 2) la chanteuse.
 3) qu'on puisse vous comprendre.
 4) marshandises.
 5) distribuer.

## On adverbs of time etc.

§. 1. Observe the distinction between the following adverbs: 1) Plutôt means rather (of inclination); plus tôt, sooner (of time). 2) Tout à coup means at once, suddenly, unexpectedly; tout d'un coup means at once i.e. at one time; à la fois means altogether. 3) Immediately is translated by tout de suits, tout à l'heure, and also by sons délai. De suite means successively, one after the other. 4) L'autre jour means the other day, lately, synonymous with dernièrement. On the next day is le lendemain. 5) A little while ago is tantôt; just is expressed by the verb venir (see 20th lesson). Ex.:

He is just gone out, il vient de sortir.

§. 2. Be careful not to confound partout, everywhere, with surtout, especially, above all. §. 3. Très, fort and bien, all mean very, right, and whether one or the other is to be used before the adjective depends upon euphony alone. Very much with verbs is generally translated by beaucoup and sometimes also by bien, but never by très or très beaucoup. Bien with a noun in the sense of much or a great many must be followed by the Genitive with the definite article (see p. 246. §. 1. Exc.).

§. 4. Between *plus* and *davantage* is this difference: the latter means still more and always stands at the end of a sentence, and consequently can be followed neither by a noun nor by a comparison with than. Than after *plus* and *moins* is usually *que*, but before a numeral it is translated by *de*.

§. 5. In French an adverb never stands before the simple verb, but follows it. The pupil must therefore be careful not to say: Ma sœur rarement sort le matin, but: ma sœur sort rarement le matin, my sister seldom goes out in the morning. Ex.:

Je pense souvent à vous. I often think of you.

In connection with the compound tenses of the verb, the adverb is generally placed between the auxiliary and the participle past (see p. 146, 2. and NB.). Ex.:

Ma sœur a beaucoup voyagé. My sister has travelled a great deal.

§. 6. But adverbs of time can also be placed at the beginning of the sentence when an emphasis is laid upon them. Ex.:

Bientôt je le vis reparaître. I saw him soon re-appear.

Autrefois j'étais un homme fori. Formerly I was a stout man.

1

#### Thème. 30.

We often put off<sup>1</sup> till the next day what we ought to do at once. Fortune<sup>\*</sup>) is so fickle<sup>2</sup> that she often suddenly deserts<sup>3</sup> those that she has favored<sup>4</sup> the most. A single<sup>3</sup> drop of vinegar contains more than a hundred animalculae<sup>6</sup>. Sickness<sup>\*</sup>) alters<sup>7</sup> a beautiful face<sup>8</sup> but sorrow<sup>9</sup><sup>\*</sup>) changes it still more. This man has a great many faults. Children<sup>\*</sup>) must obey immediately. This man has been very much (§.3) pitied<sup>10</sup>. One does not arrive at once at the highest pinnacle<sup>11</sup> of fame<sup>12,\*</sup>) Mr. M. (has) won a thousand dollars at one time. He undertakes too many things at once. Did you believe this man? At first (*d'abord*) I was not willing to believe him. Good taste<sup>13,\*</sup>) is rather a gift<sup>14</sup> of nature<sup>\*</sup>) than an acquirement<sup>16</sup> of art.<sup>\*</sup>) How much money have you lent him? I have lent him more than 80 florins.

1) renvoyer or différer. 2) inconstant. 3) abandonner. — 4) favorisés. 5) une seule goutte. 6) animalcule, m. 7) altérer (see p. 85, 2. — 8) figure, f. or visage, m. 9) le chagrin. 10) regretter. 11) degré, m. 12) gloire, f. 13) goût, m. 14) don, m. 15) acquir sition, f.

## Reading-lesson.

## Le Connétable de Bourbon et Bayard.

Dialogue.

Le Connétable. N'est-ce pas le pauvre Bayard que je vois au pied de cet arbre, étendu sur l'herbe<sup>1</sup>, et percé d'un grand coup? Oui, c'est lui-même. Hélas! je le plains. En voilà deux qui périssent aujourd'hui par nos armes: Vandenesse et lui. Ces deux Français étaient deux ornements de leur nation par leur courage. Je sens que mon cœur est encore touché pour sa patrie. Mais avançons pour lui parler. Ah! mon pauvre Bayard, c'est avec douleur que je te vois en cet état.

Bayard. C'est avec douleur que je vous vois aussi.

Le Conn. Je comprends bien que tu es fâché de te voir dans mes mains par le sort<sup>2</sup> de la guerre; mais je ne veux point te traiter en prisonnier, je veux te garder comme un bon ami, et prendre soin de ta guérison<sup>3</sup>, comme si tu étais mon propre frère. Ainsi tu ne dois point être fâché de me voir.

1) grass. 2) fate. 3) recovery.

\*) Put the def. art. see p. 236 and 237.

Bay. Hé! croyez-vous que je ne sois point fâché d'avoir obligation au plus grand ennemi de la France? Ce n'est point de ma captivité, ni de ma blessure<sup>4</sup>, que je suis en peine<sup>5</sup>: je meurs dans un moment, la mort va me délivrer de vos mains.

Le Conn. Non, mon cher Bayard, j'espère que nos soins réussiront à te guérir.

Bay. Ce n'est point là ce que je cherche, et je suis content de mourir. (To be continued.)

4) wound. 5) sorry.

# FIFTEENTH LESSON.

## Syntax of negations.

(See pp. 149. 150.)

§. 1. It is necessary in the first place to distinguish whether the negation belongs to a verb or not; if not, the negative particle stands without ne. Not without a verb before nouns is translated by non or non pas. Ex.:

His cruelty and not his pride.

Sa cruauté et non (or non pas) son orgueil.

Not in connection with other words simply by pas: Not much, pas beaucoup. Not so much, pas tant. Not st all, pas du tout or point du tout

NB. Observe the following expressions:

Not (nor) — either, non plus. Nor his brother either, ni son frère non plus. Nor I either, ni moi non plus. Not only — but, non seulement — mais. (See §. 4.)

§. 2. But if the negation belongs to the verb the negative particle whatever it may be, is invariably accompanied by *ne*. Ex.:

Ne lui parlez pas, do not speak to him. Je n'ai rien vu, I have seen nothing. Je ne l'ai plus, I have it no more. Aucun de vous n'y était, none of you was there. Le pours homme n'a point d'argent. The poor man has no money (at all). Je ne connais personne ici, I know nobody here. Il ne sait ni lire ni écrire. He knows neither how to read nor write. Ni prières ni\*) menaces ne purent l'attendrir. Neither prayers nor threatenings could move him. Je n'ai jamais vu l'empereur de France. I have never seen the emperor of France. Nous n'approuvons nu llement votre dessein.

We by no means approve of your design.

Note. When the verb is in the simple infinitive, we pas or ne point (also ne jamais) are not separated, as:

Not to study, ne pas étudier or ne point étudier.

But when it is in the *compound* infinitive, it is optional to separate them or not, as:

Not to have studied, { ne pas (point) avoir étudié. n'avoir pas (point) étudié.

§. 3. The words no more or not any more (meaning not more) are expressed by ne before the verb and pas plus after, when more is followed by than; but they are rendered by ne - plus without pas, when more is not followed by than (i. e. when they mean no longer). Ex.:

He is no more than fifteen years of age.

Il n'a pas plus de quinze ans. But:

I shall read no more (no longer), je ne lirai plus.

§. 4. Non seulement, not only, takes no ne with the verb. Ex.:

Je l'ai fait non seulement pour lui, mais aussi pour ses enfants. I have done it not only for his sake, but also for his children's.

<sup>\*)</sup> If neither — nor come before two verbs in the *indicative* mood, the former is expressed simply by ne before the first, and nor by ni ne before the second. Ex.:

I neither praise nor blame him. Je ne le loue, ni ne le blame.

- 318 -

§. 5. The negative not is expressed by ns, without pas or point with the three verbs cesser, to cease; oser, to dare; pouvoir, to be able, when followed by an infinitive, as:

Elle ne cesse de pleurer, she does not cease crying.

Il n'ose revenir, he dares not come back.

Je ne puis le croire, I canuot believe it.

Note 1. Cesser takes pas, however, when a time is specified, as:

Il ne cesse pas de travailler avant huit heures du soir.

Note 2. In regard to pouvoir, write in the first person of the present tense je ne puis (without pas), but: Je ne peux pas.

§. 6. With the negative use of savoir we must distinguish whether "not know" means to be uncertain i.e. in doubt. In that case it does not take pas. In the same way pas is always omitted in the expression je ne saurais, I cannot. Ex.:

Je ne savais que dire, I did not known what to say.

Je ne saurais vous donner une garantie.

I cannot give you a security.

But if "not know" has the signification of not to have learned, not to know (a language etc.), then savoir always takes *ne* and *pas*. Ex.:

Je ne sais pas nager, I cannot swim.

Ne savez-vous pas l'allemand, don't you know German?

§. 7. In sentences depending upon prendre garde, to take care, there is no pas, as:

Prenez garde qu'il ne vous trompe.

Pas is used however if an infinitive follows, as: Prenez garde de ne pas tomber.

§. 8. Of two negative sentences standing in immediate connection with each other, the latter loses its pas, as:

Je ne connais personne qui ne fasse quelquefois des fautes.

Note 1. Also peu and same are here regarded as a negation, as:

Peu s'en faut qu'il ne soit tombé, he was very near falling.

Note 2. The former sentence may also be interrogative if only the idea of negation be contained in it, as:

Y a-t-il (or est-il) un homme qui ne croie en Dieu?

§. 9. Do not put pas after que ne, why not! instead of pourquoi pas, as:

Si vous avez froid, que ne mettez-vous votre manteau!

§. 10. Nor after voilà, il y a and depuis que, when the verb which has the idea of negation, is in the Passé indéfini or Plusqueparfait. Ex.:

Il y a deux mois que je ne lui ai parlé.

Il a bien changé depuis que je ne l'ai vu.

§. 11. Pas is not used when ne is connected with d'autre followed by que, as:

Je n'ai d'autre ambition que de vous rendre heureux. I have no other ambition than to make you happy.

§. 12. Further in the following idioms:

N'avoir garde, to take care not to, to be on one's guard. N'importe, it does not matter.

Ne voir goutte, to see nothing (at all).

Ne dire mot, to say not a word.

à Dieu ne plaise que etc., God forbid etc.

#### Thème. 31.

I do not speak. I have not spoken. Have you bought this book? No, Sir, I have not (bought it). It is your friendship which I seek, not my interest<sup>1</sup>. Not I. Not we. Are you tired? Not at all. I was not there; nor my sister either. This peasant<sup>2</sup> can neither read nor write. The boy has neither paper<sup>3</sup> nor pens. I have never had such a (un si) good book. We have no desire at all<sup>4</sup> of doing it (to do it). The speaker<sup>5</sup> has convinced<sup>6</sup> not only his friends but also his adversaries. Charles XII persisted in<sup>7</sup> never

1) intérêt, m. 2) paysan, m. 3) see p. 242, §. 3. — 4) nullement envie. 5) l'oratour. 6) convaincre. 7) s'obstina à. speaking (never to speak) French. I have no more hope. Alcibiades could not  $(\S. 5)$  suffer that his country should obey<sup>8</sup> a rival<sup>9</sup>. I dare not enter<sup>10</sup> his room. It is no more than a week<sup>11</sup> since I saw (que j'ai vu) your uncle; he is gone to America, you will no more see him. I cannot ( $\S. 6$ ) tell you whether (si) my father is at home or not (non); I have not seen him this morning. Take care lest (que,  $\S. 7$ ) he steal your money. Take care not to be (to come) too late. We dare not tell him this news. There is no enemy who is (soit) not able<sup>12</sup> to injure<sup>13</sup>. God forbid that I should betray<sup>14</sup> your secret.

8) Imperf. Subj. 9) à une rivale. 10) entrer dans. 11) huit jours. 12) en état. 13) de nuire. 14) trahir.

Negation used in French, and not in English.

§. 1. Ne is moreover often employed in French, when in English no thought of negation is to be discovered. This is the case:

§. 2. With the affirmative verb of a comparative sentence, when it stands immediately after the comparative. The same holds true of the verb after *autre* and *autrement*. Ex.:

Il est plus âgé, que je ne croyais. He is older than I thought.

Il parle autrement qu'il n'agit. He speaks otherwise than he acts.

Note. But if the first clause of the sentence be negative, que of the latter clause is not followed by ne, as:

Il n'éerit pas mieux qu'il parle.

§. 3. This is also the case after the verbs douter, to doubt; nier and disconvenir, to deny; contester, to contest; they require ne before the verb (in the Subjunctive) of the dependent sentence, yet only when these verbs themselves are used negatively or interrogatively. Ex.: Je ne doute pas Doutes-vous I do not doubt (do you doubt) that this is true. Niez-vous Je ne nie pas Qu'il ne soit coupable. (?) Do you deny (I do not deny) that he is guilty?

§. 4. But when these verbs are affirmative or negative-interrogative, ne is not inserted in the second clause, as:

Je doute que cela soit vrai (without n e). Ne nies vous pas qu'il soit coupable?

§. 5. If the dependent sentence in English is negative, it takes, of course, ne - pas. Ex.:

I fear he will not come, je crains qu'il ne vienne pas. They fear the fortress will not have ammunition enough. On craint que la forteresse n'ait pas asses de munition.

§. 6. *Empêcher*, to prevent, to hinder, always requires *ne* before the following verb which must be in the subjunctive mood, as:

J'empêcherai qu'il n e sorte.

I will hinder him from going out.

Empêchera-t-il ) que vous n e le fassien? Il n'empêchera pas ( que vous n e le fassien?

Will he prevent you (he will not prevent you) from doing it?

#### Thème. 32.

He is more wicked than I thought. Henry is stronger than he was last year. Ireland is more powerful at present, than were the three kingdoms at (a) the death of queen Elisabeth. A traveller often relates ' things otherwise than they are. I fear lest (que) some misfortune has befallen<sup>2</sup> my son. I fear our master will come; do you not fear he will come? He denies that his brother is mixed up<sup>3</sup> in that affair. The city of Paris has become much more beautiful since<sup>4</sup> you saw (have seen §. 10) it. Do you fear he will write to your father? I do not fear it. We do not fear that the battle is lost. Do you deny that you have pro-1) rapporter. 2) fire arrivé à qn. 3) méler. 4) depuis que. cured [for] him the means of flight<sup>6</sup>? I de not deny that I have given him some clothes and some money. I will hinder him from coming back. I deubt whether the letter has been sent to him (see p. 299, §. 1, Note 1). I cannot prevent him from loving (that he loves) pleasure<sup>6</sup> better than work<sup>6</sup>.

5) fuite, f. 6) put the def. article.

## Reading - lesson.

## Le Connétable de Bourbon et Bayard. (Suite.)

Le Connétable. Qu'as-tu donc? Est-ce que tu ne saurais te consoler d'avoir été vaincu et fait prisonnier dans la retraite de Bonnivet? Ce n'est pas ta faute, c'est la sienne: les armes sont journalières (*changing*). Ta gloire est assez bien établie par tant de belles actions. Les Impériaux <sup>1</sup> ne pourront jamais oublier cette vigoureuse défense de Mézières contre eux.

Bayard. Pour moi, je ne puis jamais oublier que vous êtes ce grand connétable, ce prince du plus noble sang qu'il y ait dans le monde, et qui travaille à déchirer<sup>2</sup> de ses propres mains sa patrie et le royaume de ses ancêtres.

Le Conn.. Quoi! Bayard, je te loue et tu me condamnes! Je te plains, et tu m'insultes!

Bay. Si vous me plaignez, je vous plains aussi; et je vous trouve bien plus à plaindre que moi. Je sors de la vie sans tache; j'ai sacrifié la mienne à mon devoir, je meurs pour mon pays, pour mon roi, estimé des ennemis de la France, et regretté de tous les bons Français. Mon état est digne d'envie.

Le Conn. Et moi, je suis victorieux d'un ennemi qui m'a outragé, je me venge de lui; je le chasse du Milanais<sup>3</sup>; je fais sentir à toute la France combien elle est malheureuse de m'avoir perdu, en me poussant à bout<sup>4</sup>. Appelles-tu cela être à plaindre?

Bay. Oui, on est toujours à plaindre quand on agit contre son devoir. Il vaut mieux périr en combattant pour la patrie, que de la vaincre et de triompher d'elle. Ah! quelle horrible gloire que celle de détruire <sup>6</sup> son propre pays!

(To be continued.)

1) The Imperial, Austrians. 2) to tear. 3) from the Milanese territory. 4) to the extreme. 5) destroy.

uestroy.

# SIXTEENTH LESSON.

## Remarks on some prepositions.

The use of the prepositions is of too various a nature to allow of its being determined by definite rules. Their departures from the original signification can only be shown by examples and by observing certain expressions, and we accordingly add the following observations as supplementary to lesson 33.

I. On the use of some French prepositions.

à.

à denotes 1) a place and is used before names of places (not countries), and common names (in English at or in):

à Paris, at Paris. | à l'église, at church. à la campagne, in the country. | à l'ombre, in the shade. au théâtre or au spectacle, at the theatre. à la poste, at the post-office. frapper à la porte, to knock at the door.

2) Time:

à quelle heure; at what o'clock? à deux heures, at two o'clock. à midi, at 12 o'clock. au commencement de la leçon, at the beginning of the lesson. à temps, in time. | à mon arrivée, on my arrival. à la pointe du jour, at day-break.

3) Manner and instrument:

à la mode, in fashion, fashionably. à pied, on foot. | à cheval, on horseback. à bras ouverts, with open arms. travailler à l'aiguille, to work with the needle. peindre à l'huile, to paint in oil. mesurer à l'aune, to measure by the ell (yard). deux à deux, two and two. goutte à goutte, drop by drop. à bon marché, cheap. | à cing pour cent, at 5 per cent. 4) Destination:

Une cuiller à thé, a tea-spoon. une montre à répétition, a repeater (watch). une bouteille à l'encre, an ink-bottle.

5) Direction, especially with the verb aller or as rendre, to go (the English to):

Aller à Vienne, to go to Vienna. nous allons à la campagne, we are going into the country. aller au bal, to go to the ball. aller au théâtre, to go to the theatre. aller à la poste, to go to the post-office. aller à la chasse, to go hunting etc.

#### Dans, en.

Dans means both in and into a (closed) place; it is used in a more determinate sense and always followed by the article or another determinative word (such as: this, my, which etc.). Ex.:

Dans la (ma, votre) chambre, in the (my, your) room. dans ma poche, in my pocket.

dans la France méridionale, in Southern France.

dans l'hiver de 1850, in the winter of 1850.

dans mon voyage en Italy, on my journey in Italy.

il est dans la prison, he is in (the) prison (of that place). être dans la ville, to be within the town (not in the country).

Observe also the difference in the following expressions:

Il est au jardin and il est dans son jardin.

Je suis  $\hat{a}$  la maison (at home) and je suis dans ma maison.

En is used in a more vague sense and followed by no article. Ex.:

En liberté, in liberty. | en colère, in a passion.

en France, in or to France.

en Avril or au mois d'Avril, in April.

en été, in summer. | en hiver, in winter.

en automne, in autumn (but au\* printemps in spring).

\*) Better than en printemps, to avoid three nasal sounds.

en ces termse, in these words. vivre en paix, to live in peace.

être en ville, to be out, to be et home.

il est en prison, he is in prison (he is a prisoner).

Note. There are a few old expressions in which the article is still retained after en; such are: en l'air, in the open air; en l'absence, in the absence; en l'honneur, in honour.

Dans and en, relating to time are differently used. Dans denotes the point of time, on the duration. Ex.:

Je partirai dans huit jours, I shall set out in a week.

Mr. B. reviendra dans deux mois, Mr. B. will return in two months.

Jai appris le français en dix mois, I learned French in ten months.

## Entre, parmi.

Entre answers in general to the English between, betwixt, and is further used when between is synonymous with among. Ex.:

Entre la porte et la fenêtre, between the door and the window.

il fut trauvé entre les morts, he was found among the dead. entre autres = amongst others.

La mère tenait l'enfant en tre ses bras. The mother held her child in her arms.

Parmi denotes an indefinite number, as:

> Parmi les rochers, among the rocks.

Votre grammaire se trouva parmi mes livres. Your grammar was found among my books.

## Bevant, avant.

Devant is a local preposition, and is also used for in presence of, as:

Nous jouerons devant la maison, we will play before the house.

il a paru devant le juge; he appeared before the judge.

Sur le devant means in the front; the front deor-

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II.

Avant denotes priority of time and order, as: Je suis arrivé avant vous, 'I 'arrived' before you. " L'article se met avant le nom. The article is put before the noun. Avant tout means above all. ٠. 1 CON DE LES NOS Avant'is also used before an infinitive with de: 11- -: a 5 (t at a Avant de parair, before leaving. a set of the set for "Envirs. versite 92 . We have an ext Envers; towards, to, is used for with regard to, in a moral sense, as: which is a many of Soyez charitables envers les pauvres. . . . V Be charitable towards the poor. ۱. Comportez-vous bien envers lui. Behave well towards him (with regard to him). . Vers expresses motion, and is put before names of places and persons dw live readarch at the product of Vers la colline, towards the shill. A man atter spontent il s'avança vers moi, he advanced towards me. Chez. Chez might be rendered in English by at the house of, with, among etc. Ex.: Chez votre père, at your father's. chez les Romains, among the Romans. chacun est mattre chez soi, everybody is master in his own house. i. je viens de chez vous, I come from your house. Hors de, hors. 1) Hors de denotes an exclusion from a place, out of, outside of, without Ex.: N. Hors de la maison, out of the house. era in hors du royaume, out of the kingdom. Note. In this signification de may be left out, as: hors la maison, hors la barrière etc. =2). Hors de is also used in a figurative or temporal sense, as:

## bon R estiliare de danger ) he is out of danger. A commentation hors d'état, out of condition; mable to the state of the second 3) Hors (without de) signifies except, besides: Tout le monde est arrivé hors mon frère Charles. All have arrived except my brother Charles. With the exception of that we are agreed. <sup>1</sup> 1 Note: A In this sense homie is boundtimes used for hore. (11) men. He lives will be beather. The tailor will come to your neur outoo I S. D'anocuidiantica da dassanar etcomornoine et etc. te Somer prépositions are preséded dy de twhich serves to indicate the point from which an action proceeds, as: 9. Ma separation d' a v e c mon pere My separation from my father On arracha Denfant d'entre les bras de sa mère. They tore the child from the arms of its mother. On le tira de dessous le lit. They drew him from under the bed. Sans. San's, without, is sometimes expressed in English . · · · · · by but for. Ex.: Sans lui, je serai mort de faim. ' But for him, T should have starwed. A starwey the inclusion 1. . . . Ex.: Thème. 33.

Where are you going? I am going into the country. Goethe died at Weimar in the year (en) 1833. My friend arrived in the beginning of summer; he was 'received with open arms. Is this book to (à) your 'taste'? No, I do not like it. (It does not please methods methods much and the garden. In the absense of the king, who is now in Italy, these affairs must be suspended?. The poor man had to choose between slavery and death. Why has she been so injust towards her parents? Did you arrive before or after 4 o'clock? Before the church there are three high poplars? My neighbour was kindly disposed towards me. I found this

1) goût, m. 2) suspendre. 3) i'ssclavag2, m. 4) peuplier, m. 22\*

letter among my papers. Brandy (*l'eau de vie*) is the source of great evils among that people.

#### 34.

They (on) told me amongst other things that the ship had been taken by the enemy (pl.). The old man was unable (not in a condition) to do anything for her. He has sold all his horses except one or two. I went from Hamburg to Altona. Now we turn to (towards) the south. Among the German merchants in London, there are many beneficent<sup>1</sup> men. He lives with his brother. The tailor will come to your house to-morrow. Where do you come from? I come from my sunt's. The wooden horse was outside the walls<sup>2</sup> of Troy. The patient<sup>3</sup> is at present out of danger. Nobody besides myself was present. Out of (sur) sixty soldiers who tried the attack, twenty five fell into (entre) the hands of the enemy (pl.). One must distinguish (the) true friendship from (d'avec) (the) false. The dog sprang out<sup>4</sup> from under the table.

1) bienfaisant. 2) les murs de Troie. 3) le malade. 4) sauter.

# II. How to express some English prepositions.

## above.

Above, when it expresses time or number, so as to signify more than or longer than, is rendered in French by plus de. Ex.:

The fight lasted above four hours. Le combat dura plus de quatre heures. It is above twenty miles from here. Il y a plus de wingt lieues d'ici.

#### about.

About: 1) in the sense of round is to be rendered by autour de; 2) in the signification of: concerning it is touchant, concernant, sur or simply de; 3) in speaking of things which people carry about them, it is translated with sur. Ex.:

1) All thronged about the prince.

Tout le monde se pressa autour du prince.

- I will speak to him about our affair. Je lui parlerai touchant (or sur or de) notre affaire.
   We shall consider about this matter. Nous réféchirons sur cette affaire.
- 3) I have no money about me. Je n'ai pas d'argent sur moi.

#### at.

At: 1) is most commonly rendered by a with or without an article; 2) after nouns or verbs denoting *deri*sion, anger, surprise, sorrow etc., at is rendered by de; 3) at is translated *chez*, when, in English, it precedes the word house, either expressed or understood. Ex.:

- 1) We were at dinner, nous tions it diner. Do you play at cards, jouez-vous au x cards?
- She laughed at him, elle se moqua de lui.
   I am surprised at what you say.
   Je suis surpris de ce que vous dites.
- 3) We were at your aunt's, nous étions chez votre tante.

#### · by.

By: 1) denoting the agent or cause is translated de or par (see p. 124, Remark). Ex.:

Mr. Bell is respected by everybody. M. Bell est respecté de sout le monde. Troy was destroyed by the Greeks. Troie fui détruite par les Grecs.

2) In affirmations and swearing by is translated par: He swears by his honour, il en jure par son honneur.

3) By, after the verbs to sell, to buy, to work etc., preceding a noun of weight or measure, day; week, month or year, is rendered into French by à with the definite article. Ex.:

I sell the tea by the pound, je vends le the à la liere. We work by the hour or by the day. Nous travaillons à l'heure ou à la journée. 4) When preceding a numeral immediately followed by an adjective of *dimension* by is rendered in French by sur. Ex.:

This room is fifteen feet long by ten wide. Cette chambre a quinze pieds de longueur sur dix de largear.

5) By, immediately following the verbs to kill, to wound etc., is translated in French by d'un coup de, when it expresses the blow, wound, firing etc. of an instrument by which a man was wounded, killed etc. Examples:

The officier was wounded by a bullet de the (E L'officier fut blesse d'un coup we fuent sould now all

Achilles was killed at the siege of Troy by an strow. Achille fut tué au siège de Troid d'un coup de fèdhe.

Note. If the blows have been repeated, A. coups de is used, in which case it is most commonly rendered in English by with. Ex.:

They knocked him down with a stick.

· Ils Fassonmerent de comps de baten 200 13 0.02 677 (8

## fram.

1) Firom, preceding the name of a person or a possessive adjective, or a personal or interrogative pronoun after the verbs to go, to come, to send etc. is generally rendered by de la part de. Ex.; Will M

Many compliments from Dr. O. Monsieur de dosfeur O.

I come from him or her (from them) etc. Je viens de sa part (de teur part). Millemuitte al (2

2) From, meaning from some one's house, is in French de chez: Ex. and a chez of edge of rotts y H (8 I come from my uncle's paints reto. atom a guides or p

Je view in sher non ioncla', I m; de aber mar tante eten in

3) From and to, used in the same sentence is intendered by do --- en. Ex. former out yet not out the 1

He went from street to street, from town to town etc. Il alla de rus en rus, de ville en ville stc.

Note. When two names. of downs or villages are men-From Paris to Rogen , de Paris à Rouge. 1-11 (1 -1) -1 4) From is rendered by depuis mand to by jusqu't, when speaking of extent or time. Ex.: .....

From Easter to Christmas, depuis Paques juegu'à Noël. in the property of

. . . **in.** . .

1979 19an. - -1) In = dans or en see p. 324 and 325.

2) In, after words denoting pain, hurting etc. and preceding a possessive adjective with any part of the body, is to be rendered by a with the definite article. **Examples:** 

I have constantly a pain in my head. 2. 152. (1997) *Jai toyiours mal à la tête* (1997) J'ai toujours mat à la tête. The child fell down and was hurt in the shoulder. L'enfant tomba et se blessa à l'épaule.

3) In adverbial expressions of time, in is not expressed in French. Ex.:

In the morning, le main. I In the evening, le spir.

2. Eralest all with his on or upon. Tag report diff VI (t .... 1) On or upon is most generally sure Ext: . . . He climbed upon the tree , it grimpa sur l'antre. . . .....

2) After the verbs to play; to live, to depend; and the like, on or upon is rendered by del Ex. Hu oll

You play on the violin, and I play on the flute. Vous jouez d'u violon et moi! je foue! d e 1 d Mate ... A good end often depends on a good beginning. Une bonne fin dépend souvent, d'un bon commencement. The prisoner lives on bread, and water.

Le prisonnier vil de pain et d'eau. Com administration de la pain et d'eau. · · · ·

3) The preposition on before the days of the week and with dates, is dropped in French iEx. Stall

Come on Sunday, venesa Dimanches madring out On the twelfth of May, le douse Mai,

#### 0**7er.**

This preposition is commonly rendered in French by sur, but it must be expressed by the participle past of the verbs passer, finir, achever, when it denotes an action ended. Ex.:

As soon as the rain will be over. Dès que la pluie sera passée. Is dinner over, le dîner est-il fini?

#### with.

1) With is rendered by de after such verbs as: to die, to meddle, to do, to dispense, to load, to cover, to fill, and after some adjectives, as: pleased, contented etc. (See p. 274, §. 1 and 2.) Ex.:

He died with cold, il mourut de froid. The waggon is loaded with goods. La voiture est chargés de marchandises.

2) With is expressed by à and the article, before nouns denoting *in what manner* a thing is done or made:

To draw with a pencil, dessiner au crayon.

To fight with pistols, se battre au pistolet.

3) With must not be expressed after the following verbs: to meet with, rencontrer (acc.); to trust with, confier qch. à qn.; to supply with, fournir ych. à qn.; to reproach with, reprocher gch. à gn.

We will supply him with every thing. Nous but fournirons tout.

I reproached him with his ingratitude. Je hui reprochai son ingratitude,

## Remark.

Prepositions are placed in French before the words they govern; in English they are sometimes placed after. Ex.:

Whom do you speak to, à qui parlez-vous! What's that for, pourquoi cela?

The man mhan man and interested A

The man whom you are interested for.

L'homme pour qui vous vous intéresses.

#### Them. 35.

My father was not above twenty two years old, when he was married<sup>1</sup>. My uncle's country-house<sup>2</sup> is very handsome, but it cost him above eighty thousand france. It is above a year since my friend set off for <sup>3</sup> America. Rome was built by Romulus. The poor man has been driven out<sup>4</sup> of his house by his creditors<sup>5</sup>. I will get up to-morrow at six o'clock. Were you at Mrs. D.'s ball last night? I will pay you at the end of this month. I rejoice greatly at your good luck<sup>6</sup>. She always smiles<sup>7</sup> at every thing that is said. Where was your sister this morning? She was at her aunt's. My box<sup>6</sup> is a foot and a half deep by two wide and four long. Harold was wounded by an arrow<sup>6</sup>. William the Second was killed by an arrow in the New-forest. He is so strong that with his first<sup>10</sup> he could knock down<sup>11</sup> an ox. They killed the dog with stones. The soldiers kill one arother with bayonets<sup>12</sup>. Go from me to Mr. Smith and tell him that I am expecting him.

to be married == se marier.
 la maison de campagne.
 pour.
 chassé.
 créancier, m.
 bonheur.
 sourire.
 le coffre.
 flèche, f.
 le poing.
 abaitre.
 la baionette.

#### 36.

From whom do you come? I come from Miss B. I never received such an affront 1 from a Frenchman. Charles was wounded in his arm and not (non) in his leg. I have very eften a pain in my teeth. I will oak upon you in the afternoon, and in the evening. (I will) go to the play. Upon what instrument does your sister play? She plays the piano. Men (on) do not live only on bread and meat, but on the grace of God. That happened<sup>2</sup> on the 12th [of] March. I am in the habit<sup>3</sup> of taking a cup of coffee as soon as (the) dinner is over. Do not meddle to with my affuirs, attend to your own. Is that house covered with slates 5 or tiles 6? It is covered with tiles. This picture seems to be done with chalk 7. When you meet a peor man, never reproach him [with] his poverty. France extends 8 from the Rhine to the Atlantic<sup>9</sup> Ocean. What does he complain<sup>10</sup> of? We have

1) affront, m.; insulte, f. 2) se passa. 3) to be in the habit of = avoir l'habitude de ... 4) se méler. 5) ardoise, in sing. 6) tuile, in pl. 7) craie, f. 8) s'étendre. 9) l'Océan Atlantique. 10) se plaindre de qch. travelled from Switzerland to **italy**. You spend all the day in going (à eller) from house; to house, from, street, to ptreet, from place to place. Those labourers <sup>11</sup>, work from (depuis) morning <sup>12</sup>, to pight <sup>12</sup>. I walk every day from twelve (midi) to three, and the strike is the strike of the strike is 
(a) A set of the se

# SEVENTEENTH LESSON.

Different uses of the conjunction que.

I. Que with the Indicative. S. 1. The conjunction que is used: 1) to join the two terms of a comparison (see p. 75) S. 4 and p. 320, S. 2); - 2) to restrain a negative sentence, for Bult or only, as: Elle n'a que deux frères, she has only two brothers (see p. 150, S. 10).

§. 2. The que of admiration or exclamation expresses wonder or surprise; it answers to the English words how, how much, how many! Ex.:

Que vous êtes heureux how happy you are! Que la terre ast petite en comparaison avae le soleil l How small is the parth compared with the sun l Que de peine vous prenex pour moi l

How much trouble you take for mo! S. 3. In short, exclamations gue, is often inserted after the noun for the sake of euphony. Ex.:

· Quel beau pairs que l'halie!

What a beautiful country Italy is! Quel homme que ce Fénélon F What a man that Fenelon is!

§. 4. It stands for *pourquoi* in negative exclamations (see p. 319, §. 9), as:

Que ne puis-je vous aider ! why can I not assist you!

with S: 5. The French paraphrase of a sentence with c'est is followed by que, whereas in English this is not expressed. Ex.: A set of the set of the set of the - C'est une belle choise au e la discrétion. . Discretion is a good thing. C'est une chose détestable que la haine. Hatred is a detestable thing. If however an infinitive follows, que need not be used : C'est une honte (que) d'ignorer sa langue maternelle. It is a shame not to know one's mother-tongue. S. 6. Que must be inserted after c'est-à-dire, that is to say (i. e.), when a verb follows. Que is also frequently used after voilà and peut-être. Ex.: . Vous seres parfaitement libres, c'est-à-dire que vous ne dépendrez de personne. You will be perfectly free, that is to say, you will depend . . († . upon nobody. §. 7. In the expressions: que oui, yes; que si! o yes! que non, no; que is used pleonastically. §. 8. Que stands for since instead of depuis que: Combien y a-t-il que votre sœur est morte? How long is it since your sister died? §. 9. For when, after à peine, scarcely, and in the signification of as or when, after the specification of a time, in which case the use of lorsque would be incorrect. Ex.: A peiné était-il sorti, que la maison s'écroula. Scarcely was he gone out, when the house fell in. Un matin que je sortais de très bonne heure. One morning as I went out early. Maintenant que vous êtes en France etc. New that you are in France.

§. 10. Que corresponds with the English that after all verbs of thinking, feeling, saying,\*) as: dire, affirmer, répondre, déclarer, croire, penser, sentir etc., and usually takes the Indicative, when these words are used affirmatively. In English the that is often omitted, but in French it must always be employed. Ex.:

Dites-lui que je l'attende. Tell him that I am waiting for him. Il m'a répondu qu'il n'en savait rien. He answered me that he knew nothing of it. On croit qu'elle est très riche. She is supposed to be very rich.

Note. Que is not only always expressed in French, but repeated before each member of the preposition. Ex.:

Je crois que vous vous trompez et que vous ne réussirez pas. I think you are mistaken, and that you will not succeed.

§. 11. In many cases where the conjunction is repeated in English, the French, instead of repeating it, put que in the place of it. This is the case with *lorsque*, quand, pendant que, tandis que, parce que, tant que and dès que. Ex.:

Lorsque l'empersur fut revenu et qu'il (and when he) eut visité le camp, il résolut de livrer bataille.

Tandis que Charles XII donnait un roi à la Pologne soumise, que le Danemark n'osait le troubler et que le roi de Prusse recherchait son amitié, le czar devenait de jour en jour plus redoutable.

#### Thème. 37.

I am much younger than you. Caroline is only seventeen years old. How pretty she is! How I hate flatterers <sup>1</sup>! How small is the part of the world which we inhabit<sup>2</sup>! What (que de) misfortunes you have undergone<sup>3</sup>! .Russia, what a monstrous <sup>4</sup> country (§. 3)! If you are (avez) cold, 1) flatteur. 2) habiter. 3) eprouves. 4) immense.

\*) Where in Latin the Acc. is used with the Infinitice.

why  $(\S. 4)$  don't you put on your cloak? It is a very difficult thing to know  $(\S. 5)$  [how to] keep what one has. Look, it rains! Perhaps he will come. I believe (that) you are right. He told me that he had not yet received a letter from his uncle. Are you ready? O no!  $(\S. 7)$  I cannot have done<sup>5</sup> before an hour. Have you not been there? O yes! How long is it since you lost your father? One day when the two sparrows<sup>6</sup> had flown out<sup>7</sup>, the children took away<sup>8</sup> their nest. Tell me the day (on which,  $\S. 9$ ) you think<sup>9</sup> of leaving. I think he is not at home. Scarcely is he out of bed before he begins to work. Why  $(\S. 4)$  did you not tell it? When you have acknewledged your faults, and  $(\S. 11)$ you have repaired <sup>10</sup> them, I will forgive you.

5) fini. 6) le moineau. 7) était sorti. 8) enlever. 9) vous comptez partir. 10) reparées.

II. Que with the subjunctive mood.

§. 1. Que in a conditional sense is used in the beginning of a sentence, for the word whether, and in the middle, to avoid the repetition of si: in both cases it governs the subjunctive mood. Ex.:

Whether he come or not, I do not care.

Qu'il vienne ou non, je ne m'en soucie pas.

If somebody calls and I am out, send for me.

Si quelqu'un vient me voir et que je sois sorti, envoyez-moi chercher.

If you meet her and (if) you have time to speak to her. Si vous la rencontrez et que vous a'yez le temps de lui parler.

§. 2. For till, intead of jusqu'à ce que after attendre, to wait. Ex.:

Wait till it gets less cold, attendes qu'il fasse moine froid. Your must wait till I am back.

Il faut attendre que je sois de retour.

§. 3. For the English third person of the Imperative let him or let them, as:

Let him come, qu'il vienne. Let them do it, qu'ils (qu'elles) le fassent.

S. 4. For that instead of pour que, win que: div "Come here, that I may speak to you and ghill have Venez ici que je vous parte. To southout bit oll stight out §. 5. Que is used with ne for the English but. (or but that) after verbs expressing doubt, four stc. (see p. 320, S. 3). Ex.: J' don't doubt but you are right. , Je ne doute pas que vous n'ayez raison. S. 6. In the same manner que is used for before instead of avant que; for upless instead of a moins que; for without instead of sans que, and for yet instead of et cependant. Ex.: I shall not no go out before you are in. Je ne sortirai pas que vous ne soyez rentré. I shall hot pardon you unless you acknowledge your faults. - ' Je ne vous pardonnerai pas qu'e vous ne reconnaissiez vos an faithe faither in the state that the state of the He takes no trip without some accident befalling him. Il ne fait pas de voyage qu'il ne lui arrive quelque accident. Though he should have all the gold in the world, yet he would not be satisfied. Il aurait tout l'or du monde, qu'il n'e serait pas content. (For the use of que instead of repeating compound, conjunctions, and after verbs governing the subjunctive, see the Lesson on the Subjunctive mood.)

Thème. 38.

Whether it rain or not, I must go out directly. If I were rich and had children, I would give them a good education. Whether you be rich or poor, you should (devez) be a man of probity. He had not a doubt (die not doubt) but this was his pursuer<sup>1</sup>. Waiti till the rain is over. A miser<sup>2</sup> might have all the gold in the world, he would never be satisfied. You shall not go out before it is light<sup>3</sup>. Let him have his share<sup>4</sup>. Come that I may tell you the reason of that thing (en). May heaven bless<sup>5</sup> you! "May the earth

1) persécuteur. 2) avare, f. 3) to be light = faire jour. -4) part, f. 5) dénir. hie lightly on him (be light to him). Let thim employ his time well. I shall not beave the house (go exit) before you pay me. He cannot play but he hurts <sup>7</sup> himself: If you go to Paris and (§. 1) will take me with you. I shall be most happy <sup>8</sup>. My friend says the will not apay the bookseller <sup>9</sup> before he has received all the books (which he that) ordered. I shall put off<sup>10</sup> my journey; I shall wait till your time allows you to accompany method with a substant the shore the shore allows you to accompany method with a substant to the shore the shore before if it is faire matheful and the shore to be you to a shore you to accompany method with a substant to the shore the shore if b) lighter. <sup>17</sup> be faire matheful and the substant is the shore of the shore is the shore if the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore is the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore is the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore is the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore is the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore is the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore is the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore is the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore of the shore is the shore of the shore is the shore of t

(Suite.)

Le Connétable. Mais ma patrie a été ingrate après tant de services que je lui avais rendus. Le roi m'a fait une injustice énorme. / En mei dépondent de moi bien, on a détaché de moi jusqu'à (éven) més doméstiques, Matignon et d'Argouges. J'ai été icontraint, appurfissures mes vie, de m'enfuir presque seul. Que voulais-tu que je fisse?

- Bayard. Que vous souffrissez toutes sortes dé maux, plutôt que de manquer à la France et à la grandeur de votre maison. Si la persécution était trop violente, vous peuviez vous retirer: mais il valait mieux être pauvre, obscur, inutile à tout, que de préndre les armes contre nous. Votre gloire eat été au comble<sup>2</sup> dans la pauvreté et dans le plus misér rable exil.

Le Conn. Mais ne vois-tu pas que la véngeance s'est jointe à l'ambition pour me jeter dans cetté extrêmité?' J'ai voulu que le roi se repentit de m'avoir traité si mal.

Bay. Il fallait l'en faire, repentir par une patience à toute épreuve, qui n'est pas moins la vertu d'un héros que le courage.

Le Conn. Mais le roi<sub>9</sub>, étant si injuste et si aveuglé<sup>3</sup> par sa mère, méritait-il que j'eusse de si grands égards pour lui?

Bay. Si le roi ne le méritait, pas, la France entière le méritait. La dignité même de la couronne, dont vous êtes un des héritiers, le méritait. Vous vous deviez<sup>4</sup> à vousmême d'épargner<sup>5</sup> la France, dont vous pouviez être un jour roi.

1) fail (2) the highest. 8) blinded. 4) to owe. 5) to spare.

Le Conn. Et bien! j'ai tort, je l'avoue; mais ne sais-tu pas combien les meilleurs cosurs oat de peine à résister à leur ressentiment?

Bay. Je le sais bien: mais le vrai courage consiste à résister. Si vous connaissez votre faute, hâtez-vous de la réparer. Pour moi, je meurs, et je vous trouve plus à plaindre dans vos prospérités, que moi dans mes souffrances. Quand l'empereur ne vous tromperait pas, quand même il vous donnerait sa sœur en mariage, et qu'il partagerait la France avec vous, il n'effacerait point la tache <sup>6</sup> qui déabouore votre vie. Le connétable de Bourbon rebelle! ah! quelle honte! Écoutez Bayard mourant comme il a vécu, et ne cessant de dire la vérité.

6) the stain.

# EIGHTEENTH LESSON.

## Government of verbs.

§. 1. The regular way in which the object is connected with active verbs is by the accusative, as:

Jaime mon père. Vous lisez un livre.

§. 2. Some verbs are accompanied by two regimena holding different relations; then the regimen representing the thing or object is called *régime direct* and is in the accusative, and that representing the *person* is called *régime indirect*, and is in the dative. Ex.:

Je donnerai ce livre à votre frère.

Le maître a donné un prix à l'élève.

The master has given a prize to the pupil.

Here ce livre and un prix are the régime direct; à votre frère and à l'élève are the dative or régime indirect.

§. 3. Other verbs having only one object, require it in the Dative or in the Genitive, or even the object is connected with the verb by a *preposition*. In this the French verbs do not very much agree with the English, and therefore it may be better, to enumerate those verbs which differ in the two languages. Of the verbs which in English require a preposition such as: at, of, from, to, with, for etc., the following govern the accusative:

§. 4. Verbs governing in French the accusative: devenir, to become of. Accepter, to accept of. admettre, to admit of. écouler, to listen to. envoyer chercher, to send for. approuver, to approve of. attendre, to wait for. espérer, to hope for. expier, to atone for. chercher, to look (seek) for. connaître, to be acquainted fournir, to supply with. posséder, to be possessed of. with (to know). considérer, to look upon. prier Dieu, to pray to God. désirer, to wish for. regarder, to look at. désirer avec ardeur, to long rencontrer, to meet wih. for. résoudre, to resolve upon.

#### Examples.

Jaccepte votre obligeante offre, I accept (of) your kind offer. Attendez-vous votre frère, are you waiting for your brother? Qu'étes-vous devenu, what has become of you? Il faut envoyer chercher le médecin, we must send for

the doctor.

§. 5. Verbs governing in French the dative(a), in English a preposition:

Emprunter à qn., to borrow pourvoir à, to provide for. of (see §. 9, 4). frapper à, to knock at. penser à, i to think of. songer à, i to think of.

Examples.

Qui a frappé à la porte, who has knocked at the door? Penses à votre promesse, think of your promise.

Je pourvoirai à vos besoins, I shall provide for your wants.

\*) The abbreviation qch. signifies quelque chose, 1. e. the accusative implying an inanimate object; and qn. signifies quelqu'un which indicates the person in the accusative.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II.

## Thôme. 39.

God accepts of our repentance,", provided it be, sincere. We do not admit (of) her excuse. Do you approve of my choice"? No, I disapprove of it. For whom are you waiting? I am waiting for the postman<sup>8</sup>. If you seek for happiness anywhere<sup>4</sup> but in God and in yourself, your are sure to be disappointed <sup>5</sup>. Look for that word in the dictionary. He that was never acquainted with adversity, says Seneca, knows the world but on (d) one side. What will become of him without friends and without money? All nations wish for liberty. I will tell you a story if you will listen to me. My daughter is fallen ill, I must send for the physician. Do you hope for pardon? It is in vain. The king will never pardon you. Have you resolved upon your departure 6? Henry the Fourth looked upon the good education of youth as a thing upon which (d'où) depends the felicity of kingdoms' and people (pl.). The poor boy knocked twice at the door, but we did not hear him. Think of your promise<sup>8</sup>. I will think of it (y). (The) divine providence presides over human affairs. When you meet a poor man, never reproach him with his poverty.

1) repentir, m. '2) choix, m. 3) facteur, m. 4) ailleurs qu'. 5) tromper. 6) départ, m. 7) see p. 237, §. 3. — 8) promesse, f.

§. 6. Verbs with the *dative*, in English with the *accusative*: Apprendre) gch. à qn, to teach permettre à qn, to allow one. enseigner ( one something. plaire à qn, to please one.

remédier à gch., to remedy.

renoncer à qch., to renounce, abdicate something.

résigner à qch., to resign something.

résister à qn., to resist one. ressembler à qn., to resemble one.

subvenir à, to relieve.

succéder à, to succeed.

se soustraire à, to keep out of the way.

survive  $\lambda$ , to outlive, survive. toucher d gch., to touch something.

give one. parvenir à gch., to attain.

obtir à qu., to obey one.

ordonner à gn., to order.

conseiller gch. à gn., to advise.

convenir à qn., to suit anyone.

déplaire à qn., to displease one. désobéir à qn., to disobey one.

dire à qn., to tell some one.

faire tort à qn., to wrong one.

se for à qn., to trust one.

nuire à qn., to hurt, injure one.

pardonner à, to pardon, for-

#### Examples,

Il faut obéir à vos parents, you must obey your parents. On ns peut pas plaire à tout le monde.

You cannot please everybody.

. 7 1

Ne vous fiez pas à lui, do not trust him.

## Theme. 40.

. Who teaches your brother French? Mr. R., who is a very good teacher. This ribbon does not please my sister. You have wronged your neighbour; you have hurt his credit<sup>1</sup>; at least he says so ( $l_0$ ). A good Christian forgives his enermies. Miss Mary resembles her mother [very] much. Will you allow your pupils to take a walk this afternoon? Yes, I will allow them to go with you. Children must obey their parents. The officer disobeyed the orders of the king. The son succeeded his father. The riches of the count would have relieved the wants<sup>2</sup> of the poor. He who wishes to please everybody, runs the risk<sup>8</sup> of pleasing (*de no plaire*) nobody. Lewis the Fourteenth survived his son, the dauphin, and his grand-son<sup>4</sup>. Do not touch anything.

1) crédit, m. 2) besoin, m. 3) courir risque. 4) petit-fils.

§. 7. Verbs governing the genitive.

Verbs which require in English the prepositions of and from are generally followed in French by de. Besides these, the following also require de.

Accabler de, to overwhelm. s'acquitter de qch., to discharge. s'affliger de, to be afflicted at. s'approcher de, ') to remark, to perceive. s'approcher de, ') to approach. s'approacher de, ') to approacher de,

\*) Apercevoir, when not a pronominal verb, governs the acsusative and applies to visible objects, as: J'apercus une famme.

23\*

brûler de, to burn with: charger de, to load with. combler de, § se contenter de, to be satisfied or contented with. couvrir de, to cover with. se défier de, ) to distrust. se méfier de, \ dépendre de, to be dependent on. envelopper de, to wrap up in. faire de, to do with (to make use of). faire present de, to present with. féliciter qn. de qch., to congratulate on. fourmiller de, to swarm with. honorer de, to honour with. jouir de qch., to enjoy. médire de qn., to traduce, to slander. se mêler de qch., to meddle with.

se moquer de qn., to laugh at, to mock. mourir de, to die of. munir de, to furnish, provide with. se passer de gch., to do without. périr de, to perish or die with. profiter de gch., to profit by. pourvoir de, to provide with. punir de qch., to punish for. récompenser de gch., to reward for. regarder de, to regard with. se réjouir de , to rejoice at. remercier de gch., to thank for something. remplir de, to fill with. se repentir de, to repent. rire de, to laugh at. se souvenir de, to remember, to recollect. sourire de, to smile at. triompher de, to triumph over. se tromper de, to mistake.

#### Examples.

Approchez-vous du feu, come near the fire. Je me suis défié de ses promesses, I distrusted his promises.

On m'accabla de reproches.

They overwhelmed me with reproaches.

Elle souria de notre embarras.

She smiled at our embarrassment.

#### Thème. 41.

He was overwhelmed with reproaches <sup>1</sup>. You must discharge that obligation. Death pities nobody, neither rich (gen. sing.) nor poor. Come near the window. Nature wants few things. She is contented with little. Have you not perceived this mistake? No, Sir, I have not perceived it (en). The ground <sup>2</sup> was covered with snow. The general honored me with his friendship. Your brother presented me with this silver pen-holder <sup>3</sup>. The impious mock at virtue and religion. Do not meddle with my affairs. Distrust that man; he will laugh at your benefits<sup>5</sup> when he no longer requires them. Never traduce (slander) anybody. Mr. A. is a very strong man; he enjoys good health. If he repents his faults, I will pardon him. I cannot do without his help<sup>6</sup>. I hope (that) you will profit by this experience. Remember your promise. I remember that story very well. Everybody rejoices at that victory<sup>7</sup>.

1) reproche, m. 2) la terre. 3) porte-plume, m. 4) imple. 5) bienfait, m. 6) secoure, m. 7) victoire, f.

§. 8. Verbs with different governments.

The following verbs have different governments according to their different significations:

- 1) Abuser qn., to deceive. abuser de qch., to abuse, to misuse.
- 2) Assister qn., to assist, to help. assister à qch., to be present at.
- 3) Changer qch., to change, to alter, to exchange. changer de qch., to change, to choose one thing for another.

the changer en, to turn into.

- 4) Convenir de qch., to agree (construed with être). convenir à qu., to suit.
- Croire qn., to believe some one.
   croire qch., to believe something.
   croire à qch., to believe in something.
   croire en —, to believe in.
- 6) Demander qn., to ask or inquire for some one. demander qcb., to ask for something.
- demander à qu, to ask a person. demander qch à qu, to ask something of some one or to ask some one for something,
- Échapper and s'échapper des to escape from == out of. échapper à, to escape from == to avoid, to ho preserved from.
- 8) Insulter qn. or qch. (acc.), to offend by insults.
- insulter à gn. or à gch., to deride, to scorn, to insult.
- 9) Jouer à gch., to play at a game.
- jouer de l'argent, to play for money. jouer d'un instrument; to play (on) an instrument. se jouer de qn., to laugh at, to deceive.

- 10) Manquer; neuter verb without a regimen: to be wanting or missing. manquer qm. or qch., to miss, to fail in. manquer de qch., to be wanting in, to be short of. manquer d qm. or & qch. (also contre qch.), to fail in, to
- 11) Répondre à gch., to answer. [omit. répondre de gch., to answer for.
- 12) Satisfaire qn., to satisfy, to content. satisfaire à qch., to fulfil duties to ..., to satisfy.
- 13) Servir qn., to serve one, to be at one's service. servir de qch., to serve as something, for some one.
- 14) Souscrive goh., to subscribe, to sign. souscrive à gch., to approve of, to subscribe to.
- 15) User qch., to use up, to wear out. user de qch., to make use of, to use.

#### Examples.

On a changé les conditions, they have altered the conditions. J'ai changé de logement, I have taken other lodgings. Que demandez-vous, what do you ask for? Demandez à votre mère, ask your mother. J'ai demandé mon argent à mon onels, I have asked my money of my uncle.

Répondez à ma question, answer my question. Pouvez-vous répondre de sa-probité, can you answer for his honesty?

- mis nonesty i
- §. 9. Special remarks on some verbs:
- 1) Aider qn., to succour, to support.

aider à qn., to help, to aid in doing something.

- 2) Applaudir, to appland something, governs the accusative. applaudir, to applaud a person, governs the dative.
- 3) Approcher geh., active verb, to approach, to advance, to bring or push near.
  - epprocher on., to approach == to have a free access. approcher de qn. or de qch., to approach some one or something, to go or draw nearer (see §. 7).
- 4) Emprunter, to borrow, governs the dative of the person when represented by a personal pronoum (such as lui, leur, nous etc.). But it requires à or de, when the person is expressed by a noun (as: à ar de mon frère, of my brother).

-5) En crosse gol., to trust; to depend upon

- 6) Hériter geh de ga., to inherit something from some one. If however no person is mentioned, the thing is put in the genitive.
  - 7) Persuader qn. de qch., to convince a person of the truth of a thing.

persuader ach. à an., to persuade one to something.

8) Redoubler qch. (acc.), means to redouble == to reiterate. redoubler de qch., to redouble == to augment in force.

Examples.

Approchez la table, approach the table (bring it nearer). Tout le monde peut approcher notre prince, everybody has a free access to our prince.

Ne vous approches pas tant du bord, do not go so near the edge.

## §. 10. On the verb faire.

The verb faire when followed by an infinitive with an accusative, requires the person in the dative, the two verbs being considered as one verbal expression the sense of which is always active. The sense of it is that an active verb cannot have two direct complements. Ex.:

Je lui ai fait écrire cinquante mots.

I have made him write fifty words.

Sa mère lui a fait raconter cette histoire.

His mother caused him to relate that story.

. But if there be no accusative after the infinitive that follows fairs, the person stands in the accusative. Ex.:

Je les ai fait partir, I have made them depart.

Nous les avons fait renoncen à leur prétentions.

We have made them abandon their pretensions.

§. 11. The verbs entendre and voir, too, are sometimes used in this manner, as:

Je lui ai vu maltraiter son chien.

I saw him ill-treat his deg.

But this is not generally adopted, and it is better to say:

Je l'ai vu maltraiter son chien.

J'ai vu le petit garçon (acc.) maltraiter son chien.

§. 12. Only when the infinitive is followed by a subordinate sentence with que, the dative may be preferred, as:

Je lui ai entendu dire qu'il partirait.

I heard him say that he was going to leave.

Jai entendu dire à son père qu'il lui pardonnerait.

I heard his father say that he would forgive him.

#### Thème. 42.

The jailor <sup>1</sup> has deceived the prisoner with respect to (sur) the lot <sup>2</sup> which awaited him. Have you not abused our patience? We have abused it (en). The hour from 10 to 11 does not suit my sister. We have agreed on the price <sup>3</sup>. Let us always assist the poor. I have not been present at the funeral<sup>4</sup>. I have changed my opinion. Could you change me this napoleon? Industry is the true philosopher's <sup>5</sup> stone that changes all metals into gold. Whom have you asked for? I inquired for my eldest <sup>6</sup> brother. Have you asked your friend for money? I have not asked him for any. Do not believe that man, he is a liar<sup>7</sup>. I do not believe in his promises. We believe in God.

43.

The little bird has escaped from his cage. Can<sup>6</sup> you play at chees<sup>9</sup>? No, Sir, but will play at cards with you, if you like <sup>10</sup>. I play (on) the violin and my sister plays on the piano. We often play together. I was too late, I missed the train <sup>11</sup>. A soldier must (*doil*) not fail in courage. The pupil redoubled his application, when he heard that a prize<sup>8</sup> would be given. The man is too poor, he cannot satisfy his creditors<sup>12</sup>. Do you make use of spectacles<sup>13</sup>? Yes, I always wear spectacles; I am short-sighted <sup>14</sup>. Make him read a chapter <sup>18</sup> or two. I made him relate the story a second time. Charles the XII made all that multitude cross<sup>17</sup> the river, without detaining <sup>16</sup> a single soldier [a] prisoner.

the river, without detaining <sup>16</sup> a single soldier [a] prisoner.
1) le geolier.
2) le sort.
3) prix, m.
4) functailles, f. pl.
5) philosophe, m.
6) ainé.
7) menteur.
8) savoir.
9) aux échecs.
10) vouloir.
11) le convoi.
12) créancier.
13) lunettes, f. pl. —
14) fai la vue basse.
15) chapitre, m.
16) raconter.
17) repasser.
18) sans en retenir.

## Reading-lesson.

Marius dans les marais<sup>1</sup> de Minturnes.

La nature semble avoir conspiré avec Rome pour perdre un seul homme. C'est en vain que je cherche à passer la mer; elle me repousse<sup>2</sup>, et la terre elle-même refuse de me porter. Je demande à la terre ses ombres, mais un orage éclate, des éclairs luisent et trahissent<sup>3</sup> au monde que Marius fuit. Le ciel veut que ma misère équivaille dan bonheur étonnant qui l'a précédée:

Je n'irai pas plus loin; je ne survivrai pas & ma puissance; ce n'est pas d'aujourd'hui que je brave la mort. Demanderai-je aux Dieux une mort plus glorieuse? Quarante ans de combats m'épargnent ce soin, je n'en ai pas besoin pour être immortel. En mourant loin de Rome que j'ai servie si longtemps, je la punis de son ingratutide. Teutons, Cimbres, Gaulois! alliez-vous maintenant et faites Rome se repentir de ma mort : profitez de mon absence pour l'attaquer : personne ne pourra la secourir, puisque mon bras lui manque.

Que dis-je? Qui me répond de Sulla? Ne profitera-t-il pas de ma mort, pour s'emparer<sup>\*</sup> du gouvernement? Mon désespoir seconderait son prqueil; il en remercierait les Dieux. Son meilleur ami ne pour ait mieux le sertfr. Non, quelque grands que soient les maux dont la mort nous délivre, j'apprendrai au monde que je suis Marius qui ose vivre encore. Oui, je veux vivre, tant que je n'ai entendu le sénat révoquer mon jugement, tant que je n'ai fait Sulla se repentir de son crime. Je veux vivre et suivre mon sort; je veux essayer si le malheur est plus constant que moi-même.

1) marshes. 2) to repel, repulse. 3) to betray, to reveal. --4) to be equivalent. 5) to take possession of.

the state of the second st
Pourquoi la nature semblait Pour perdre un seul hommerel
elle avoir conspiré avec and the set of the
Rome? Et qui était cet homme? C'était Marius. Où se trouvait-il, lorsqu'il Il s'était réfugié dans les ma-
Où se trouvait-il, lorsqu'il Il s'était réfugié dans les ma-
fit ces réflexions? "rais de Minturnes.

Quel parti avait-il pris d'a-, Il avait d'abord mésolu de se donner la mort. bord?

Oui, il se détermina à conser-Changea-t-il ensuite de desver la vie. 1-11 1 1 3 910 sein?

Quelle pensée le fit changer (Lis pensée que Sulla profiterait de sa mort pour s'emparer de dessein (his mind)? <sup>11</sup> du gouvérnement.

Combien de temps voulait-il Tant que le Sénat n'est révoqué vivre encore ? ti and the de jugement porté contre luis

Que voulait+il essayer?

Est-ce qu'il périt dans ces marais?

Quel sort l'y attendait?

#### Qu'arriva-t-il ensuite?

LAP SET 1. SE

......

..:

Est-ce qu'il retourns plus Oui, il y retourns et fut nommé : tard a Rome?

- Hyoulait essayer ai de malhear était plus constant que luimême.
- Non, il fut découvert et mené à Minturnes.
- Il devait être mis à mort, mais il ne se trouva personne quì voulut le tuer.
- Les habitants de la ville le mirent en liberté et le firent embarquer.

- consul pour la septième fois:

· i · .

. · , /

# NINETEENTH LESSON.

## Use of the tenses of the Indicative.

I. Present Tense.

S. 1. The Present of the Indicative denotes that a thing is now passing, that is, either existing or doing, just as in English. In French there is only one form of this tense, as: Je lis, I read; j'aime, I like. The English form: I am reading, I am writing etc., must therefore always be translated, as if it were: I read, I write, je lis, J'écris, etc. Ex.:

The children are playing in the garden. Les enfants jouent au jardin.

§. 2. The Present tense is sometimes employed for the Future, when speaking of actions which are to be done at a time proximate or near, as:

J. Je par's demain, I. (shall) set off tommorrow.

5. 3. It is also used, in a narrative, instead of the preterite, in order to give more vivacity to the description, and to make the event, as it were, present.

For this reason it is called also the *historical* or narrative Present. Ex.:

A cette nouvelle, qu'il repousse avec irritation, Napoléan descend de la montagne du Salut et s'approche de la Maskwa et de la porte Dorogomilow. Il s'arrête (stops) encore à l'entrée de cette barrière, mais inutilement. Murat le presse etc.

Here repousse, descend, s'approche, s'arrête, presse are historical Presents (instead of repoussa, descendit, s'approcha, s'arrêta, pressa). It is particularly liked for euphony when several Passés définis of the first conjugation should be used. Ex.:

Mentor range les soldats, il marche à leur tête et s'avance vers les ennemis (instead of rangea, marcha, s'avança, which would be an harshness).

§. 4. The *Present tense* must also be used for the English *Perfect*, when a duration of time is expressed in which the condition is not yet past, but still lasting:

How long have you been here?

Depuis quand êtes-vous ici?

Have you had this dog long?

🗸 Y a-t-il longtemps que vous avez ce chien?"

' I have had him these two years.

Je l'ai depuis deux ans.

#### Thème. 44.

Do you speak French? Yes, Sir, [I do]. Is it raining? No, it does not rain. I do not like (the) lazy boys. We go often to the play. I cannot write with a bad pen. I see a man who is asleep <sup>1</sup>. What are you doing? I am reading a very amusing book; you must read it also; to-merrow I shall send it to you. I go to-night to the play, I set out to-merrow for Germany, if it be (s'il fait) fine weather. I shall be ready in a moment. How long have you been (§.4) at Paris? I have been here for (deputs) three months. Have you had this stick<sup>2</sup> long? I have had it for more than (de) four years. Has your father known that gentleman long? I think he has known him for a year or two.

1) qui dort. 2) canne, f.

# II. Past Tenses.

The Imperfect tense denotes in general an action not yet ended and still incomplete or going on while another or others took place.

§. 5. It is therefore used to express description of things habitual or stationary, repetition of an action, physical and moral qualities, traits of character etc.

#### Examples.

Henri IV était un bon prince, il avait de belles qualités, il aimait son peuple et en était aimé.

Je ne savais pas cela.

Pendant mon séjour à la campagne je me levais tous les matins à cinq heures et je faisais de longues promenades.

Calypso ne pouvait se consoler du départ d'Unysse. Sa grotte ne résonnait plus de son chant. Les nymphes qui la servaient, n'osaient lui parler. Elle se promenait souvent seule etc.

Lorsque j'étais en plein mer, je m'amusais quelquefois à dessiner les beaux nuages, semblables à des groupes de montagnes, qui voguaient à la suite les uns des autres, sur l'asur des cieux.

La grotte de la déesse était sur le penchant d'une colline: de là on découvrait la mer; d'un autre côté on voyait une rivière où se montraient des îles bordées de hauts peupliers qui portaient leurs têtes superbes jusque dans les nues. Les divers canaux qui formaient ces îles, sem blaient se jouer dans la campagne: les uns roulaient leurs éaux claires avec rapidité; d'autres avaient une eau paisible et dormants. On a percevait de loin des collines et des montagnes qui se perdaient dans les nues. Les montagnes voisines étaient couvertes de pamprés verts qui pendaient en festons: le raisin plus éclatant que la pourpre, ne pouvait se cacher sous les feuilles, et la vigne-était accablée sous son fruit:

§. 6. When two simultaneous actions or conditions are given, the *imperfect tense* must be used #):

, Il jouait pendant que j'écrivais.

Nous dormions pendant que vous vous promenies.

Quand j'étais à Londres, vous étiez à Paris.

<sup>•)</sup> Hence it is called by some grammarians the simultaneous past.

8. 7. When two occurences take place, that which is interrupted by the other and which was lasting before the other happened, must be in the Imperfect tense:

Je dormais (I was sleeping) lorsqu'il entra. Je le surpris pendant qu'il écrivait.

From this we see that whenever in English the Imperfect I was together with the Participle present is used (I was sleeping, I was writing, we were breakfasting etc.), in French the Imperfect tense must be employed.

§. 8. In longer narrations, all those parts which do not form the thread of the facts, but serve only to illustrate them, and which are only explanatory additions or observations of the writer, stand in the imperfect tense. Ex.:

Au temps que l'Italie était française, une sédition é clata (broke out) dans un des régiments en garnison à Livourne. C'était une affaire grave: c'était beaucoup plus qu'une mutinerie de soldats. L'empereur parut extrêmement irrité, lorsqu'il apprit cette nouvelle. Ses ordres étaient précis et terribles; il ne voulait pas de conseils de guerre (courts martial) etc.

Etait, staient and voulait serve as illustrative additions and explanatory observations of the writer on the facts expressed by the verbs eclata, parut, apprit.

§. 9. After the conjunction si, if, the Imperfect is used to denote a condition or supposition. Ex.:

Si j'avais de l'argent. Si mon frère venait etc.

Il me demanda si j'avais des heures libres.

He asked me if I had some hours to spare.

.§. 10. Sometimes the Imperfect is used instead of the Conditional, to denote that something would have happened, had not another occurence prevented it, as:

Jétais perdu, s'il ne m'avait pas retenu. I should have been lost, if he had not held me...

S. 11. In a similar manner the expressions i should have, ought to have and could have, are often rendered in French by the Imperfects: il fallait, je devies, il pouvait etc. Ex.:

Vous deviez me le dire tout de suite.

You ought to have told me directly.

§. 12. The Imperfect is also used in accessory sentences beginning with que, after verbs of thinking, believing, saying, remarking, asserting, proving etc., when these verbs are used in a past tense, just as in English:

Je croyais			÷		
	qu'il était malade	· .			۰.
on <del>r</del> épondit	et i		••		•
elle remarqua	qu'elle ne pouvait pas	venår.			
nous prouvâmes		:./		•.	•

Observe that the conjunction *that* which is often omitted in English, must always be expressed in French, as in the above sentence. Ex.:

I thought he was ill, je croyais qu'il était malade.

### Thème. 45.

Caesar was a great general. Henry the Fourth was a good king, he loved his people. We were at dinner when the courier <sup>1</sup> arrived (déf.). Tranquillity reigned throughout (dans) the whole country. The general was waiting for troops<sup>2</sup> which were to (devaient) come. My father studied (used to study) much when he was young. If he came now, he would find me prepared. When I was at Paris, I went every morning to take a walk in the Champs-Elysées, or the Bois de Bologne; afterwards <sup>3</sup> I came home, where I employed<sup>4</sup> myself till dinner, either in reading<sup>5</sup> or writing, and [in] the evening, I generally went [for] amusement<sup>6</sup> to the French Theatre or the Opera. If I were in France, I would learn French. If he had something, he would give it to you. I asked him if his father was at home. He answered that he did not know it. I thought you were wrong. I observed that he was quite pale<sup>7</sup>.

1) le courrier. 2) troupes, pl. f. 3) après cela. 4) s'occuper. 5) à lire. 6) m'anuser. 7) pêle. §. 13. The Preterite or Passé d'éfini (as: fallai, je vie, je veçus etc.) is used in French to express a particular fact or event entirely elapsed which has happened but once, or very seldom, at a time specified, and at the distance of at least a day. It is in fact the relating tense. Examples.

Je fus à Rome l'été passé.

Il partit le 20 Octobre.

Les Romains chassèrent Tarquin de Rome.

Après la mort d'Aristide, Cimon prit les rênes du gouvernement. Ce fut l'époque où la Grèce commença à produire les grands hommes.

12

·, ·.

N ....

Quand les ordres de Criton furent exècutés, un domestique apporta la coupe (cup, gobelet) fatate.

Le premier Octobre 1714 Charles XII quitta enfin la Turquie. Les Turcs a c c om pagnèrent le roi jusqu'à la frontière, et c om blèrent ce monarque de tous les signes de leur respect et de leur admiration. Pendant cinq jours Charles supporta la lenteur qu'entraîne naturellement un long cortége; le sixième jour il per dit patience et c onçut l'idée de continuer le voyage avec deux compagnons. Accompagné de deux colonels suédois, il abandonna le cortége. Tous trois franchirent la frontière et continuèrent le voyage à cheval avec une vitesse extraordinaire. Après 22 jours Charles arriva devant les portes de Stralsund.

§. 14. In longer narrations all the *facts*, which form the thread of the relation are expressed in the *Preterite*, whereas explanatory remarks serving only to elucidate or complete the relation of the facts, are in the *Imperfect* (see §. 8) or in the *Pluperfect*. Ex.:

Les onze magistrats qui veillaient à l'exécution des criminels se rendirent à la prison de Socrate pour lui annoncer le moment de son trépas (death). Plusieurs de ses disciples entrèrent ensuite; ils étaient à peu près au nombre de vingt; ils trouvèrent auprès de lui Xantippe, son épouse, qui tenait le plus jeune de ses enfants entre ses bras. Dès qu'elle les aperçut, elle s'éeria: Ahl voilà sos amis. Socrate pria Criton de la faire rememer chez elle (to take her home). Here the Pretarites rendirent, entrèrent, trouvèrent, operçut, s'écris and pris express the facts, whereas qui veillaient, ils étaient, qui tenait etc. are incidental additions and elucidations.

§. 15. When two facts occur together so that one is interrupted by the other, the verb of the second clause which begins with a conjunction and interrupts the other, is in the *Preterite* (see also §. 7). Ex.:

Je dormais quand il estrai

Je déjeunais quand vous vintès me demander. I was breakfasting when you came to ask for me.

§. 16. The Perfect tense (Passé indéfini) (j'ai vu, j'ai reçu etc.) is invariably used when we express a thing as having taken place at a time which is not specified:

J'ai perdu tous mes enfants. M. Laurent a beaucoup voyagé. Nous avons renoncé (given up) à nos droits. Alexandre le Grand a détruit l'empire des Perses.

§. 17. It is further used to express a thing past in a period not yet elapsed, as: this day, this week, this year, this winter etc. Ex.:

Nous avons eu cette année beaucoup de pluie (rain). L'avez-vous vu aujourd'hui? Oui, je l'ai vu ce matin? Cette semaine je n'ai pas été à la campagne.

§. 18. The Perfect is also used in French for the English Imperfect tense in most short questions and answers. Ex.:

Did you see him yesterday?

L'avez-vous vu hier (not le vîtes-vous)?

No, Sir, I did not see him.

Non, Monsieur, je ne l'ai pas vu.

Did they tell him to come at six?

Lui a-t-on dit de venir à six heures?

Yes, they told him to come at six o'clock precisely. Out, on lut a dit de venir à six heures précises.

§. 19. The Plupstfoot and Past anterior.

These tenses are formed from the Imperfect and Preterite and correspond to them fully; only that they represent their action as having taken place previous to some other event referred to, and consequently cannot be used entirely independently, but usually stand connected with a conjunction or an adverb of time. If this dependent past action is represented as historical, and dependent jupon a specified past time, the Past interior (compound of the Preterito) is employed, especially after the conjunctions: aussiful que, lorsque, des que, à petite, bientôt, en un moment, un jour que etc. Ex.:

Aussitôt que j'eus, ten min é mes affaires, je repartis. A peine eut-il prononcé ce mot, qu'il s'en repentit.

Dès que le parlement se fui assemblé, l'émeute cessa.

As soon as the parliament was assembled, the riot ceased. It is here not to be overlooked, that in the use of the *Passé antérieur* a more immediate relation, a closer connection must exist between the two past events.

S. 20. With the Pluperfect this close connection fails, and this is the distinguishing feature of the Pluperfect which is also used like the Imperfect for descriptions, for continuous events and frequently repeated previous actions. Examples:

Platon avait reçu de la nature un corps robuste. Javais dela terminé mes affaires, quand je reçus votre lettre.

A la campagne, quand j'avais dîné, je faisais une promenade de deux lieues.

§. 21. The *Pluperfect* is also used after the conjunction *si*, if, instead of the Conditional past (see §. 9). Examples:

Si vous étiez venu plus tôt, vous mauriez trousé à la maison. Sil avait par lé plus haut (louder), je l'aurais compris. Otto, French Conv.-Grammer. II. 24 Filthema + 44. A AV GAT BELLE

I saw the queen of England last year, My aunt fied the day before yesterday. Cato killed himself lest he sheuld (de peur de) fall into the hands of Caesar. Marius was illtreated by (de) forquae; however he did not lose [His] coursige. Bome was:, for (pendant) more than two handred years, the mistress r of the world. King Pepin died in 1268; Charles magne, his son, succeeded (him). We set off as soon as we had the order for it (en). My brother's servant brought me a letter this morning before I was up . Epaminondas refused the presents of Davius. ..... The dake of Bouillon' was obliged to give the town of Seden to Henry the Fourth ; but this prince, satisfied with his submission, gave, it him back<sup>‡</sup> soon. Napoleon was born<sup>6</sup> in Corsica<sup>7</sup>. ---- When some one represented to Napoleon that a thing was impossible, he declared that this word was not French.

1) la mattresse, 2) déf. of redevoir, 3) levé. 4) soumission, f. 5) rendre. 6) def. of the verb nattre, p. 179. 7) on Corse.

47

The horse, when he has run his course; the bee, when it has made its honey<sup>2</sup>, and the good man; when he has done good \* to others, do not make a noisy boast \* about it. but go on<sup>5</sup> to repeat the action, as the vine<sup>6</sup>, in its season, produces new clusters again. - Fénélon preached with success from the age of nineteen; and wrote many works which are admired for their beauty of style, but that which has gained " him the greatest reputation is his "Telemachus" where he has displayed 10 all the pickes of the French language. No work had ever a greater reputation; it is written in a lively 11, simple, natural and elegant manner; its fictions are well imagined, the moral 12 sublime, and the political maxims (which) it contains, all 13 tend to the happiness of mankind 14.

1) achevé. 2) miel, m. 3) du bien. 4) ne s'en vantent pas. 5) continuer. 6) vigne, f. 7) grappe, f. 8) lui a fait. 9) Télémaque. 10) déployer, 11) animé. 12) la morale. 13) tendre à goh. 14) des hommes. 48

• . ::

The Tyrians had by their pride 1 offended the great Sesostris who ruled in Egypt and who had conquered so many kingdoms. The wealth which they had acquired <sup>a</sup> by commerce, and the strength of the impregnable<sup>s</sup> city of Tyre

lying? en the sea, had lifted up<sup>5</sup> the heart of these people. They had refused to pay Sessetris the tribute<sup>6</sup> which he had imposed upon them (*leur*) on his return from his conquests<sup>7</sup>; and they had furnished, troops, to his brother who had attempted<sup>8</sup> to kill-him in the midst of the festivities<sup>9</sup> of a great banquet. As soon as Sessetris learned<sup>10</sup> [of] this, he determined<sup>11</sup> to humiliate their pride and to distroy their commerce upon all seas. Julius Caesar, having disembarked<sup>12</sup> ja Africa, fell [down], as he was leaving the vestel; this appeared to his soldiers a very inauspicious <sup>13</sup> omes<sup>13</sup>; he however turned the feelings of the army to his advantage by exclaiming (en s'écriant): It is now, O Africa, that I hold thee.

1) orgueil, m. 2) acquises. 3) imprenable (before the noun). 4) située dans. 5) enflé. 6) le tribut. 7) conquête, f. 8) voulu. 97 joies. 10) apprendre. 11) il résolut d'itumilier. 12) ayant débarqué. 13) un présage de mauvaise augure.

# III. The Future Tenses.

§. 22. The Future (je parlerai, je ferai etc.) denotes in general future events or circumstances, as:

Charles partira demain.

Je vous écrirai bientôt etc.

Nous ir on s à Londres l'année prochaine (next).

S. 23. It must sometimes be used in French where in English the *Present* is used, when the idea is one of future time. Ex:

Vous pouvez venir quand vous vou dres. You may come when you like.

**§. 24.** It is used as a softened form of the Imperative implying the expectation of fulfilment. Ex.:

Vous m'écrirez demain, (do) write to me to-morrow. Vous ne tuerez point, thou shalt do no murder.

Note 1. When shall and will imply determination, they are rendered by vouloir, as:

I will do it, je veux le faire. You shall do it, je veux que vous le fassiez. Note 9. To be on the point of doing something is expressed in French by aller which corresponds precisely with the English to be going etc. Ex.:

- Napoléon dit à ses soldats: "Nous allons entreprendre la conquête de l'Égypte. Les peuples ases lesquels nous allons vivre, sout Mahométans," etc.

I am coming, je vais venir.

Are you going to write to him, allez-vous lui écrire?

§. 25. The Future anterior indicates an event which is to precede another future event specified. Ex.:

Quand j'aurai terminé mes affaires, je partirai tout de suite.

Aussitöt que je serai arrivé, j'irai le voir.

§. 26. When the conjunction si signifies whether, expressing *uncertainty*, the future can be used after it, in French as in English. Ex.:

Je ne sais si mon frère viendra.

I do not know if my brother will come.

§. 27. But when *si* signifies suppose that, the English Future must be rendered by the *Present*. Ex.:

You will become a learned man, if you will study. Vous deviendrez savant, si vous étu die z bien.

\* §. 28. The Conditional (je parlerais, je ferais, I would or should speak, I would do) is used in French as in English, to express a conditional sentence:

Je serais heureux si j'avais des amis.

I should be happy if I had some friends.

\_ Note. The English I wish, when it does not relate to something past, must be translated by the Conditional of vouloir: je voudrais. Ex.:

I wish he would come soon, je voudrais qu'il vint bientôt.

§. 29. After si when it means suppose that, the English Conditional must be rendered by the Imperfect (see §. 9). Ex.:

Si je continuais mon commerce, je deviendrais riche.

But when si means whether, the Conditional is also used in French: Je ne sais si mon oncle viendrait, en cas que vous limitassiez.

§. 30. The compound Conditional of devoir, pouvoir and vouloir must be used when the auxiliaries should, ought, could, might, are followed by a compound Infinitive, whereas in French the Infinitive present is used. Ex.:

You ought to have written a letter. Yous auriez du écrire une lettre.

Faurais qu'in donn er de l'argent.

# and the second of the second strategy and the second second second second second second second second second s

I shall go to London. The booksuller will send you the book to-morrow. Our bodies will rise again<sup>11</sup> in the (au) day of judgment. When T am in the country, will you come to see me? I shall play, is soon as I have finished my lesson. There will always be wars among men, as long as they are (§. 23) ambitious. I hope you will not refuse me this favour. When you are ready, we will go [and] take a walk. I do not know if my sister will consent to it (y). If your person were as gigantic<sup>2</sup> as your desires, the whole<sup>3</sup> world could not contain you; your right hand would touch the east<sup>2</sup> and your left the west<sup>3</sup> at the (an) same time, said the Scythian<sup>4</sup> ambassador to Alexander. I could have kept<sup>2</sup> (§ 30) the book; nobody would have known it.

(§. 50) the book; nobody would have known it. 1) resensciter, 2) gigantessue, 8) ention (after the noun), -+ 4) Torient, m. 5) foocident, m. 6), Tamb. des Scythes. 7) garder.

My country has been ungrateful to me, although I have rendered it (*lui*) great service (pl.). The king has done me great injustice; he has robbed me of my entire fortune, he has even taken <sup>10</sup> from me my two servants. I have been compelled to flee, in order to preserve <sup>11</sup> my life, which was

8) ingrat. 9) privé. 10) m'a dépouillé jusqu'à. 11) pour sauver;

seriously threatened. What was to be done<sup>19</sup>? — You shalld rather have endured<sup>18</sup> (§. 30) all injuries than tw offend<sup>14</sup> against France and the greatness of your house. If you were persecuted, you could have retired<sup>16</sup>; it would have been (valu) better to be poor and unknown<sup>16</sup> than to take up<sup>17</sup> arms against your country. Even in poventy and in the most wretched<sup>18</sup> exile your fame<sup>19</sup> would not have been lost. 12) Que vouliez-vous que je fisse<sup>17</sup> 13) souffrir. 14) que de manquer à. 15) yous retirer (refl. v.). 16) obscur. 17) prendra der gemes. 18) misérable. 19) gloirs, f.

## Reading-lesson.

# Alexandra Selkirk.

Pendant la guerre pour la succession d'Espagne, quelques particuliers <sup>1</sup> équipèrent (§. 14) en Angleterre deux vaisseaux armateurs, destinés à faire des prises <sup>3</sup> dans la mer du sud. Le capitaine Roggers *fut* momme pour les commander. Ils *levèrent* <sup>3</sup> l'ancre de Bristol le 2 Août 1708. Au mois de Janvier de l'année suivante ils se trouvaient (§. 8), du câté du pôle antacctique <sup>4</sup>, Roggers daubla le Cap-Hom saus prondre terre en aucun, lieu de ces, parages <sup>5</sup> jusqu'à, l'île de Juan Fernandès, située dans la mer du sud, à la distance de centdix lienes du Chill. Il y envoya une pinasse <sup>6</sup>, qui revint au vaisseau avec quantité d'écrevisses <sup>7</sup> et, un homme vêtu de peaux de chêvres <sup>8</sup> qui paraissait (§ 8) plus sauvage que ces animaux mêmes. C'était un Écossis, nommé Alexandre Selkirk, qui avait été (§ 20), maître à bord du vaisseau "Les Cinq--Ports", et que le capitaine Stradling avait abandonné sur cette île depuis quatre ans et quatre mois. Voici le récit que ce malheureux fit de ses aventures au capitaine Roggers:

"Dès mon enfance j'ai été élevé (§. 16) daus la marine. Ayant suivi le capitaine Strading daus son expédition, j'eus un démêlé <sup>10</sup> avec lui, ce qui l'engagea à me débarquer sur cette île. Je résolus d'abord d'y rester, plutôt que <sup>11</sup> de m'exposer à de nouveaux chagrins, d'autant plus que le vaisseau était (§. 5) en mauvais état. Cependant revenu à moi-même, je souhaitai d'y retourner, mais le capitaine n'y voului pas consentir."

1) private men. 2) capture. 3), to weigh. 4) South. 5) parts, of the sea. 6) boat. 7) crab. 8) goat-skins. 9) brought up. — 19) quarrel. 11) rather than.

alt to some of the address particuliers angleis pendant la gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber to gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber trout a gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber trout a gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber trout a gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber trout a gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber trout a gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber trout a gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber trout a gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber trout a gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber trout a gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber trout a gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out douber to grave the la gnarre de la succession d'Espagne?, out trout a gnarre de la gnarre

Of the Subjunctine Mood ..... I

S. 1. The Subjunctive is in most cases dependent, and is therefore used chiefly in subordinate clause, Whonever in French a subordinate clause, is dependent upon a leading plause, which doubting the idea, of something, not yet having an admit constant of the speaker, acts quantly of something possible of succertains its werb will be in the Subjunctive. This "unneading" can apply as well to something referral i. e. to conceptions and remotions. This is the general ground of distinction in the application of the French Subjunctive. The two languages by no means agree on this point. Many verse in English are put in the Future, the Conditional and the Present Indicative which, in French, must be in the Subjunctive. Thus for instance:

Nous craignions qu'il soit si âgé. Nous craignions qu'il ne s'en allât.

We feared he would go: S. 2. But before passing over to the rules concerning the use of the Subjunctive, it will be indispensibly necessary to understand the visation of the tenses of the Subjunctive to those of the Indicative and Conditional, without which the clause, dependent upon them, cannot be properly translated. The following rules are here applicable:

1) If the verb of the leading clause is in the Present or Future, that of the dependent clause will be in the Present or Perfect (Passé indéfini) of the Subjunc-. • · -13 tive. Ex.:

Je veux qu'il vienne,\*) I wish him to come. Connaissez-vous quelqu'un qui sache faire cela! Do you know saybedy who knows how to do this? Je ferai en sorte que tout soit prêt. I will have everything fieldy  $p_{2}^{*} = 0$ 19

J'attendrai que mon pèri sois parti-I will wait till my father is departed.

2) If the verb of the leading clause be in a past tense, er in the Conditional, the Imperfect of the Subjunctive must follow in the subordinate clause; or if the subordinate clause contain an event which has already taken place, the Pluperfect of the Subjunctive must be employed, according to the following schemer: 1011 -15

as to something the contribution of the sol prowhile opening being alf - sidt Je 'craignais The self-a closed discription for the solitan ije ordignie j'ai maint .... qu'ille m'an rin & to demain a - m mainund had j'avais craint ( trop lard , - trop fot etc ; ) 1B je craindrais j'aurais craint Indiani - which , in Franch , range Thus is a survey of the survey

\*) Observe that the Present and Future are the same in the Subjunctive mood in French; the content alone shows of which of in the second second the two we speak. Ex.:

Je ne crois pas qu'elle vienne à biance al langer all I do not think she is coming. -11

1 -I. do-not think she will commentate with 10 as a out print

2. Je craignaie s : \_ je craignis qu'il ne fussent arrivés hier (- avantjai craint\*) 🚛 j'avais craint 🌔 hier, 🛶 la semairie dernière etc.) 👘 je craindrais and the contract family of the Jaurais craint and the part of 11 M 11 1 11 11 11 5. 3. There are a great many verbs which govern the verb of the subordinate clause in the subjunctive mood; they may be divided into four classes, viz. !! 1) Verbs of wishing, willing, commanding or permitting. (2) Verbs of thinking, believing and saying an or to but (13). Verbs expressing fear, doubt, sorrow, astonishment, (4) Impersonal verbs which do not express certainty or probability. Subjective man be walk of the walk §. 4. Verbs of wishing, willing, commanding reto. Such are: : Aimer, to like. permettre, to permit, allow. prier, to beg, to ask, aimer mieux, to prefer. recommander, to recommend. défendre, to forbid. demander, to ask. souhailer, to wish. désirer, to wish for, to désire. souffrir, to suffér. exiger, to demand supplier, to beg, request. ordonner, to order. pouloir, to be willing, etc., to "Examples, "We example out suit inne e v · ·· not in the J'ordonne qu'il sorte, I order him to go out. Jaime qu'il soit courageux, I like him to be britve. - R vent que je dise (Priz.) la sétté (8.12) 1). . . . . . . in the mil. He wishes me to say the trath. man by man Il vou last que je lui disse (Impary) la chile (§. 2, 2). He desired me to tell him the trath. 1.1

\*) In as much as the Perfect pelongs to present as well as to past time, it can be followed also by the Present of the Subjunctive, when the dependent clause contains a present event. Ex.:

Dieu nous a dahné la raison pour qué nous nous en vérdions. God has givin us ressani that we may make use of it. Le roi exigea que je partisse tout de suite. The king demanded that I should leave directly.

§. 5. Verbs of thinking, believing, saying etc.

These verbs and, in general, all those which express the intellectual faculties of the mind, govern the Indicative, when they are affirmatively used,\*) and most commonly the Subjustive, when they are used negatively, interrogatively, or are preceded by the conjunction si. If I say, for instance: I cools que Charles est maleds, I correspond Charles' illness to myself as a reality, and consequently the Indicative is required. But in the sentences: Je ne crois pas que Charles soit malade or croyez-vous que Charles soit malade? an uncertainty is expressed in regard to Charles , and the Subjunctive must be used. Ex.:

Je as crois pas que le concert ait lieu ce som. I do not think that the concert will take place to-hight.

Pensez-vous qu'il puisse apprendre tout cela : •Do you' think he can learn all that?

Je ne dis pas qu'il ait tort.

I do not say that he is wrong.

Partons, si vous pensez qu'il fazze beau temps.

Note 1. If however we ask a question, less to be informed of a thing: than to inform others of it, the second verb (having the sense: Do you know i), is put in the Indicative, and not in the Subjuncting. Ex.:

Kous ai-je dit que mon frère est arrivé?

Note 2. Observe that the verbe of knowing, being surt, resolving etc. are not comprised among those which govern the Subjunctive. They, generally require the Indicative, even when used interrogatively or negatively. Ex.

Je savais Je ne savais pas qu'il était ici.

Je ne sais s'il le fera, I do not know if he will do it.

\*) Ex.: Je crois qu'il est parti, I think he has departed.

	S. 6. The Multipunctive ist used after verb s of fear,
	loubt, denial or binderance, astonishment etc. Such are:
-	Avoir peur, ) to fear
C C	empecned Winning, The vour
(	louter, to doubt , nier, to deny.
	And likewise after:
j	Etre dien gise, no be glad. être affligé, to be afflicted.
	tere channé, .) to be very étre fâché, to be sorry.
	inortenchanie, j. glad. Etre étaine ; to he. automished.
é	être content, to be satisfied. étre surpris, to: be surprised.
4	e réjouir, to rejoice. regretier, to regret.
1	trembler, to tremble. se plaindre, to complain.
	Examples.
	Je crains que ma mère ne soit malade.
	I fear my mother is ill.
	Je ne doutais pas qu'il n'arr's vält avant vodé.
	I did not doubt that he would arrive before you.
	Jempêcherai qu'il ne*) sorte.
	I will hinder him from going out.
•	Je regrette ga'il soit venu trop tard.
	Mon père est fâché que je ne lui avie pas écrit plus lôt.
	Je suis charmé que vous s'ogez Vents the voir.
	Je m'étonne qu'il n'ait pas regu ma lettre.
,	Note 1. The verbs avoir peur, craintire stid tremöler require
	the particle, ne before the verb in the subjunctive moodly yet
	only when these verbs themselves are affirmative, or negative.
ł	
	The ample of the mean of the mean of the second state of the secon
	Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne vienne?
	But if the sentence be simply negative or simply interro-
	yetter, newis not used; as the two strong to be the
	Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.
	Craignez-vous yu ist viennet i the transition of all ,
	Note 2. If after those verbs mentioned in §.6, we wish
	to express ourselves with definiteness, device pae is used instead
	of the simple <i>one</i> and this is followed by the <i>Indicative</i> :
	Il est fâché de ce que vous ne lui avez pas écrit. Je me plains de ce qu'elle m'a ouble."
	Je me plains de ce qu'elle m'a oublie.", "
	Start *) Generating the particle wit, see p. 320, St 3 and 62.11 (1999)

ı!

ļ

计数

:. pre atie

ioni el tie ne la tu ne

- - -

8. 7. Subjunctive after Impersonal verbs.

A verb preceded by que is always put in the Subinnctive after the following Impersonals: il est fâcheux, it is sad. Il convient, it is proper. il faut, it must. il est juste, it is just, right. il importe, it is important, it il est difficiles it is difficult. matters, it concerns. il est possible, it is possible. il est naturel, it is a matter of il suffit, it is sufficient. il se peut, it may be. {course. il vant micux, it is better. And likewise after: Il est temps, it is time. c'est dommage, it is a pity.

c'est un malheur, it is a misfortune.

#### Examples.

Il faut que vous partiez tout de suite. You must leave directly. Il est possible qu'il revienne. It is possible that he come back. Crest dommage que vous ne soysz pas venu plus tôt. It is a pity that you have not come earlier. Il suffit qu'il ait prové sa faute. It is enough that he has confessed his fault. Il est juste qué vous soyez puni.

It is right that you be punished.

Further after il y a and all impersonal verbs with an adjective, denoting evidence, certainty or probability, when they are used in a negative, interrogative or conditional manner. Ex.:

Y a til un mortel qui puisse dire qu'il est toujours heursus? Is there a mortal who can say that he is always happy? Est-il sur qu'il ait tort?

' Ľ

Is it certain that he is in the wrong?

Il n'est pas sûn qu'il ait lorter and anter.

. It is not certain that he is is it the wrong.

Thème. 51.

I wish him to come (that he c.). The law requires that thieves ' [should] be punished. I demanded that he should pay me. Has he demanded that you should pay the bill<sup>2</sup>? I forbid that he should go there. God will that we love our enemies. 'Caligula wished that the Romans should render him divine honours<sup>3</sup>. Your father expects that you should give<sup>4</sup> in account of what you have done. My aunt wishes that I should set out to morrow.' Fell him to wait. 'Augustus commanded in his will<sup>5</sup> that they should not seek to<sup>6</sup> extend the empire. Allow me to tell you (allow that I tell w) the truth. I will be obeyed (that one ob me). The Egyptians did not doubt (see p. B20, §. 3) that certain plants and animals were divinities<sup>7</sup>. Do you think your aunt will come by herself<sup>8</sup>? If I find that you frequent bad company, you will lose my friendship. Do you hope they (on) will make peace<sup>9</sup>?

 les voleurs, 2) le compte. 3) des honneurs divins, 4) to give an account, rendre compte. 5) testament, m. 6) à étendre.
 7) des divinités. 8) seule. 0) la paix.

52.

I doubt whether that is true. I doubt whether your uncle will arrive to morrow. We question whether riches can afford happiness. I did not know that you were to come. Do you doubt that I am your friend? I do not doubt that you are my friend. One cannot doubt that health is to be preferred to wealth? He denies that he had been told that. He does not deny that he had been told that. It is time, for us to go (that we go) home, for it begins to (a) rain. It is evident that Greece could no more defend herself: so much was she at that time sunken?. It is sufficient if you tell him this. It is a pity that you did not go with us; you would have enjoyed yourself much. It is not prohable that they will do it. I must go to (en) town. 1) accorder. 2) la richesse. 3) declue.

S. 8. The Subjunctive is used in relative dependent clauses beginning with qui, que (acc.), lequel or où, which depend upon a leading clause in which a wish, an expectation or, a demand is implied, oppecially after an *Imperative*. Here a vigued or a of W (1990). World 1

20.1 Inser des ournages, qui puissentifformer voire grât. M 27.11. Read euch, books, as, can form, your taste (1987). Choisissez un appartement où vous isoy en à voire aise. 2000 Choose, an appartment subere you may he comfortable. Its encourrent des députés qui sonsuitaise ent Apollon. ' They sent deputies who were to consult Apollo. '

If however, no such requirement or expectation is contained in the leading clause, if on the contrary the matter is rather regarded as something which is actual or which has already taken place, then, of course, the Indicative is used. Ex.:

J'ai loué un appartement où je suis bien à mon aise. Ils envoyèrent des députés qui consultèrent Apollon.

§. 9. A verb preceded by the relative qui or que (acc.) is put in the Subjunctive after the superlative, when the relative clause only expresses an opinion. Ex.:

C'est le plus beau jardin que je connaisse.

This is the most beautiful garden I know.

C'est une des dernières lettres que St. Paul ait écrites. This is one of the last letters St. Paul has written.

La meilleure garde qu'un roi puisse avoir, c'est le cœur de ses sujels.

The best guard a king can have, is the heart of his subjects.

Note. If however the thing is represented as certain or as a matter of fact, the Indicative follows. Ex.:

Souviens-toi que je suis le seul qui l'a déplu (displeased)e. Néron est le premier empereur qui a persécuté l'Église.

§. 10. The Subjunctive is used further after the ordinal numbers (as: le premier, le second, le dernier etc.) and after unique, seul, rien and personne. Ex.:

Vous êtes le premier ami que j'aie rencontré à Paris. You are the first friend I have met with in Paris.

C'est l'unique espoir qui me soit resté.

- This is the only hope that remains to me."

: Je ne connais personne qui soit aussi heuteuz que hui. I know nobody who is so happy as he is.

Note. In the preceding rules qui and que (acc.) do not govern the Subjunctice, when they are preceded by a genitive case to which they refer. Ex.:

Ne dites rien de ce que je vous ai conjié (Ind.).

§. 11. Subjunctive after comjunctions.

•

, A verb is put in the Subjunctive after the following conjunctions:

avant que, before.	non pas, que, in order that.
bien que, although.	pour peu que, if ever so little.
de peur que, i lest.	poureu que, provided.
the evaluate que, for fear that.	que — ne, till, before.
de manière (sorte) que, so that.	quel — que, / however —.
on attendant que, till.	quelque - què, § (See i p. 907.)
en (au) cas que, in case.	quoique, although. i
encore que, although.	sans que, without
jusqu'à ce que, until.	sinon que, but that.
loin que, far from.	soit que—soit que, whether — or.
malgré que, for all that, not-	soit que - ou que, be it that - or.
withstanding that.	supposé que, suppose that.

#### Examples.

Je ne sortirai d'ici que je ne sois payé. I shall nót go away from here before I am paid.

Quoiqu'il me l'ait promis.

3

Although he has premised me.

Pourvu qu'il y conserves, provided he consent to it. Quolqu'effort que fassent les hommes, leur néant paraît partout.

Whatever effort men may make, their nothingness appears every-where.

A moins que vous ne me demandiez pardon.

Au (on) cas qu'il mourat, I case he should die.

Note. The Indicative can sometimes be used after avant qué, jusqu'à ce que, smon que, de sorte qué and de manière que, when all doubt and uncertainty are excluded, and the clause expresses a fact. Ex.: Je gardai mon sang-fneid, jusqu'à ce que je l'entendis calomnier son frère.

Il s'est occupé de cette affairé de manière (de sorte) qu'on n'a pu le blâmer.

§. 12. In the same manner the Subjunctive is employed after the simple que, when used instead of one of the conjunctions mentioned in §. 11. Ex.:

Je ne passe vous pardonner avant que vous me farriez l'aveu de vos fautes et que vous me promettiez

I cannot pardon you before you confess your faults, and promise me to improve.

Venez que (instead of afin que) je vous en dise la raison. Come, that I may tell you the reason of it.

Son esprit est toujours actif, quoiqu'il soft malade et qu'il ne puisse travailler.

His mind is always active, although he is sick and cannot work.

§. 13. The conjunction que, used to avoid the repetition of *si*, governs the *Subjunctive*. Ex.:

Si je ne suis pas rentré à quatre heures et qu'on vienne me demander, etc.

If I am not at home at four o'clock, and somebody comes for me etc.

§. 14. The Subjunctive is also used after attendre, till is translated with que and not with jusqu'à ce que: Attendez qu'il revienne, wait till he comes back.

§. 15. Aside from the instances above mentioned, the Subjunctive also occurs in a few expressions, which appear either the expression of a wish or as a kind of 3rd person Imperative. Notice especially: Dussé-je! should 1! Puissiez-vous! would that you! Puissent-ils! may they...! Further:
Disc veuille or plut à Disc, would to Heaven!
Vine le roi, hurth for the king! Ton règne vienne, thy kingdom come!

L

Puissiez-vous être heureux, may you be happy! Qu'on amène l'accusé, let the culprit be brought here! Qu'ils viennent, let them come!

Que Dieu vous béniese, God bless you!

Que la terre bui soit légère!

May the earth lie lightly upon him!

#### Thème. 53.

You are the most learned man I know in this town. Robert is the only friend on whom I can depend<sup>1</sup>. Nero was the first emperor that (has) persecuted the Christians. I seek a servant who is faithful. The diamond is the most valuable<sup>3</sup> stone we know. You are the first German I have met with in China. There is no one who does it more easily<sup>3</sup> than she. Is this the first time you have been mistaken<sup>4</sup>? I wish it were the first time. Lucretius<sup>5</sup> and Pliny were the only natural philosophers<sup>6</sup> whom the Romans had. Before war was declared, the Carthaginians sent once more ambassadors to Rome. I cannot depend on your promise unless you give me the necessary security<sup>7</sup>. Caesar went by forced<sup>8</sup> marches to Vienne on the Rhône before the enemy (*plur.*) became aware<sup>9</sup> of his approach. Get up early to-morrow morning, that we may start<sup>10</sup> in good time (à temps).

1) compter. 2) précieux. 3) aisément. 4) se tromper. 5) Lucrèse et Pline. 6) naturalistes. 7) garantie, f. 8) à marches forcées, 9) s'apercevoir de. 10) partir.

i4.

I shall not yet pass to the perusal<sup>1</sup> of this author, unless you advise<sup>2</sup> me [to] it. Keep<sup>3</sup> a strict watch<sup>3</sup> over all your senses lest intemperance get<sup>4</sup> the better of you. Though he is lazy, yet he improves a little (*fait quelques progrès*). I shall wait until (§. 14) you have dons. Wait till the rain be over (*passée*). Although Homer<sup>5</sup>, according to<sup>6</sup> Horace, slumbers<sup>2</sup> at times<sup>6</sup>, he is nevertheless (*il. n'en est pas moins*) the direct of all poets. You will succeed, provided you act with vigour. I shall soon speak French, though I am convinced that it is a difficult language. I shall not leave the house before (*que -- ne*) you sign<sup>9</sup> this paper. May God pretect <sup>10</sup> you. May Heaven preserve us from war!

1) lecture, f. 2) conseiller. 3) veillez avec soin. 4) to get the better of == materiser gn. 5) Hombre. 6) selon. 7) sommeiller. 8) quelquefois. 2) signer. 10) protéger.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II.

A thoughtless <sup>1</sup> man knows nothing, though he have read a great many books; in the same manner a great many persons<sup>2</sup> remain ignorant, though they have travelled through the most civilized countries. She will forgive you provided you make her an apology<sup>8</sup>. If somebody comes, and I am not at home, send for me. I shall be obliged<sup>4</sup> to do it. We should be obliged to do it. I feared you would have complained of me. Our cousin set out without our knowing (w. that we knew) [of] his intentions. I do not believe he has studied history. Do you think they would refuse me, if I requested it of them (si je les en priais)? May all nations be convinced<sup>5</sup> of this truth! I do not think he is so old. She is the prettiest girl I know. Get in <sup>6</sup> without his seeing you (w. that he s, y.), Go gently 7 lest he should hear you. Make haste<sup>8</sup> lest they should set off without you, I do not deny that it may be so. We do not fear that it will give you pain<sup>9</sup>, Do not let<sup>10</sup> that child ride this horse, I am afraid he will throw 11 him off. We ought to practise what the gospel <sup>12</sup> teaches us. Shall<sup>4</sup> I read the letter aloud? Yes, if you please. I doubt whether the young man would have succeeded, had it not been for 13 your assistance.

1) insouçiant. 2) gens. 3) vos excuses. 4) falloir. 5) to be convinced = se convaincre. 6) entrez. 7) doucement. 8) dépêchezvous. 9) faire de la peine. 10) permettre. 11) jeter à bas. — 12) l'évangile, m. 13) sans, see p. 327.

## Reading-lesson.

۰.

### Suite d'Alexandre Selkirk.

"Abandonné sur cette île déserte avec mes habits, un lit, un fusil<sup>1</sup>, une livre de poudre, des balles, du tabac, une hache, un couteau, un chaudron<sup>2</sup>, une bible et quelques autres livres, je m'amusai et pourvus<sup>3</sup> à mes besoins<sup>4</sup> le mieux qu'il me *fut* possible. Mais durant les prémiers huit mois j'eus beaucoup de peine à vaincre la mélancolie et à surmonter l'horreur que me causait une si affreuse solitude.

"Je *fis* deux cabanes<sup>5</sup> à quelque distance l'une de l'autre avec du bois de piment<sup>6</sup>; je les couvris d'une espèce de jonc<sup>7</sup> et les *doublai*<sup>8</sup> de peaux de chèvres que je tuais à mesure que j'en avais besoin, tant que ma poudre *dura*. Lorsqu'elle approchait de sa fin, je *trouvai* le secret de tirer du feu avec deux morceaux de bois de piment que je frottais<sup>9</sup> l'un contre l'autre. Je faisais la couisine <sup>10</sup> dans la plus petite de mes huttes, et dans la grande je dormais, chantais des psaumes et priais Dieu. Le malheur m'avait fait connaître le prix de la religion.

"Accablé de tristesse, manquant de pain et de sel, je ne mangeais qu'à l'extrémité, lorsque la faim me pressait, et je n'allais me coucher que lorsque je ne pouvais plus soutenir la veille<sup>11</sup>. Le bois de piment me servait-à cuire la viande, et à m'éclairer, et son odeur <sup>12</sup> aromatique récréait <sup>13</sup> mes esprits abattus.

"Je ne manquais pas de poissons, mais je n'osais en manger sans sel parce qu'ils m'incommodaient, à la réserve 14 des écrevisses de rivière qui sont ici d'un goût exquis, et aussi grosses que celles de mer. Tantôt je les mangeais bouillies, et tantôt grillées 45, de même que la chair des chèvres, qui n'a pas le goût si fort que celle des nôtres, et qui donne un excellent bouillon 16. J'en avais tué jusqu'à cinq cents. Quand ma poudre fut finie, je les prenais à la course. Par un exercice continuel je m'étais rendu si agile que je courais à travers les bois, sur les rochers et les collines avec une vitesse incroyable. Peu s'en failut un jour que mon agilité ne me coûtât la vie. Je poursuivais une chèvre avec tant d'ardeur que je la pris sur le bord d'un précipice que des buissons<sup>17</sup> me cachaient, et je culbutai<sup>16</sup> de haut en bas avec elle. Cette chute 19 terrible me fit perdre toute connaissance. Enfin revenu à moi-même, je trouvai la chèvre morte sous moi, et j'eus assez de peine à me trainer<sup>20</sup> à ma cabane, qui en était à un mille<sup>21</sup>, et à en sortir au bout de dix jours." (To be continued.)

1) gun. 2) kettle. 3) from *powrooir*, to provide. 4) need, want. 5) hut. 6) pimenta. 7) rush. 8) to line. 9) to rub. — 10) to cook. 11) watch, watching. 12) smell. 13) to revive. — 14) exception. 15) roasted. 16) broth. 17) bushes. 18) to tumble. 19) fall. 20) to drag. 21) a mile.

#### Questionnaire.

Quels effets (things) lui avait-on laissés? N'avait-il pas de nourriture spirituelle? Quel fut le premier soin de Selkirk? De quoi couvrit-il les cabanes? D'où tira-t-il ces peaux? Est-ce qu'il priait aussi Dieu? Avait-il de quoi faire du pain? Que mangeait-il donc? N'avait-il pas de poissons? N'y avait-il pas d'écrevisses? Comment les mangeait-il? Eut-il toujours assez de poudre? Comment prenait-il alors les chèvres? Était-il donc si agile? N'eut-il pas d'accident fâcheux? N'avait-il pas remarqué le précipice? Se blessa-t-il par suite de cette chute? Quand il revint à lui, dans quel état se trouvait-il?

# TWENTY FIRST LESSON. the Infinitive Mood

0 f

• • •

The Infinitive is one of the most important parts of a sentence and serves mainly to abbreviate the sentence, since, by means of it, a thought is often incorporated with the leading clause, which would otherwise form a clause by itself connected by a conjunction. This mood has much of the character of a substantive, and is sometimes employed as the *subject* of the phrase, mostly however as a complement governed by an antecedent word.

§. 1. The *Infinitive* sometimes takes the place of a noun, and is used as the *subject* of a sentence, whereas in English often the *Participle present* is found. Ex.:

Secourir les pauvres est une action louable. To relieve the poor is a praiseworthy action. Chanter et danser étaient leur plus grand plaisir. Singing and dancing were their greatest pleasure. Médire est une infamie, calumniating is shameful.

In some instances it becomes properly a noun and takes the article with it, as: le manger, le boire, les vivres (victuals). — If such an Infinitive is amplified by means of other words, it is better to write c'est or c'était instead of est or était, and sometimes also voilà. Ex.:

Médire de son prochain, c'est une infamie. To calumniate one's neighbour is shameful. Naimer que soi, c'est aimer peu de chose. To love no one but one's self is to love very little.

§. 2. When this amplification is somewhat long, the *Infinitive* cannot remain at the beginning of the sentence, but must be placed after the *predicate*, and takes *de* before it. — In order however not to confuse the sense and the construction of the sentence, a merely introductory subject *ce* or *il* is employed: *ce*, if a substantive follows, *il*, if an adjective. Ex.:

C'est un honneur d'être utile à sa patrie.

Il est glorieux de mourir pour sa patrie.

(The order of the words should properly be: *Être utile* à sa patrie est un honneur; in the second sentence: Mourir pour sa patrie est glorieux.)

§. 3. If this antecedent predicate have several or long amplifications the *subject-infinitive* is commonly introduced by an explative que, to make the proper subject distinguishable. Ex.:

Cétait une grande nouveauté pour le roi que d'entendre parler si naturellement.

§. 4. The Infinitive without preposition is used, when it is governed by any of the following verbs:

Affirmer, to affirm.	envoyer, to send.	·
	* espérer, to hope.	
	faillir, to miss.	
	faire, to do.	
compter, to reckon, intend.	falloir (il faut), it must.	
	* s'imaginer, to imagine.	
querie, to run, to hasten.	jurer, to swear.	
	laisser, to let.	
déclarer, to declare.	nier, to deny.	
* désirer, to wish.	oser, to dare.	ب.
devoir, to be obliged.	parattre, to appear.	S.
dire, to say.	penser, to think.	·
	présendre, to protond.	

pouvoir, to be able. soutenir, to maintain. reconnaître, to acknowledge. témoigner, to testify. venir, to come. savoir, to know. sembler, to appear, to seem, voir, to see. sentir, to feel. vouloir, to be willing \* souhaiter, to wish. 1. A.H. Examples. Venes nous voir demain, come to see: us to morrow ... Je cours lui apprendre cette nouvelle. I hasten to tell him this news, Il faut envoyer chercher le médecin. We must send for the doctor. Vous oses, - daignez, - désirez etc. lui parler! You dare, - deign, - wish etc. to speak to him! Je croyais —, je désirais etc. lui rendre un service. I thought -, I wished etc. to render him a service. Je compte —, j'espère —, je déclare etc. aller à Paris. I intend -, I hope etc. to go to Paris. Je no sais pas nager, I cannot swim. - Croyez-vous a voir raison? . Do you believe you are in the right? . Note 1. After the above four verbs marked \*, de must be used, when they themselves stand in the Infinitive. Ex.: Peut-on espérer de vous voir demain? Personne ne doit s'imaginer de tout savoir. Note 2. The verb fairs is used for to do, to make and to get, to cause; in all these cases it is immediately followed, in French, by the *Infinitive active* without a preposition: Je ferai bâtir une maison, I will cause a house 'to be built. Voulez-vous faire laver vos gants? Will you have your gloves washed? Je lui ferai faire un thème, I will make him do an exercise. §. 5. The simple Infinitive is governed further by the verbs: aimer,\*) when used in the Conditional, I should like; préférer, to prefer; aimer autant, to like as much; il vaut mieux, it is better. Ex.: \*) In regard to aimer with à consult the rule 4, p. 384.

. Laimerais le voir, I should like to see him. Il vout mieux cédor, it is botter to yield.

Je préfère rester à la maison, I prefer staying at home.

When, however, in the second member of a comparison a second *Infinitive* follows que, this latter takes de before it. Ex.:

Jaime mieux mourir que de trahir mon secret. I will rather die than betray my secret.

1

at a le la de

## Thème. 56.

To speak too much is dangerous. 'To clothe'' the poor is a good work<sup>2</sup>. To he is to disregard<sup>2</sup>. God and to fear men. To purchase peace of an energy is to give him the means of carrying on<sup>4</sup> the war. Can you inform me whether the courier has arrived? He is not yet arrived. One must know [how] to keep<sup>5</sup> a secret. This man thinks he knows (Inf.) everything. We hope to see the queen. When do you intend to return? I do not know precisely<sup>6</sup>; but I hope to see you again soon. The king caused the brave soldiers to be rewarded. It is much better to keep silent 7 than to say such things. The most unfortunate of men is he who thinks himself to be such (l'). He assured us that he had been there. To yield's to necessity is not to be [a] coward 9. Eating, drinking and sleeping were his only occupation. I hastened to communicate.10 to him this intelligence 11. He came to tell me that he had won nothing in the lotery. Who would not rather (like to) be poor than possess unjustly acquired wealth 12? Bayard said to the Constable of Bourbon: "It is better to perish fighting (en combattant) for one's (sa) country 13, than to conquer and (to) triumph <sup>14</sup> over it (d'elle).

1) vétir. 2) œuvre, f. 3) mépriser. 4) continuer. 5) taire. 6) au juste. 7) se taire. 8) céder à. 9) lâche. 10) communiquer. 11) nouvelle, f. 12) des richesses mai acquises. 13) patrie. — 14) triompher.

S. 6. The Infinitive preceded by de.

The preposition de is placed before a verb in the the *Infinitive*:

1) After a substantive which governs a verb so as to be a necessary part of the predicate. The English preposition of with a Participle present (of going, of seeing etc.) is generally expressed by de with the Infinitive. Ex.:

Le désir de vous voir, the desire of seeing you. Sa manière de penser et d'agir (of thinking and acting). Il est temps de partir, it is time to set out. J'ai l'honneur de vous saluer.

2) After the adjectives: avide, content, mécontent, las, digne, capable, incapable etc., and in general after an adjective, whenever, by inverting the sentence, the clause containing the *Infinitive* might be made the leading term of an assertion expressed by is to be. Ex.:

Je suis curieux de savoir, I am anxious to know. Étes-vous las de travaillet, are you tired with working? C'est homme est capable de vous tromper. That man is capable of deceiving you. Vous êtes très adroit d'avoir si bien réussi. You are very clever to have succeeded so well.

3) After the impersonal verbs, such as: il convient, it is proper; il importe, it concerns; il s'agit, it is the guestion; il suffit, it is enough; il me tarde, I long, and after il est, il était or il semble followed by an adjective, as: il est facile, il était nécessaire stc. Ex.:

Il m'importe beaucoup de lui dite celà.

It concerns me much to tell him this.

Il est beau de pardonner à son ensiemi.

It is a good thing to pardon one's enemy.

Il suffira de lui parler.

It will be enough to speak to him.

4) Most commonly when the *Infinitive* is governed by any of the reflective verbs mentioned in §. 7, p. 343. Examples:

Il se propose d'aller vous voir demain matin.

,- - **-** -

5) Be is further used before the Infinitive, when the latter is immediately preceded by any of the following verbs:

Accuser, to acouse. mériter, to deserve. avertir, to inform. négliger, to neglect. blâmer, to blame. offrir, to offer. cesser, to cease. omettre, to omit. commander, to command. ordonner, to order. conjurer, to intreat. oublier, to forget continuer, to continue. permettre, to permit. conseiller, to advise. *persuader*, to persuade. craindre, to fear. prescrire, to prescribe. défendre, to forbid. presser, to urge. détourner, to deter. prier, to pray, to ask. différer, to differ. promettre, to propose. .11 dire, to tell. proposer, to promise. dispenser, to excuse. recommander, to recommend. désespérer, to lose hope. refuser, to refuse. dissuader, to dissuade. regretter, to regret. remercier, to thank. *ecrire*, to write. empécher, to hinder. résoudre, to resolve. entreprendre, to undertake. risquer, to run risk. essayer, to try (see §. 11). sommer, to summon. eviter, to avoid. soupconner, to suspect. supplier, to beg, request. feindre, to feign' finir, to finish. tâcher, to endeavour. menacer, to threaten. trembler, to tremble. Examples: Il cesse de pleuvoir, it ceases raining. n. ot - ; Je cous conseille de partir, I advise you to set off. Je craine de vous déranger, I fear to disturb you. 🔆 Il est défendu de juner ioi, emoking is forbidden here. · Dites-lui de venir, tell him to come. Vous méritez d'êne puni, you deserve to be punished. Il rieque de tout perdre, he risks losing everything. 11 La forteresse fut sammés de se rendres .... in air The fortress was summoned to surrender. And the · + 1 🕇 3157 C 12 1 . . . . . . . . . . . 6) After the following prepositions and conjunctiones: près, hors, avant, au lieu, lbin, afin, d moins, de crainte or de peur, à ferce (by), fause (lor want of), plutôt que (rather thep). Ex.:

Avant de partir, before leaving. Au lieu de pleurer, instead of crying. Loin de se corriger, far from amending himself. A force de prier, by much entreaty. Dieu nous afflige, a f in de nous corriger. God sends us afflictions (in order) to amend us. Je sors, de crainte (or de peur) de vous déranger. I go for fear of disturbing you.

#### Thème. 57.

You have no cause<sup>1</sup> to be angry with (contre) me. Were you at the concert yesterday? I did not have the pleasure of seeing you. The way<sup>2</sup> to be happy is to be virtuous. Have you the intention of selling your horse? Not at all, I intend to keep it. I fear losing (to lose) your confidence<sup>3</sup>. It is too late, it is time to go to bed. The art of dancing was known to the ancients. It is disgraceful<sup>4</sup> to obey one's passions (dat.). The desire of appearing clever often prevents one becoming so<sup>5</sup>. I beg you to come at six o'clock. We rejoice greatly to see you. - It is agreeable to hear the twitter<sup>6</sup> of the birds. It is useless to warn<sup>7</sup> him. It is a beautiful thing to forgive one's enemies. It is pleasant to live with one's friends. It is the fate<sup>8</sup> of all human things to be of short duration 9. The great secret of being happy is to work and to be virtuous. I don't approve [of] your project of going to America. Gentleness <sup>10</sup> is the surest means of escaping every offence. It is sad to have no friends and to be forsaken<sup>11</sup>. 1 the second

avoir sujet. 2) is moyen. 3) confiance, f. 4) honteux. —
 b) de le devenir. 6) le gazouillement. 7) avertir. 8) le sort. —
 c) de n'appir gulune courte durée. 10) la douseur. 11) shandonné.

58. A 156. St. 55. 55.

I advise you to stay here and (to) begin your studies. The first 'step ' towards the good '(vers le bien) is to avoid the evil. It is (c'est) the duty of a Christian<sup>2</sup> to please God, to hurt nobody; and to do good even to his enemies. He is not able to go so far. You are very amiable in having come to pay<sup>3</sup> us a visit. It is dangered to trust<sup>4</sup> everybody.'' I will abstain<sup>8</sup> from drinking beer. The law of nature forbids us to do injustice (ior) to others. A simple and temperate diet also the foundation? of a firm health [which is] capable of enduring the greatest hardships . I can not help <sup>10</sup> reéognising in the laws of nature a wonderful art, and I hesitate not to say in the language of Scriptore.<sup>14</sup> that every stat hasteneth<sup>36</sup> to go whithen the Logal gendeth it.

59.

I was astonished, after such news to see the man so quiet. Before one writes (Inf.), one must know what one wishes (veut) to say. Instead of working, he went walking all day. I longed <sup>1</sup> to see my native country<sup>2</sup> again; accordingly<sup>8</sup> I determined to embark<sup>4</sup> for Europe. By much entreaty I induced<sup>5</sup> my friend to accompany me. For fear of offending him I preferred to remain<sup>6</sup> silent. The enemy retired<sup>7</sup> in order<sup>8</sup> to make believe that he had given over<sup>9</sup> the siege. — When one advised Philip to expel<sup>10</sup> from his dominions<sup>11</sup> a man who had spoken ill of him; I will take care <sup>12</sup> [not] to do it, replied Philip; he would go everywhere and speak ill of me.

1) Il me tardait. 2) pays natal. 3) c'est pourquoi. 4) s'embarquer pour. 5) engager à. 6) me tarre. 7) reflected verb. — 8) afin de. 9) renoncer à. 10) chasser. 11) état. 12) se garder bien.

# S. 7. The Infinitive with **à.**

We place the preposition à before the Infinitive of a verb:

1) After a substantive, when we mean to express something to be done (the Latin Future participle of the Passive voice: laudandus etc.). Ex.:

La moisson à sepérer, the harvest to be hoped for. Cette maison est à vendre, this house is to be sold. Je n'ai pas de temps à perdre. I have no time to lose.

2) After a substantive, when the following verb is or may be expressed by in with the participle present. Ex.: Jaurai beaucoup de plaisir à vous voir (un en vous voyant). I shall have great pleasure in seeing you.

3) After any adjectives which take a verb in the *Infinitive* to complete the sense, provided the verb preceding the adjective is not used *impersonally*. (The Latin Supine.) Especially after:

Accessible, accessible.	lent, slow.
aisé, easy.	prêt, ready.
attentif, attentive.	prompt, quick.
bon, good.	propre, fit, proper.
disposé, disposed, inclined.	sensible, sensible.
difficile, difficult, hard.	sourd, deaf.
docile, obedient.	utile, useful.
habile, skilful.	inutile, useless.
facile, easy.	(See also p. 275, §. 3-7.)

Examples.

Cette leçon est facile à apprendre. This lesson is easy to learn. Ce fruit n'est pas bon à manger. This fruit is not good to eat. Ce thème est-il difficile à traduire? Is this exercise hard to translate? Nous sommes disposés à croire que etc. We are disposed (inclined) to believe that etc. Soyez prompts à faire le blen, be quick to do good. Note. Compare the following sentences in which the verb preceding the adjective is used impersonally (see §. 3, p. 380): ··· · ··· ·· Examples: 11 A 14 M . . . 9 ....' Il n'est pas facile de prononcer ee mot. It is not easy to proneunce that word. Il est difficile de vaincre ses passions. It is difficult to; conquer one's passions. Il semble difficile d'apprendre cette langue. It seems difficult to learn that language. The other way would be: Ce mot n'est pas facile à prononcer. Cette langue paraît difficile à apprendre, etc. 1.

### Thème. 60.

This wood is to be sold. These rooms are to let. We have not a moment to lose. There is much pleasure in taking a walk. Is this house to sell or to let? It is to let. I perceived in him a kind 1 of repugnancy to learn Greek 2. You know his courage in facing<sup>3</sup> dangers. This girl spends all her time in playing. There is more glory in dying like Nelson than in living in unmerited honours. Is German easy to learn? It is not so easy as French. That is easy to say but not so easy to de. That forest<sup>5</sup> is dangerous to pass. I am ready to follow you, but I fear that you are not fit to guide 6 us. Be attentive to seize the opportunity 7. The just man is slow to punish but quick to reward. Are you disposed to do what I tell you? I shall be quick to perform what you command me.

1) une sorte de répugnance. 2) le Grec. 3) affronter. 4) au sein des honneurs qu'on si's pas mérités. 5) forét, f. 6) guider, conduire. 7) loccasion.

4) The following verbs also govern the Infinitive with à:

Accoutumer, } to accustom. habituer, aider, to help. aimer, to like (S. p. 378, §. 5). stamuser, to amuse one's self .engager, to engage, induce. with. s'appliquer, to apply one's self. apprendre, to learn, to teach. s'apprêter à, to dispose one's self. s'attacher à, to stick to. s'attendre, to await. autoriser, to authorise. chercher, to endeavour. concourir, to co-operate with. condamner, to condemn. consister, to consist in. contribuer, to contribute. consentir, to consent to. décider, to decide.

déterminer, to determine. se disposer, to prepare one's self. employer, to employ. encourager, to encourage. s'exposer, to expose one's self. s'exercer, to practise. ) hésiter, to hesitate. induire, to induce. inviter, to invite. se mettre, to begin. s'opiniâtrer, to insist upon. parvenir, to succeed in. passer, to spend. penser, to think of. persister, to persist in. se plaire, to be pleased. porter, to induce to. pousser, to excite to. prendre plaisir, to take pleasure. se préparer, to prepare. réduire, to reduce, to force songer, to think of se résoudre, to resolve. rester, to remain. réussir, to succeed in. suffice, to work at.

#### Examples.

Jaime à danser, I like to dance. Mon fils apprend à chanter, my son learns to sing. Je vous autorise à vendre mon jardin. I authorise you to sell my garden. Notre bonheur consiste à vivre suivant la nature. Our happiness consists in living according to nature. On m'a invité à faire une promenade. I have been invited to take a walk.

5) After the auxiliary verbs avoir and  $\partial tre$ , especially in the impersonal form *il* est and c'est,  $\dot{a}$  is also commonly used, when the Infinitive following serves to complete the predicate. Ex.:

Je n'ai rien à faire, I have nothing to do. Vous avez une lettre à écrire, you have a letter to write. Nous sommes à plaindre, we are to be pitied. Cet homme est à craindre, that man is to be feared:

6) The Infinitive with  $\dot{a}$  also occurs in abbreviated expressions which in reality are simply contracted subordinate sentences. Ex.:

A l'entendre, on dirait qu'il est innocent.
To hear him, one would say he is innocent.
A vous voir, on croirait ...
To see you, one would think ...
Il était le premier à se jeter sur l'ennemi.
He was the first to throw (= who threw) himself on the enemy.
Je ne suis pas homme à me laisser offenser.
I am not the man to allow myself to be offended.
Je me plaçai de manière à pouvoir tout observer.
I placed myself in such a posture as to observe everything.

### §. 8. Verbs with a or de.

The following verbs require either a or de according to the sense in which they are employed:

### Commencer à and de.

Commencer, to begin, is generally followed by à. Ex.: On a commencé à jouer, they have begun to play.

But if it expresses simply a fact without any idea of continuation, de is used after it:

Puisque j'ai commencé de rompre le silence. Since I have begun to break the silence.

### Continuer à and de.

Continuer à denotes an uninterrupted continuation of the action. Ex.:

Si vous continues à travailler si fort, vous ruinerez votre santé. If you continue to work so much, you will ruin your health.

Continuer de denotes an action repeated, but after successive interruptions. Ex.:

Mon ami continuait de m'écrire. My friend continued to write to me.

### S'efforcer à and de.

S'efforcer, synonymous with faire des efforts, to exert one's self, to take pains, takes à. Ex.: Il s'efforçait à faire son devoir.

He took pains (exerted himself) to do his duty.

S'efforcer à means to endeavour. Ex.:

Je m'efforcerai d'obtenir cette place.

I shall endeavour to get that place.

### Manquer à and de.

Manquer à denotes the omission or neglect of a duty: Pourquoi avez-vous manqué à faire votre exercice? Why have you neglected to do your exercise?

Manquer de signifies to fail, to be on the point of: Jai manqué de perdre la vie, I had nearly lost my life. . S'occuper à and de.

S'occuper takes à in the sense: to employ one's time, to work at. Ex.:

Il s'occups à lire, he occupies himself with reading.

L'auteur de "Paul et Virginie" s'occupait à recueillir les matériaux de cet ourrage.

The author of 'Paul and Virginia' occupied himself with collecting the materials of this work.

S'occuper de signifies mettre ses soins, to pay attention to, to think much of. Ex.:

Il s'occupe de détruire les abus. He is thinking how to abolish abuses.

### Venir à and de.

Venir governs the Infinitive with *a*, when it signifies to happen. Ex.:

S'il venait à apprendre que vous étes ici.

If he happened to know that you are here.

Venir is followed by de, when it is to express a thing just happened. Ex.:

Mes sœurs viennent de sortir. My sisters have just gone out.

Tarder à and de.

Tarder 'à signifies to delay.' Ex.:

Ne tardez pas à lui envoyer de l'argent.

Do not delay sending him some money.

Tarder, as an impersonal verb: il me tarde, I long, governs the Infinitive with de (see §. 3, p. 380). Ex.: Il me tarde de le revoir, I long to see him again.

§. 9. The following ten verbs may take either a or  $de_i$  simply according to euphony:

Consentir, to consent.	s'engager, to engage.
contraindre, to compel.	s'entêter, to be obstinate in.
demander, to demand.	essayer, to try.
forcer, to force.	obliger, to oblige.
s'empresser, to endeavour.	oublier, to forget,

#### Examples.

Il ne demande qu'à manger et à boire. He demands nothing but eating and drinking. Elle demanda au ciel de lui pardonner sa faute. She prayed to Heaven to forgive her fault.

Le banquier s'engagea à (or de) payer la somme de mille france. The banker engaged to pay the sum of a thousand francs.

# §. 10. Infinitive with the prepositions pour, par, après, sans.

1) Pour is used before an Infinitive to express an intention or design, answering to the English in order to; whenever therefore the English to before an Infinitive expresses a design or purpose, and can be changed into in order to, pour must be used. Ex.:

Il attend de l'argent pour payer ses dettes.

He is expecting money to pay his debts.

J'ai fait mon possible pour le réconcilier.

I have done all in my power to reconcile him.

, Je l'ai fait moi-même pour ne pas vous déranger. I did it myself, not to disturb you.

2) The preposition *pour* is also used after the words assez, trop and suffisant, and the verb suffire. Ex.:

Mr. R. est assez riche pour acheter cette campagne.

Mr. R. is rich enough to buy that estate.

Caroline est trop jeune pour faire cet ouvrage. Caroline is too young to do this work.

3) The English *Participle present* preceded by the prepositions for, without, after (or by) is rendered in French by the *Infinitive* with *pour*, *par*, sans or après, and not by the Participle present. Ex.:

Charles a été puni pour avoir manqué sa leçon. Charles was punished for having missed his lesson.

Il sortit sans me demander.

He went out without asking me.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II.

-- 300 --

Je veux commencer par résiter ma leçon. I will begin by saying my lesson. Après avoir lu la lettre, il me la rendii. After having read the letter, he gave it back to me.

§. 11. The French usage differs from the English in employing the *Infinitive* instead of a separate clause, when the dependent clause has the same subject as the principal clause:

Je crois être blessé, I think I am wounded.

Jespère mériter votre confiance, I hope I deserve your confidence.

Je voudrais être riche, I wish I were rich.

#### Thème. 61.

When the captain began to speak, all the soldiers listened 1 attentively. In spring the trees begin to cover themselves with leaves. They continued to live in peace. We have continued to write to him, but he has not yet answered us. The unfortunate never fail to complain. I have failed to do what I had promised you. I will endeavour to satisfy him. He is long before he comes (he delays to come). I long to have finished my work. At last I longed (il me tarda) to see again my native country. That woman is occupied only with ironing<sup>2</sup>. Do not fail to be here at a quarter to six. Come [and] see us this evening. Is your brother at home? No, he is just gone out. We have just received your letter. He did so (le) to (§. 10, 1) frighten <sup>8</sup> you. I travel to see the world. The army was too fatigued to renew<sup>4</sup> the attack. I will do everything to oblige you. God has not given us a heart to hate one another. He is going into the country to shoot 5. Some people are hated without deserving<sup>6</sup> it. It is necessary to know the human heart, to judge well of others 7. After having terminated some affairs at home, I shall begin by paying 8 some visits. Nobody can be happy without prectising 9 virtue. If the emperor Titus passed one day without doing good 10 to (à) anybody, he used 11 to say: I have lost that day.

1) écouter.
 2) répasser.
 3) effrayer.
 4) renouveler l'attaque.
 5) chasser.
 6) mériter.
 7) des autres.
 8) faire.
 9) pratiquer.
 10) du bien.
 11) il avait coutume.

### Reading -lesson.

### Suite d'Alexandre Selkirk.

"Une longue habitude me fit manger la viande sans sel et sans pain. Dans la saison j'avais quantité de bons navets <sup>1</sup> qui avaient été semés par l'équipage<sup>2</sup> de quelque vaisseau et qui couvraient plusieurs arpents <sup>3</sup> de terre. Je ne manquais pas non plus d'excellents choux<sup>4</sup> que je cueillais sur une espèce de palmier et que j'assaisonnais avec le fruit du piment, qui est le même que le poivre de la Jamaïque, et dont l'odeur est déliaieuse.

"Mes souliers et mes habits furent bientôt usés à force de (by) courir à travers les bois et les broussailles<sup>5</sup>. Cependant mes pieds s'endurcirent<sup>6</sup> si bien à la fatigue, que je courais partout sans peine.

"Revenu<sup>7</sup> enfin de ma mélancolie, je me divertissais quelquefois à graver mon nom sur l'écoree<sup>8</sup> des arbres avec la date de mon exil, ou bien à chanter, et à dresser<sup>9</sup> à la danse des chats et des chevreaux. — Lorsque je n'eus plus d'habits, je me fis un juste-au-corps <sup>10</sup> et un bonnet (cap) de peaux de chèvres que je cousis ensemble avec de petites courroies <sup>11</sup>; un clou <sup>12</sup> me servait d'aiguille. Je me fis aussi des chemises d'un morceau de toile que j'avais. Quand mon couteau fut usé jusqu'au dos, j'en forgeai d'autres avec quelques cercles de fer que j'avais trouvés sur le rivage, et je les aiguisai <sup>18</sup> sur des pierres.

"C'est ainsi que la nécessité m'apprit à *pourvoir* à tous mes besoins.

"Pendant mon séjour<sup>14</sup> dans cette île déserte, j'ai vu plusieurs fois des vaisseaux qui passaient, mais il n'y en eut ques deux qui vinrent y mouiller<sup>15</sup>. Incertain de quelle nation ils étaient, je m'en approchai *pour* les examiner. Mais quelques Espagnols qui avaient déjà mis pied à terre, ne m'eurent pas plutôt aperçu qu'ils tirèrent<sup>16</sup> sur moi et me poursuivirent jusque dans les bois, où je grimpai sur un arbre. Je ne fus pas découvert, quoiqu'ils rodassent<sup>17</sup> dans les environs et qu'ils tuassent quantité de chèvres sous mes yeux. Enfin j'aperçus vos navises que je pris aussitôt pour anglais. J'al-

1) turnips. 2) the crew. 3) acre. 4) cabbage. 5) brushwood. 6) to harden. 7) recovered. 8) bark. 9) to train. 10) jacket. — 11) strap. 12) a nail. 13) to sharpen. 14) stay. 15) to anchor. 16) to fire or shoot at. 17) to run about. ¢

lumai un feu sur un rocher près du fivage pour vous donner le signal de ma détresse.<sup>1</sup>. Vous me comprîtes et, grâces à votre humanité, je *puis espérer de revoir* ma patrie."

1) distress.

#### Questionnaire.

Comment mangeait-il la viande? N'avait-il pas autre chose à manger? Manquait-il de choux? Où les cueillait-il? Avec quoi assaisonnait-il ses choux? Avait-il toujours des souliers et des habits? Comment se divertissait-il quelquefois? Lorsque ses habits furent uses, que fit Selkirk? De quoi se servit-il pour coudre les peaux de chèvres? De quoi se fit-il des chemises? Quand son couteau fut use, que fit-il? N'a-t-il jamais vu de vaisseaux qui passaient? De qu'elle nation étaient-ils? Que firent-ils, lorsqu'ils l'eurent aperçu? Fut-il découvert? Qu'apercut-il enfin? Pourquoi alluma-t-il un feu sur le rivage? Ce.signal fut-il remarqué?

# TWENTY SECOND LESSON.

### • Of the Participles.

The participles are so called because they retain in part the nature of the *verbs* from which they are derived, and assume in part the nature of *adjectives*.

There are two participles, the Participle present and the Participle past.

### L Of the Participle present.

§. 1. The Participle present (ending in -ant, as lisant, reading; dormant, sleeping) is an adjective, called verbal adjective, when it qualifies a noun. In this case it is

declinable, and agrees in French with the substantive to which it is joined, and which it always *follows*. Ex.:

Une femme mourante, a dying woman. Des fleurs naissantes, budding flowers. Des paroles consolantes, consoling words. Une preuve convainquante, a convincing proof.

Note 1. This rule may be also expressed in the following terms: 'When an *Part. present* precedes the substantive in English, it goes after it in French and is always declinable.

Note 2: Observe that such verbal adjectives may be separated from their noun by the verb *être* or *paraître*, and yet are variable, as they express the inherent quality of a person, or thing. Ex.:

The proof was convincing, la preuve était convainquante. His words were very consoling, ses paroles étaient très consolantes.

§. 2. The Participle present retains the nature of a verb, and is *invariable*, when it governs a substantive after it. Ex.:

Une femme mourant de soif. A woman dying of thirst.

Une preuve convain quant tout le monde. A proof convincing everybody.

Une mère consolant sa fille.

A mother consoling her daughter.

Une pluie fécondant la terre.

A rain fructifying the earth.

Note. This second rule may be more shortly expressed thus: 'When a word ending in *ing* goes after the substantive in English, it is a true *Part. present*, and *invariable* in French.

§. 3. The *Participle present* is often used in English as a substantive, which is not the case in French. It can sometimes be rendered by a noun, in most cases by the Infinitive (see p. 376, §. 1). Ex.:

-Reading is an agreeable pastine. La lecture est un passe-temps agréable. His ruling passion is hunting. Sa passion dominants (§, 1) est la chasse. I like dancing, j'aime à danser. Singing and dancing were their greatest pleasure. Chanter et danser étaient leur plus grand plaisir.

§. 4. When an English Participle present has reference to a substantive which is not in the nominative case, it is rendered in French by the Present or Imperfect of the Indicative, with the relative pronoun qui before it. Ex.:

I have seen the child (acc.) playing in the yard. Jai vu l'enfant qui jou ait dans la cour.

He carried a bottle (acc.) containing poison. Il portait une bouteille qui contenait du poison.

§. 5. An English Participle present preceded by any preposition but by and on  $(\S. 7)$ , such as: from, of, before, after, for, without etc., is rendered in French by the Infinitive with de, a, pour or sans (as we have seen before, see the Examples p. 381-386). Ex.:

Do not prevent him from doing good. Ne l'empêchez pas de faire du bien. The art of writing is very old.

L'art d'écrire est très ancien.

I met him before leaving. Je l'ai rencontré avant de partir.

One cannot speak against the truth without being guilty. On ne peut pas trahir la vérité sans se rendre coupable.

I know his manner of thinking and acting. Je connais sa manière de penser et d'agir.

§. 6. Sometimes the English Participle present is used substantively with a possessive prenoun before it; then, it must be rendered in French by the conjunction que and the Indicative or Subjunctive, according as the case requires. Ex.: I doubt his being an honest man. Je doute qu'il soit un honnête honne. We heard of his becoming a soldier. Nous avons appris qu'il s'est fait soldat. I spoke of (my) going to Paris. Je disais que je voulais aller à Paris.

#### Thème. 62.

Miss Mary is an obliging young lady. I listened 1 [to] her encouraging words. He has given us consoling news. These books are very interesting. That mother in her supplicating<sup>2</sup> attitude, would have, appeared touching, even without the surprising eloquence of her discourse. The young soldier preceding all the others, seized \* the standard. That mountain<sup>4</sup> commanding an extensive <sup>5</sup> view, was very well calculated<sup>6</sup> for our observations. Caroline weeping bitterly<sup>7</sup>, threw herself into her mother's arms. I have seen your brother (§. 4) playing in the garden. Alexander asked the physicians (acc.) standing<sup>6</sup> by (autour de) him, if he should die of (de) his illness. The soldiers of Alexander, forgetting their wives and children, looked upon<sup>9</sup> the Persian gold as <sup>10</sup> their plunder<sup>11</sup>. It ceased raining. He risked losing his life. I am afraid of losing her confidence. The desire of appearing clever often prevents one from becoming so. He left 12 without paying his debts. I heard of his being (§. 6) married. -We noticed 13 his looking at it (1e). He wrote to me without 14 his father's knowing it.

1) écouter gch. 2) to supplicate = supplier. 3) s'emparer de gch. 4) le drapeau. 5) étendue, f. 6) propre à. 7) to weep bitterly = fondre en larmes. 8) se tenir. 9) to look upon = regarder gch. 10) comme. 11) butin, m. 12) partir. 13) remarquer. 14) sans gue with the Subj.

# **II.** The Gerund (Part. with en).

§. 7. The Gerund is nothing but the Participle present, to which the preposition en is prefixed. It generally denotes: 1) either a means by which the object of the leading clause is attained, or 2) a simultaneous action, that is, an action during the transaction of which another is acted by the same subject. It is always indeclinable and corresponds with the English Participle present preceded by the propositions by, in and on or while, or is sometimes rendered by the simple Participle without preposition. Ex.:

1) denoting a means:

On se forme l'esprit en lisant de bone livres. We form our mind by reading good books. Nous avons obtenu la paix en faisant de grands sacrifices. We have obtained peace by making great sacrifices. Il se sauva en sautant par la fenêtre. He saved himself by jumping through the window.

2) denoting a simultaneous action:
La décess sourit en voyant Télénaque.
The Goddess smiled on scoing Telemachus.
Il me dit cela en tremblant.
He trembled as he told me this.
Je l'ai rencontré en allant au château.
I met him in going (as I was g.) to the castle.

Je lis le journal en déjeûnant.

.í. . ,

I read the paper while breakfasting.

Note. The English by with a Participle is rendered in two cases only by par and the Infinitive (see p. 389, §. 3), viz. with commencer, to commence, to begin, and finit, to terminate with, to do something at last. Ex.:

Je veux commencer pas réciter ma leçon. I will begin by saying my lesson. Il finit par me dem an der pardon. At last he begged my pardon.

§. 8. To re-enforce the simultaneousness of the two actions, in French we like to put tout before the Gerund. Ex.:

Tout en pleurant il ne put s'empêcher de rire. Whilst crying he could not forbear laughing.

Thème: 63.

We learn the news by reading the news-papers. By observing these rules, you may avoid mistakes. By studying much, you will become learned. More glory is acquired by defending one's fellow-eitimens<sup>2</sup> than by accusing them. In going<sup>3</sup> this way we shall meet him. I met my friend as *I was going* to the post-office. I am accustomed to smoke while working. By paying all his debts, he re-established<sup>4</sup> his credit. He told me *trembling* that he had lost all his money. You may easily get<sup>5</sup> praise, by complying<sup>6</sup> with the (*aux*) wishes of the people<sup>7</sup> you converse with (with whom y. c.), and by preferring others to yourself. By taking revenge<sup>8</sup>, a man is equal with (a) his enemy; by pardoning him, he is his (*lui*) superior. Whilst shedding<sup>9</sup> (§. 8) tears, he burst <sup>10</sup> into a laugh.

On acquiert: 2) concitoyen, m. 3) prendre. 4) rétablir.
 obtenir des louanges. 6) to comply with = se conformer à gch.
 des personnes. 8) se venger. 9) verser. 10) il éslata de rire.

### Reading · lesson.

### Gesler\*) conduit Tell à Kusnacht.

Tell, dans la barque, était moins ému des cris des soldats, du bruit des vagues écumantes, du sifflement des vents déchaînés, qu'il ne le fut en découvrant la caverne de Grutli. Il attendait le trépas<sup>1</sup>, et ne songeait qu'à l'avantage que son pays pourrait tirer de la mort du gouverneur. Il jouissait en silence de la peur, des gémissements<sup>a</sup>, du tourment qu'éprouvait Gesler, lorsqu'un des rameurs, tout-à-coup s'adressant à cet homme cruel: "Nous sommes perdus," dit-il, "il n'est plus en notre puissance de maintenir au milieu des flots la barque emportée<sup>s</sup> par le vent du nord qui, dans un instant, va la priser en pièces contre les rochers du rivage. Un seul homme, le plus renommé, le plus habile de nos trois cantons dans l'art de braver les tempêtes du lac, peut nous sauver de la mort. Cet homme est ici: le voilà! le voilà? chargé de tes chaînes. Choisis, Gesler, choisis promptement entre le trépas ou sa liberté."

Gesler frémit<sup>4</sup> à cette parole. Sa haine violente pour Tell combat dans son âme pusillanime l'amour même qu'il a pour la vie; il hésite encore, il ne répond point, mais les prières, les murmures des soldats et des rameurs qui lui

1) death. 2) sighs. 3) carried away. 4) to tremble, shudder.

\*) pronounce Guasler.

demandent, qui le pressent de sauver leurs jeurs et les siens, en délivrant<sup>4</sup> son prisonnier; la crainte d'être mal obéi, s'il se refuse aux vœux de tous, et la tempête qui augmente, déterminent enfin Gesler. "Qu'on brise<sup>6</sup> ses chaînes," dit-il, "je lui pardonne tous ses crimes, je kui rends<sup>7</sup> la vie et la liberté, si son adresse nous amème au port."

Les soldats, les rameurs s'empressent<sup>8</sup> de rendre libre Guillaume. Ses fers sont tombés, il se lève, et, sans prononcer un seul mot, il s'empare du gouvernail<sup>9</sup>. Faisant monvoir sous sa main la barque, comme l'enfant fait plier la baguette<sup>10</sup> qu'il tourne à son gré, il oppose la proue<sup>11</sup> aux deux vents, dont les forces ainsi divisées la tiennent en équilibre. Profitant ensuite d'un moment de calme, il tourne de la proue à la poupe<sup>12</sup>, maintient la barque dans la direction qui seule peut la sauver, fait prendre les rames à deux seuls rameurs, dont il dirige les efforts, et s'avance, malgré les vents, malgré les flots et la tempête, vers le détroit <sup>18</sup> qu'il veut repasser. Les ténébres <sup>14</sup> empêchent Gesler de s'apercevoir qu'il retourne aux mêmes lieux d'où il est parti. Tell continue sa marche; la nuit presque entière s'écoule 15; il est rentré dans le lac d'Uri; il aperçoit la lueur mourante du signal donné sur le mont d'Altdorf. C'est cette lueur 16 qui lui sert d'étoile; il connaît le lac depuis longtemps, il en évite les écueils<sup>17</sup>, il s'approche pourtant du rivage qui borde le canton de Schwitz; il pense à Werner Stauffacher; il calcule que Werner doit être en marche, et que les chemins encombrés de neige, le forceront de côtoyer 18 le lac. Dans ce faible espoir, il navigue, en feignant d'ignorer les lieux où la tempête pousse la barque, en augmentant les terreurs de Gesler et de ses soldats. (To be continued.)

5) to liberate. 6) to break (see p. 372, §. 15). -- 7) I give. 8) See p. 388, §. 9. -- 9) the helm, rudden. 10) the rod. 11) the stern. 12) the prow. 13) the straight. 14) the darkness. 15) to pass away. 16) light. 17) cliff. 18) to follow or march along the coast.

#### Questionnaire.

Tell était-il ému de quelque chose? Qu'attendait-il?

A quoi songeait-il?

De quoi jouissait-il en silence?

Qu'est-ce qui détermina enfin Gesler à délivrer le prisonnier? Que dit alors un des rameurs à Gesler?

- .....Qui était le batelier le plus habile dans les trois cantous?
- Le rameur nomma-t-il cet homme?
- Entre quoi Gesler avait-il à choisir?
- Quel parti (decision) prit-il?
  - Que firent les soldats et les rameurs?
  - Quand les fers furent ôtés, que fit Tell?
  - Quelle manœuvre fit-il après?
  - Racontez ce que fit Tell ensuite.
  - Gesler s'aperçut-il que Tell retournait vers les mêmes lieux d'où ils étaient partis?
  - Vers quel lac Tell dirige-t-il la barque?
  - De quel rivage s'approche-t-il?
- A qui pense-t-il?
  - Que calcule-t-il à son égard?
  - Que feint-il?

## TWENTY THIRD LESSON.

### **I.** Of the Participle past.

§. 1. A Participle past is always declinable in French as an adjective, when it comes after a substantive which it qualifies. Ex.:

Une fleur flétrie, a withered flower. Une lettre bien écrite, a letter well written. Des maisons bien meublées, well furnished houses.

The Participle past with être,

§. 2. The Participle past when accompanied by the auxiliary être\*) (or by the verb sembler or paraître), agrees with the nominative. Ex.:

Cette lettre est bien écrite, this letter is well written. Mes deux tantes sont mortes, both my aunts are dead.

La ville fut prise, the town was taken.

La nuit sera bientôt passés, the night will soon be over.

Votre sœur semble (paraît) bien affligée.

Your sister seems very much afflicted.

\*) How it is with reflective verbs, see §. 5 and Note.

Note. If in intervening sentences the auxiliary the is omitted, the rule is in no way affected, and it is equally indifferent whether such an abbreviated intervening sentence stands in the middle of the sentence or at the beginning. Ex.:

Les rois chéris de leur peuples (instead of qui sont chéris) méritent le respect du monde entier.

La princesse, irritée de se voir trompée, quitte la ville.

The Participle past with avoir:

§. 3. A Participle past with avoir may be the Perfect (compound tense) of an active verb, or of a neuter verb.

§. 4. The *Participle past* of an active verb is declined in one case, and not in the other. It never agrees with the nominative of the active verb, it can only agree with the *accusative*.

Rule 1. In compound tenses with avoir, when the accusative goes before the auxiliary, the Part. past agrees with it in gender and number.

### Examples,

Quelle affaire (acc. sing.) avez-vous entreprise? Les affaires que\*) (acc. pl.) vous avez entreprises. Combien d'enfants (acc.) votre oncle a-t-il perdus? Les dames que (acc.) nous avons rencontrées. Voici les deux lettres que j'ai reçues hier. Les avez-vous lues? Je ne les ai pas encore lues.

§. 5. The same rule applies also to reflected verbs, when  $\hat{e}tre$  takes the place of *avoir*. The Participle past agrees with the *accusative* that precedes the auxiliary. Examples:

Elle s'est blessés, she has wounded herself. Mes sœurs se (acc.) sont trompées (have been mistaken). S'est-elle aperque de ce changement? (has she perceived).

\*) When the accusative governed by the compound tense, is the relative pronoun que, its gender and number will easily be seen from the noun preceding it. In this case, for instance, que is the acc. plur. fem., referring to affaires, f. pl. ! Mose. Observe that this is the case only with the accusative, and not otherwise; for ex. we must write ells s'est bless é (not blessée) la main, because se is in the dative; the accusative is la main which follows.

Rule 2. With two verbs in the same sentence, the Participle is declinable, when the following verb does not govern the preceding accusative. Ex.:

I have heard them sing, je les ai entendus chanter. We saw it fall (a house), nous l'avons vue tomber.

§. 6. The *Participle* is further declinable in French, when the Infinitive following it is rendered in English by the *Participle present*. Ex.:

La demoiselle que j'ai vue peindre. :.

The young lady whom I saw painting.

La chanteuse que j'ai entendue chanter.

The songstress I heard singing.

(Que is the accusative governed by vue and entendue.)

### Thème. 64.

She is loved. We are satisfied. My sisters are satisfied. My aunt is arrived. My cousins (fem.) are arrived. This house is sold. The two houses are sold. These letters are written very well. My mother is gone out, and my sisters are also gone out. Mary's grandmother appears afflicted. The trees have been felled 1. Virtuous people are esteemed. and the impious<sup>2</sup> (are) despised. The rule<sup>3</sup> which I have learnt is very easy. The woman I have seen is very handsome Where is letter which you have received? Here it is (la voici); it is written in (en) French. The horses which we have sold were very old. How many horses have you sold? We have sold them all. Which house have you taken \*? How many books has he bought? Where is my pen? I have not seen it. Where are my sisters? I have not seen them. Here are the apples (which) you have given me; I have not eaten them. The young ladies have been much amused<sup>5</sup> in your company. Gentlemen, you are mistaken<sup>6</sup>. She has repented of her neglectfulness<sup>7</sup>. I saw (have seen)

1) to fell == couper. 2) impie. 3) règle, f. 4) louer. 5) Perf. of s'amuser. 6) Perf. of se tromper. 7) négligence.

them play before my house. The singers whom I heard singing yesterday, were Tyrolose<sup>8</sup>.

8) Tyroliens.

### The Participle past is invariable:

Rule 3. The Participle past of a neuter verb with avoir is invariable. Ex.:

Nous avons dormi (not dormis), we have slept. Elle a ri (not rie), she (has) laughed.

La pluie n'a pas encors cessé (not cassée). The rain is not yet over.

Rule 4. The Participle past is invariable when the verb is impersonal. Ex.:

La chaleur qu'il a fait hier (which was yesterday). Il s'est élevé une dispute, there arose a dispute.

**Rule 5.** The Participle past is invariable when the accusative follows the compound tense. Ex.:

Lai étudié les mathématiques. Elle a reçu une lettre. Mon cœur m'a dicté ces paroles. Avez-vous appris vos règles?

§. 7. The Participles of the verbs pouvoir, vouloir, devoir, falloir, faire and laisser, when they stand with an Infinitive as auxiliaries, remain unchanged, because they form with it a sort of compound verb. Ex.:

Les livres que j'ai voulu (not voulus) lire. Les mesures que j'ai du (not dues) prendre. D'où viennent ces fleurs? Je les ai fait (not faites) planter. L'occasion que vous avez laissé (not laissée) échapper.

§. 8. The verb in the Infinitive which governs the preceding accusative, may be only understood. Ex.:

Il a fait les excuses qu'il a dû (viz. faire).

He has made the apologies he ought.

Je lui ai donné tous les renseignements que j'ai pu. I gave him all the information I could. §. 9. In a similar manner an accusative may precede the compound tense and not be governed by it, but by another verb in the Infinitive; then, of course, the *Participle* remains unchanged. Ex.:

La maison que je vous ai conseillé d'acheter est toute neuve. Les règles que j'ai commencé à expliquer sont difficiles.

(In the first of the above sentences que belongs as an accusative to the Infinitive acheter, in the second to expliquer. The two Participles conseillé and commencé have no accusative belonging to them.)

§. 10. With two verbs the Participle is *indeclinable*, when the Infinitive following it, is rendered in English by the *Passive voice*, which in French must be in the *astive*.

La demoiselle que j'ai vu peindre.

The young lady whom I saw being painted (whose picture I saw drawn).

Connaissez-vous cette nouvelle chanson! Oui, je l'ai entendu chan ter.

Do you know that new song? Yes, I have heard it sung.

(In these sentences the acc. que is governed by the Infinitive peindre, not by vu, and l' by chanter and not by entendu.)

§. 11. The particle *en* represents no accusative, and has therefore no effect on the *Participle past*. Ex.:

Ces cerises sont-elles bonnes? Je n'en ai pas mangé. Avez-vous acheté des crayons? Oui, j'en ai acheté.

### Thème. 65.

That girl has run too fast, she is out of breath<sup>1</sup>. My <sup>a</sup> aunt has travelled in Italy. His mother (has) lived<sup>2</sup> in this house for (*pendant*) two years. These young men (*gens*) have studied French and German. We (have) met some ladies in the street. Miss Eliza has brought a bunch<sup>3</sup> of flowers. For whom has she brought them? She (has) brought them for you. Have you read these two books? No, Sir, I have not yet read them. I have read another book which your brother has lent me. The carpenter<sup>4</sup> has built a new house,

1) hors d'halcine. 2) demeurer. 3) bouquet. 4) le charpentier.

and he has sold it this morning to Mr. B. The rain which has fallen (qu'il a fait) has spoiled the roads. We have bought 'twenty acres<sup>5</sup> of land<sup>6</sup>. The excessive heat which we had<sup>7</sup> last summer, has occasioned diseases<sup>8</sup>. There came a person that I did not know. Why are these plants so wet<sup>9</sup>? I (have) ordered<sup>10</sup> them to be watered<sup>10</sup> (§. 7). The measures<sup>11</sup> I was obliged<sup>12</sup> to take, have not had the expected effect<sup>13</sup>. The landlord<sup>14</sup> caused them to be paid (§. 10).

5) arpent, m. 6) terre. 7) put the Perf. of the impers form il fait. 8) maladie. 9) mouillées. 10) faire arroser. 11) mesure, f. 12) Part. of devoir. 13) effet, m. 14) l'aubergiste.

### 66.

Where is your gold watch? I have sent it to the watchmaker<sup>1</sup>. — I thought you had allowed<sup>2</sup> it to be stolen. The two horses which I (have) advised you to buy, are worth (valent) a thousand francs. Happy the princes, who have always used<sup>8</sup> their power<sup>4</sup> for the good<sup>5</sup> of their people. You must (il faut que vous) finish the letter which you have begun to write. The apples which I have forbidden you to eat, are not ripe. How many men<sup>6</sup> commit the same faults which they had resolved to avoid 7. We have showed 8 him all the honour (pl.) it was our duty [to show him]. My friend rendered me every service 9 he could. Have you bought some cigars <sup>10</sup>? Yes, I have bought [some]. Are not these trees very high? I have " seen higher ones. The ship which we saw launched 12, has got the name of Arion. The play 13 I saw performed <sup>14</sup> last night, has been very much applauded. Imitate the virtues which you have heard praised (Inf.). We used <sup>15</sup> all the means we could.

1) horloger, m. 2) laisser. 3) employer. 4) pouvoir, m. — 5) le bien. 6) que d'hommes. 7) éviter. 8) fait. 9) tous les services qu'. 10) cigarre, m. 11) put in: en. 12) lancer. 13) la pièce. 14) jouer. 15) employer.

### II. Of the Participle absolute.

§. 12. The Participle absolute is used as 1) in English, instead of accessory and subordinate clauses beginning with a conjunction, which have the same subject as the leading clause. Ex.: - 405 ---

Régulus s'éloigna de Rome, ten àn t les yeux fixés à la terre, et la is san t sa femme et ses enfants. L'ennemi, voy, ant (as he saw) notre petit nombre, re-

Néoptolème, poursuivant son discours, me dit etc. Le charpentier, laissant son ouvrage à moitié fait, alla

commença le combat.

dîner.

L'empereur Conrad, ne voulant plus tenter la fortune, abandonna subitement la Terre-Sainte etc. Ne sachant que faire, il prit ce parti. §. 13. When the accessory sentence expresses an event which has taken place before the other expressed in the principal sentence, the compound form of the Participle absolute (ayant vu, ayant fait etc.) is used. Ex.: Le comte de Toulouse, ayant sommé (having summoned) la ville de se rendre, la déclara sa possession. Le roi ayant tout sacrifié pour le bonheur de son peuple, fui enfin la victime de ses bonnes intentions. " Lysandre avant fait un riche butin (booty) dans la prise d'Athènes, envoya à Lacédémone tout l'or et l'argent qu'il avait pris. §, 14. The Participle absolute can be used 2) in the place of subordinate sentences beginning with a conjunction, when they have a different subject.\*) The Participle may be either that of the Present or that of the Perfect tense, according to the connection of time, and may be either active, neuter, or passive according to the signification of the verb. Ex.:/ Le vieillard ayant parlé ainsi, l'assemblée se sépara. The old man having spoken thus, the assembly dispersed. Le roi étant mort, son fils lui succéda. The king being dead, his son succeeded. La ville ayant été prise, les soldais la pillèrent. The town being taken, the soldiers pillaged it. Le repas étant fini, nous nous mîmes en route. When dinner was over, we set off. - 1. , ۲ \*) In Latin the Ablations absolutus. 12 Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II. 27

§. 15. When the Passive participle is accompanied by *etant*, it is sometimes preferable to omit it, in as much as it makes the sentence somewhat less clegant. Examples:

Le repas fini (for étant fini), nous nous mêmes on route. When dinner was over, we set off.

L'opération achevée, le roi remonta à cheval.

The operation being performed, the king mounted again on horseback.

Cette disposition faite, nous entrâmes dans la salle de réception. When this arrangement was made, we entered the parlour.

Note. It is evident from §. 1 that in this case the Participle must agree with its noun.

### Thème. 67.

As the two combattants would not yield<sup>1</sup>, they were pierced with wounds<sup>2</sup>. As Mentor heard the voice of the Goddess who was calling her nymphs into the wood, he waked<sup>8</sup> Telemachus. Crantor seeing that I was already very near him, redoubled his seal and attempted<sup>4</sup> to barricade my way. That mountain commanding an extensive view, was well calculated<sup>6</sup> for our observations. I cannot accompany you into the country, having some business that requires my presence here: How many people do we see, who knowing the value of time, waste<sup>7</sup> it improperly<sup>8</sup>. Wishing to make something of my son, I have put him into your hands. Newton, having taken the average 9 of years during which the kings of the various 10 countries have reigned, reduced each reign to about twenty-two years. Napoleon seeing that the battle of Waterloo was lost, drew his sword and would desperately<sup>11</sup> fling himself into the tumult of the battle. Franklin [after] having looked everywhere for employment<sup>12</sup>, re-entered at the printer<sup>13</sup> Keimer's.

 céder. 2) de coups. 3) éveiller. 4) chercher à barrer. —
 5) étendu. 6) propre à. 7) perdre. 8) mai à propos. 9) le terme moyen. 10) différent. 11) en désespéré. 12) de l'occupation. —
 13) chez l'imprimeur K.

68.

My mother being ill, I cannot go out to-day. Franklin seeing that all his efforts were useless, went back to his country, in order to brave the storm ' with his countrymen. Wishing to see him, I went to his house. Mary and her brother Henry, perceiving a pretty butterfly<sup>2</sup>, endeavoured to catch<sup>3</sup> it. The gates being closed, we could not enter. Philip sent deputies to the Scythians<sup>4</sup> desiring (peur demander) a part of the expenses<sup>5</sup> of the siegs; the Scythians, alleging<sup>6</sup> the barrenness<sup>7</sup> of their land, replied, that having no rickes sufficient to satisfy so great a king, they thought [it] more<sup>5</sup> unfit to pay but<sup>9</sup> a part, than to refuse the whole<sup>10</sup>. The wound still bleeding<sup>11</sup>, she fainted<sup>12</sup>. Everybody will respect the magistrates who, forgetting their own interest, observing the law, favouring<sup>13</sup> virtue and restraining<sup>14</sup> vice, seek the welfare<sup>15</sup> of their country.

l'orage, m. 2) papillon, m. 3) attraper. 4) Scythe, m.
 les frais. 6) alléguer. 7) la stérilité. 8) moins convenable. ....
 9) de ne payer qu'une partie. 10) le tout. 11) saigner. 12) s'évenouir. 13) favoriser. 14) réprimer. 15) le bien.

### Reading-lesson.

### Gesler conduit Tell à Kusnacht. (Suite.)

Enfin l'orient<sup>1</sup> se colore, et la tempête semble s'appaiser aux premiers rayons de l'aurore. Le jour naissant découvre à Tell les roches voisines d'Altdorf, avant que le tyran ait eu le temps de les reconnaître; Guillaume y dirige sa barque et la fait marcher plus rapidement. Gesler, dont la férocité revient à mesure que le danger s'éloigne, l'observe avec des yeux sombres. Il veut, mais il n'ose pas encore le faire charger de liens<sup>2</sup>. Ses soldats et ses matelots<sup>3</sup> reconnaissent bientôt où ils sont, en instruisent le gouverneur, qui, s'avangant vers Tell avec colère, lui demande d'une voix terrible, pourquoi la barque, qu'il a guidée, a repris le chemin d'Altdorf.

Guillaume, sans lui répondre, pousse la barque droit <sup>4</sup> à un rocher peu *éloigné* de la rive <sup>5</sup>, saisit d'une main prompte l'arc et la flèche <sup>6</sup> qu'un archer tenait à la main, et, rapide comme l'éclair, s'élance <sup>7</sup> de la barque sur le rocher. Là, sans s'arrêter, il saute sur un autre roc, gravit <sup>8</sup> aussitôt la roche escarpée <sup>9</sup>, et se montre sur le sommet, semblable à l'aigle des Alpes quand il se repose auprès des nuages, et qu'il promène ses yeux *perçants* sur les troupeaux des vallons.

1) the east. 2) fetters, chains. 3) sailor. 4) straight. 5) bank. 6) arrow. 7) jumps. 8) to climb up. 9) steep.

27\*

Le gouverneur étonné pousse un cri de fureur, de rage. Il commande aussitôt qu'on débarque, et que ses soldats, dispersés, environnent de toutes parts le roc où il voit le héros. On obéit; les archers descendent et préparent déjà leurs arcs; Gesler, qui marche au milieu d'eux, veut que leurs fièches réunies s'abreuvent toutes du sang de Guillaume. Guillaume aussi a ses desseins. Il ne s'arrête, il ne se montre que pour attirer l'ennemi. Il laisse approcher cette troupe armée jusqu'à la juste distance où son trait<sup>6</sup> peut donner la mort. Il regarde, fixe Gesler, pose sa flèche sur sa corde, et, l'adressant au cœur du gouverneur, il la fait voler 10 dans les airs. La flèche vole, siffle 11, frappe au milieu du cœur de Gesler. Le tyran tombe, et son âme s'exhale au milieu des imprécations. Tell a déjà disparu; plus léger que le faon 12, il est descendu du sommet du roc, il court, il vole sur la glace; il gagne, traverse des sentiers<sup>13</sup> déserts, et prend le chemin d'Altdorf. Florian.

10) to fly. 11) to hiss. 12) fawn. 13) path.

#### Questionnaire.

Que découvre le jour naissant à Tell? Que fait Gesler? Quelle était l'intention de Gesler? De quoi les soldats et les matelots instruisent-ils le gouverneur? Quand il aperçut les roches d'Altdorf, que demanda-t-il à Tell? Guillaume lui fit-il une réponse? Où pousse -t - il la barque? Que saisit-il d'une main prompte? Où s'elance-t-il de la barque? A qui ressemble-t-il quand il se montre sur le sommet? Qu'est-ce que le gouverneur commande alors? Fut-il obei? Gesler que veut-il? Jusqu'où Tell laisse-t-il approcher la troupe? Qui veut-il frapper? Sa flèché l'a-t-elle atteint? Quel chemin Tell prend-il alors?

# TWENTY FOURTH LESSON.

Idiomatical expressions on some French verbs.

Idioms are modes of speaking peculiar to a language, which cannot be literally translated into another.

On avoir, to have.

Avoir vingt ans, to be twenty years old. avoir mal aux yeax, to have sore eyes. avoir mal à la tête, to have a (or the) headache.

j'ai froid aux mains, my hands are cold.

vouz avéz beau parler, it is in vain for you to talk. j'ai de la peine à le croire, I can hardly believe it. avoir froid, to be cold.

avoir honte de, to be ashamed.

avoir raison, — tort, to be right, — in the wrong. avoir bonne mine, to look well.

n'avoir que faire de, to have no occasion for.

### On *être*, to be.

Etre en état de , to afford.

se porter bien, to be well.

être à son aise, to be in good circumstances.

être mal avec quelqu'un, to be out of favour with some one. être de moitié, to go halves.

étre à la portée, to be within (the reach).

*etre sur le point de*, to be very near to, to be going. *il en est de*..., it is with.

On fairs, to do, to make.

Faire savoir qn., to let one know, to send word. faire chaud, faire froid, to be warm, -- cold. se faire des amis, to get friends. faire faire, to get made: faire semblant de, to pretend. faire cas de, to value, to esteem. faire in tour de promenade, to take a walk. faire voile or mettre à la voile, to set Bail. faire de son mieux, to do sur best. ne faire que, to do nothing but. c'est en fait de moi, I am undone, it is over with me. vous feriez mieux de rester, you had better stay.

### On donner ; td gite .

Donner dans le piège, to be caught in the snare. donner sur le jardin, to look on the garden. donner carte blanche, to give full powers. donner sur l'ennemi, to fall upon the enemy. se donner des airs, to take a great deal upon one's self. ne savoir où donner de la tête, to know not what way to turn.

ce vin donne à la tête, that wine flies up to the head. donner un coup de main, to help. donner à pleines mains, to give largely.

### On jouer, to play.

Jouer d'un instrument, to play (upon) an instrument. jouer à quelque jeu, to play at some game. jouer une pièce de théâtre, to act a play. jouer un tour à qn., to serve (play) one a trick.

### On different verbs (see p. 243).

Aimer misux, to have rather, to choose rather. aller à bride abattue, to go at full speed. se donner la peine, to take the trouble. dormir la grasse matinée, to sleep very late. prendre en mauvaise part, to take amiss. s'y bien prendre, to go the right way to work. s'y preadre mal, to go the wrong way to work. se passer de, to do without, trouver mauvais que, to take ill if. trouver son maître, to meet with one's match. trouver à redire, to find fault with. savoir bon gré, to take kindly of. tenir parole, to keep our word. ne tenir qu'à, to be in a person's power. il ne tient pas à moi que, it is not my fault if. s'en tenir à, to stand to. venir à beut de, to bring about, to accomplish. en vouloir à, to have a spite against. je voudrais pouvoir, I wish I could. il y va de votre vie, your life is at stake. venir de, to have just done something. en venir aux mains, to fight.

### Exercises upon some French Idioms.

69.

How old was your father when he died? He was seventy. — And your mother? She was almost ' eighty. — I do not remember to have ever been so <sup>a</sup> thirsty as I was yesterday. Warm yourself, if you are cold; my feet are not cold, because I have walked much, but my hands are so cold, that I cannot write. There are some walks<sup>a</sup> in our park which are three hundred feet long. You are in the wrong, and he is in the right. It is in vain for you to ask money from a miser, he never will give you any. Is it cold this morning? Yes, sir it is very cold; however I do not think it is quite so cold as it was yesterday. The weather is very inconstant; it was hot yesterday, it is cold to-day; it rained this morning; it is fine weather now, but perhaps it will rain again before it be <sup>4</sup> night.

1) près de. 2) si. 3) allée, f. 4) faire.

#### 70.

How do you do this morning? I am very well, I thank you. And how does your sister do? She is not well; she has been ill for these two months, and I fear she will never be well again. And your brothers, how are they? The youngest is very well, but I do not know how the eldest does, because we have not heard <sup>1</sup> of him for<sup>2</sup> these two months; he was very well when he wrote to us last<sup>3</sup>. It is with the diseases of the heart as with those of the body, some are real<sup>4</sup>, and some imaginary. It is with men of learning as with ears<sup>5</sup> of corn; they raise their <sup>6</sup> heads while they are empty, and when they are full, they begin to dwop<sup>7</sup>. It is with your son as with other children. I do not think it will be with my son as it was with yours.

1) avoir de ses nouvelles. 2) for these = depuis. 3) la dernière fois. 4) réel. 5) épis de blé. 6) def. art. 7) pencher.

71.

I have great pain<sup>1</sup> in my side. He has sore eyes. Have you the stomach<sup>2</sup>-ache? He has a sore foot. My lips are sore. She had the tooth-ache yesterday, now she has a headache; to-morrow, perhaps, she will have a bad leg. When I was young, I often had the headache. Why do 1) bien mak. 2) estomac. you not eat, if you are hunger? 2n+100 and 1000 very hungry, I can wait [till] dinner-time<sup>3</sup>, but I am very thirsty, and I will thank<sup>4</sup> you for<sup>5</sup> a glass of wine. It is very cold to-day. It was cold yesterday. It will be hot soon. I am thirsty. He is hungry. My sister is not well, she has not been<sup>6</sup> well for these three weeks, she has a headache to-day. At what o'clock did you rise this morning? I ross at four o'clock. It is in vain for you to say so, I do not believe you.

3) le dinor. 4) prier. 5) de me donner. 6) se porter, put the Present tense.

# Free Exercises.

#### İ.

Philip of Valois used<sup>1</sup> to say, that the greatest treasure of a king should<sup>2</sup> be in the hearts of his subjects, and that he would<sup>3</sup> rather be king of the French than of France.

1) avait coutume, 2) devait, 3) qu'il aimerait mieux.

#### 2.

Aristippus was asked what difference there was between a well-informed<sup>1</sup> and an ignorant man; he replied: "Send them both<sup>2</sup> among men who are not acquainted<sup>2</sup> with them and they will discover."

1) un homme instruit. 2) tous les deux. 3) connaître gn.

#### 3.

Diogenes asked a considerable sum from a spendthrift<sup>4</sup>: "How!" said the man to him, "thou askedst only a farthing<sup>\*</sup> from others!" — "That is true," replied Diogenes, "but I cannot expect that you will be able to give many times<sup>8</sup>."

1) un homme prodigue. 2) un denier. 8) souvent.

1) le moyen. 2) acquérir.

#### 4.

Socrates being asked by one of his friends, which was the way<sup>1</sup> to gain<sup>2</sup> a good reputation, replied: "You will gain it, if you endeavour to be, what you desire to appear."

. ... .

. . .

An old philosopher observing a young man, who had too great (a) volubility ' of tongue, spoke thus to him: "Take notice?, my friend, that nature has given us two ears, and but<sup>3</sup> one mouth, that we [may] listen much, and speak little."

1) volubilité de la langue. 2) observez. 8) seulement.

.. . . . .

the contest of the total to the part

When Cortez returned to Spain, he was coolly received by the emperor Charles V. One day he suddenly presented himself to the monarch. "Who are you?" skild the emperor haughtily . — "The man," said Cortez, as haughtily, "who has given you more provinces, than your ancestors left you cities."

1) froidement. 2) subitement; see p. 146, Rem. 1. - 3) fièrement.

#### 17

A very poor inhabitant<sup>1</sup> of N. finding one night thieves<sup>8</sup> in his house, said to them, without being concerned<sup>3</sup> at it: "I do not know, what you look [for] in my house by night<sup>4</sup>; is <sup>5</sup> for me, I cannot find anything<sup>6</sup> in it in broad day light<sup>7</sup>."

1) habitant. 2) des valeurs. 3) en sirs afingué. 4) de ruit. 5) quant à moi. 6) rien. 7) en plein jour.

. 8.

• •

the to that I

Malec, visir of the Caliph Mostadi, had just ' obtained a victory over the Greeks, and had taken<sup>9</sup> their emperor in a battle. Having had<sup>8</sup> this prince brought into his tent<sup>4</sup>, he asked him, what treatment<sup>6</sup> he expected from the conqueror<sup>6</sup>. "If you make ' war like a king," answered the emperor, "send me back again: if you wage ' it like a merchant, sell me: if you make it like a butcher<sup>6</sup>, slaughter me." The Turkish General sent him back without a ransom<sup>9</sup>.

1) venait de remporter. 2) fait prisonnier. 8) fait, iseb p. 890, 2nd Ex., 4) tente, f. 5) traisement, m. 8) vainguaur. (7), to make or wage war = faire la guerre, 8) boucher. 9) rangon, fs

9.

An apothecary <sup>1</sup> having refused, to resign <sup>2</sup> his seat at the theatre to an officer's lady, the officer felt himself insulted and sent him a challenge <sup>3</sup>. The spothecory was punctual at the meeting <sup>4</sup>, but he observed, that not being accustomed to fire, he had to propose a way <sup>6</sup> of settling the dispute. 1) pharmacism. 2) coder as place, see p. 405, §. 18. - 8) cantel, m. 4) rendez wous. 5) un moyen de faur. He then drew from his pocket a pillbox<sup>6</sup>, and taking from it two pills, thus addressed his antagonist<sup>7</sup>: "As a man of honour, Sir, you certainly would wish to fight<sup>8</sup> me on<sup>9</sup> equal arms; here are two pills, one composed of the most deadly poison, the other perfectly harmless<sup>10</sup>; we are therefore on equal ground<sup>11</sup>, if we each swallow<sup>12</sup> one. You shall take<sup>13</sup> your choice, and I promise faithfully, to take that, which you leave." It is needless<sup>14</sup> to add, that the affair was settled by a hearty<sup>15</sup> laugh.

6) une botte de pillules. 7) adversaire. 8) to fight me = de vous battre avec moi. 9) à armes égales. 10) innocent. 11) sur le même pied. 12) avaler. 13) avoir le choix. 14) inutile. 15) un rire cordial.

#### 10.

The late <sup>1</sup> General Schott, so celebrated for his success <sup>2</sup> in gaming, was one evening playing very high with the Count d'Artois, and the Duke de Chartres, at 'Paris, when a petition was brought up from <sup>3</sup> the widow of a French officer, stating <sup>4</sup> her various misfortunes, and praying relief <sup>5</sup>. A plate was handed round <sup>6</sup>, and each put in <sup>7</sup> one, two, or three louisd'or; but when it was held <sup>8</sup> to the general, who was going to throw for a stake <sup>9</sup> of five hundred louisd'or, he said: "Stop a moment, if you please, Sir, here goes <sup>10</sup> for the widow!" The throw <sup>11</sup> was successful; and he instantly swept <sup>12</sup> the whole into the plate, and sent it down to her.

#### 11. Precision.

Many replies of Thales are quoted <sup>1</sup>, which give a high idea of his philosophy, and <sup>8</sup> show with what precision the sages of his time endeavoured <sup>8</sup> to solve the questions proposed <sup>4</sup> to them. "What is <sup>6</sup> the most beautiful of all things?" "The universe <sup>6</sup>, for it is the work of God." — "The most vast?" "Space <sup>7</sup>, for it contains everything." — "The strongest?" "Necessity, for it triumphe over <sup>8</sup> all." — "The most difficult?" "Self-knowledge <sup>9</sup>." — "The most easy?" "To give advice." — What is requisite <sup>10</sup> for leading <sup>11</sup> an irre-

1) citer, alléguer. 2) et qui. 3) chercher à résoudre. — 4) transl. which were prop. 5) qu'y a-t-il de. 6) l'univers, m. 7) l'expace, th. 8) de. 9) connaissance de soi-môme. 10) nécessaire. 11) mener. proachable life?" "To avoid <sup>12</sup> doing that which we blame in others." — "What is necessary for happiness?" "A healthy body, an easy <sup>13</sup> fortune, an enlightened mind," etc. 12) il faut éviter de. 13) de l'aisance, f.

### 12. The good minister.

The great calif<sup>1</sup> Haroun al Raschid began to suspect<sup>2</sup> that his vizier<sup>8</sup> Giafar was not deserving [of] the confidence which he had reposed 4 in him. The women of Aaron, the inhabitants of Bagdad, the courtiers 5, the dervises 6, censured the vizier with bitterness 7. The calif loved Giafar; he would not condemn him upon the clamours of the city and the court: he visited his empire; everywhere he saw the land well cultivated, the country smiling, the cottages opulent, the useful arts honoured, and youth full of gaiety. He visited his fortified cities and sea-ports<sup>8</sup>: he saw numerous ships, which threatened the coasts of Africa and of Asia; he saw warriors <sup>9</sup> disciplined and content; these warriors, the seamen and the peasants, exclaimed: "O God, pour 10 thy blessings upon the faithful, by giving<sup>11</sup> them a calif like Aaron, and a vizier like Giafar." The calif, affected <sup>12</sup> by these exclamations, enters a mosque 13, falls upon his knees, and cries out: "Great God, I return<sup>14</sup> thee thanks: thou hast given me a vizier of whom my courtiers speak ill, and my people speak well."

1) le calife. 2) soupconner. 8) visir, m. 4) placer; see p. 400, rule 1. — 5) courtisan, m. 6) dervis. 7) ambrement. 8) ports de mer. 9) les guerriers. 10) verser. 11) see p. 395, §. 7, 1. — 12) touché. 13) mosquée, f. 14) rendre grâces.

#### 18. Damon and Pythias.

Damon and Pythias lived in the time of Dionysius<sup>1</sup>, the tyrant of Sicily. Their mutual friendship was so strong, that they were ready to die for one another. One of the two, it is not known which — being condemned to death by the tyrant, obtained leave<sup>\*</sup> to go into his [own] country, to settle<sup>\*</sup> his affairs, on (a) condition that the other should consent to be imprisoned in his stead, and put<sup>\*</sup> to death for him, if he did not return before the day of execution. Every one, and especially the tyrant himself, was curious to see what should be the event (iame) of so strange an affair. When the

1) Denie. 2) la permission. 8) arranger. 4) mis à mort.

time was almost elapsed<sup>3</sup>, and he who was gone did not appear, the rashness of the other whose sanguine<sup>6</sup> friendship had put him upon running,<sup>7</sup> so seemingly desparate<sup>8</sup> a hazard<sup>9</sup>, was universally blamed. But he still declared that he had not the least [shadow of] doubt in his mind of his friend's fidelity. The event showed how<sup>9</sup> well he knew him. He came in <sup>10</sup> [due] time, and surrendered<sup>11</sup> himself to that fate <sup>18</sup> which <sup>13</sup> he did not wish to escape by leaving his friend [to] suffer it in his place. Such fidelity softened even the savage<sup>14</sup> heart of Dionysius himself. He pardoned<sup>15</sup> the condemned. He gave <sup>16</sup> the two friends to one another; and begged that they would take<sup>17</sup> himself in for a third.

5) éconlé. 6) vive. 7) l'avait fait courir un danger. 8) en apparence si inévitable. 9) que. 10) é. 11) se soumettre. 12) destinée, f. 13) à laquelle. 14) farouche. 15) See p. 342, §. 6. — 16) remit... dans les bras l'un de l'autre. 17) de l'admettre en tiers.

#### 14. The convert.

Divine mercy <sup>1</sup> had brought a vicious man into a society of sages, whose morals<sup>2</sup>; were holy and pure. He was affected by their virtues; it was not long<sup>a</sup> before he<sup>a</sup> imitated them and lost his old habits'4: he became just, sober, patient, laborious and benevolent<sup>5</sup>. His deeds nobody could deny, but they were attributed to odious motives. They 7 praised his good actions, without loving his person: they [would] always judge him by \* what he had been, not by what he had become. This injustice filled him with grief; he shed tears in the bosom<sup>9</sup> of an ancient sage, more just and more humane than the others. "O my son," said the old man to him, "thou art better than thy reputation; be thankful to God for it. Happy the man who can say: my enemies and my rivals consure<sup>10</sup> in me vices of which I am not guilty. What matters<sup>11</sup> it, if thou art good, that men persecute thee as wicked? Hast thou not, to comfort thee, the two best witnesses of thy actions, God and thy conscience?"

1) La miséricorde, 2) la morale, sing. 3) na pas tarder à with the Infinitive. 4) habitude, f. 5) bienveillant. 6) en leur donna des motifs. 7) on. 8) par ce qu. 9) au sein. 10) blâmer. 11) qu'importe.

15. Madame de M\*\*\* to her brother. We' can only be unhappy by our own fault; this shall always be my text, and my reply to your lamentations. Recollect<sup>2</sup>, my dear brother, the voyage to America, the misfortunes of our father, of<sup>8</sup> our infancy and your youth<sup>4</sup>; and you will bless Providence instead of shirmuring against fortune. Ten years ago, we were both very far below 4 our present station<sup>4</sup>; and our hopes were so feeble<sup>5</sup>, that we limited our wishes to an income of three thousand livres . At present we have four times that sum<sup>7</sup>, and our desires are not yet satisfied! we enjoy the happy mediocrity which you have so often extolled 8; let us be content. If possessions<sup>9</sup> come to us, let us receive them from the hand of God, but let not our views be 10 too extravagant 11. We have every thing necessary 12 and comfortable 13; all the rest is covetousness <sup>14</sup>; all these desires of greatness spring from <sup>15</sup> a restless heart. Your debts are all paid, and you may live elegantly 16, without contracting more 17. What have you to desire? Must 18 schemes 19 of wealth and ambition occasion 20. the loss of your repose and your health? Read the life of St. Louis; you will see how unequal<sup>21</sup> the greatness of this world is to the desires of the human heart; God only can satisfy them<sup>22</sup>. I repeat it, you are only unhappy by your own fault. Your uneasiness<sup>23</sup> destroys your health, which you ought to preserve, if it were<sup>24</sup> only because I love you. Watch<sup>25</sup> your temper<sup>26</sup>: if you can render it less splenetic<sup>27</sup> and less gloomy 28, you will have gained a great advantage 29. This is not the work of reflection only; exercise, amusement, and a regular life are necessary for the purpose <sup>30</sup>. You cannot think well whilst <sup>31</sup> your health is affected <sup>32</sup>; when the body is debilitated,<sup>33</sup>, the mind is without vigour. Adieu! write to me more frequently, and in a style less gloomy.

•

1) On. 2) songer à. 3) put: and those of our, etc. 4) très loin du point où nous sommes aujourd'hui. 5) si peu de chose. — 6) à un revenu de trois mille livres de rente. 7) that sum, en ... quatre fois autant. 8) vanter si fort. 9) des biens, 10) — let us pot have views. 11) trop vastes, 12) le nécessaire. 13) le commode. 14) cupidité. 15) spring from, partir du vide de. 16) délicieusement. 17) sans en faire de nouvelles. 18) must, faut-il que. 19) projet. 20) to occasion the loss of = coûter, subj. 21) unequal, au-dessous de. 22) le rassaier. 23) inguiétude, pl. 24) if it were only, quand ce ne serest que. 26) veiller sur. 26) humeur, f. 27) bilicuo. 28) sombre, mornei. 29) ee seres un grand point de gamé, 80) il y faut de l. 31) tant que., 32), se porter, mal. 33) dans l'abattement.

 $\frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}$ 

### Materials for conversation

Qu'aves-vous là? What have you there? Jai mon crayon. I have my pencil. Aves-vous apporté vos cahiere? hooks? Non. je les ai oubliés. Qu'avez-vous acheté! What have you bought? Fai acheté une paire de gante. Votre ami est-il arrivé? Is your friend arrived? Il est arrivé ce matin. He arrived this morning. Aves-vous envis de jouer? Have you a mind to play? J'en ai bien envie, mais je n'en asi pas le temps. time. Ai-je raison ou tors? Am I right or wrong? Vous avez raison. You are right. What have you to do? Qu'aves vous à faire? Je n'ai rion à faire. I have nothing to do. Jai mon exercice à faire. Et votre frère qu'a-t-il à faire? Il a une lettre à écrire. He has a letter to write. Avez-vous trouvé votre gram-Have you found your grammar? maire? I have. Je l'ai trouvée. Where are my boots? Où sont mes bottes ? Elles sont chez le bottier.

Que voulez-vous acheter? Je veux acheter un chapeau. Votre mère a-t-elle acheté quelque chose? Elle a acheté du thé. Combien coûte la livre ? La livre coûte cinq france. Ce n'est pas cher. Avez-vous vendu votre cheval? Je ne l'ai pas encore vendu. Ne le vendrez-vous pas!

#### 1.

Have you brought your copy-No Sir, I have forgotten them. I have bought a pair of gloves. I have a mind, but I have no I have to do my exercise. And what has your brother to do?

They are at the shoemaker's. 2.

What do you wish to buy? I will buy a hat. Has your mother bought anything? She has bought some tea. How much a pound? Five france a pound. That is not dear. Have you sold your horse? I have not yet sold it. Will you not sell it?

Je croyais que vous vouliez le I thought you would sell it. vendre. Il me faudra le vendre. I shall be obliged to sell it. Pourquoi vous faudra-t-il le Why will you be obliged to sell it? vendre ? Parce que j'ai besoin d'argent. Because I am in want of money Combien d'argent vous faut-il? How much money do you want? Il me faut six cents francs. I want six hundred francs. Avez-vous quelque chose à Have you anything to eat? manger ! Qu'aimeries - vous à manger ! What would you like to eat? Apportez-moi du pain et du . Bring me some bread and butter. beurre. Voulez-vous boire un verre de Would you drink a glass of wine? vin ? Here is also fresh water. Voici aussi de l'eau fraîche. Take this letter to the post-Portez cette lettre à la poste. office. 3. To whom are you speaking? A qui parlez-vous? Je parle au domestique. I speak to the servant. Que demandez-vous? .What do ask for? Que désirez-vous ! What do you wish for? I ask for nothing. Je ne demande rien. I do not want anything. Je n'ai besoin de rien. Have the kindness. Ayez la complaisance. Vous m'obligeriez beaucoup. You would greatly oblige me. You are very kind, Sir. Vous átes bien bon. What are you looking for? Que cherchez-vous là? I am looking for my cap. Je cherche ma casquette. What are you going to do? Que voulez-vous faire? What are you doing there. Que faites-vous là? I am learning my lesson. Japprends ma lecon. Do you know if he will come? Savez-vous s'il viendra? Je ne le sais pas. I do not know. I know nothing about it. Je n'en sais rien. Qui vous l'a dit! Who told you? Connaissez-vous cet homme ! Do you know that man? I know him very well. Je le connais très bien. I know him by sight. Je le connais de vue. I do not know him. Je ne le connais pas. Je ne l'ai jamais vu. I have never seen him.

Comment appelez-vous cela! Croyes-vous cela? Oui, je le crois. Ne le croyez pas. C'est la vérité. Ceet vrai. Qu'y a-t-il à faire! Que vous en semble! Vous plaisantez. Etes-vous content de lui? Etes-vous satisfait! Nous en sommes contents. Sur manparole. Je suis votre serviteur. Quel plaisir! Ten suis bien aise. J'en suis bien fâché. Il est fâché contre vous. Je m'ennuie.

Où allez-vous?'' Je vais à Windsor. Nous allons au spectacle. Ny allez pas. Pourquoi pas! La pièce n'est pas bonne. Où va la cuisinière? Elle va au marché. D'où venez-vous? Je viens de l'école. Nous venons du concert. Alles-vous chez vous? Oui, je vais chez moi. Nalles pas si vite. Ne courez pas tant. Je vais au-devant de mon ami. Reposez-vous un peu. Revenez bientôt. Passez votre chemin. Va-t-en! Allez-vous-en!

.

What do you call this? Do you believe that? Yes, I believe it. Do not believe it. It is the trath. It is true. What is to be done? What are you thinking of it? You joke. Are you contented with him? -Are you satisfied? We are contented with it. Upon my word. I am your servant. What pleasure! I am very glad of it. I am very sorry for it. He is angry with you. I am weary.

Б.

Where are you going? I am going to Windsor. We are going to the play. Do not go there. Why not? The play is not good. Where is the cook going? She is going to the market. Where do you come from? I come from school. We come from the concert. Are you going home? Yes, I am going home. Do not go so fast. Do not run so fast. I go to meet my friend. Take a little rest. Come back soon. Go your way. Go away! Be off!

···· ··· ··· ··· Come in! Entres / . . . Bon jour, bon soir, Mondieur. Good day, Sir, good evening. Assever-vous. . . . Take a seat. Prenez place. Comment vous portes-vous? How do you do? "'Very welt, I thank you. Très bien je vous remercie. It y a bien longtamps que je 'It is a long while since I have ne vous ai vu. . . . seen you. . •• Et vous-même! And you? How are you? Comment cola va-t-il! Not very well Cela me na par tica bien. · . 11 Pretty well. Tolerably well. Assez bien. Passablement... Tell me, if you please. Dites-moi, s'il vous plaît. Donnez-moi ..., Prêles lui Give me ... Lend him ... Faites-moi le plaisir. Do me the favour. Je vous en pris. I entreat you. Laissez-moi tranquille. Let me alone. Je vous remercie. I thank you. Very much obliged to yeu. Bion obligé. Mr. N. cet-il chez lui! Is Mr. N. at home? Yes Sir, he is at home. Oui, Monsieur, il est chez lui. No Sir, he is gone out. Non, Monsieur, il est sorti. Quand rentrera-t-il When will he come home? Il sera rentré à six heures. He will be in at six o'clock. 7. Levez-vous, mes enfants! Get up, children! Il faut vous lever. You must get up. Il est temps de vous lever. It is time to get up. A quelle heure vous levez-vous? At what o'clock do you get up? Je me lève de bonne heure. I get up early. Qu'appelez-vous de bonne heure? What do you call early? Entre sept et huit heures. Between seven and eight. Il faut vous lever de meilleure You ought to get up earlier. heure. Put on your clothes. Mettez vos habits. Etes-vous habillés! Are you dressed? Déshabillez - vous. Undress. Otez vos souliers et vos bas. Take off your shoes & stockings.

Avez-vous besoin d'un tire-bottes? Voilà tout ce qu'il vous faut.

Otto, French Conv.-Grammar. II.

28

Do you want a boot-jack?

There is all you want.

Put on your slippers. Mettez vos pantouffles. Are you sleepy? Avez-vous sommeil? Je m'endormirai tout de suite. I shall fall asleep directly. Alles vous coucher maintenant. Go to bed now. 1 11 1 Jai veillé toute la mit. I have been awake all night Good night; sleep well. Bonne nuit; dormes bien. Al oublies - pas d'éteindre la Do not forget to extinguish the candle. chandelle (la bougis). . . Quelle houre 'est-il! What o'clock is it? Il est tard, il est well houres. 'It is later it it nine o'clock. When will you go out? Quand sortires vous ? .• I shall go out at ten. Je sortirai à die heures. At half past ten. A dia heures et demie. м, -At a quarter to seven. A sept heures moins un quart. Avant cinq heures et un quart. Before a quarter past five. A sept heures précises. 'At seven o'clock precisely. A midi. A minuit. At twelve o'clock. At midnight. ' Hier matin. Hier au soir. Yesterday morning. Last night. Aujourd'hui ou demain. To-day or to-morrow. Avant - hier. The day before yesterday. Après - demain. The day after to-morrow. Il y a huit jours. A week ago. Il y a quinze jours. A fortnight ago. Dans (en) six semaines. In six weeks. Il y a quelques jours. Some days ago. A la fin du mois prochain. At the end of the next month: From one day to another. D'un jour à l'autre. S 1. 1 9. How is the weather to-day? Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui! Il fait beau (mauvais) temps. It is fine (bad) weather. It is very warm (cold). Il fait très chaud (froid). Il pleut. Il pleut à verse. It rains. It rains hard. It is windy. Il fait du vent. Avez-vous chaud! Are you warm? Avez-vous froid? Are you cold? Nous aurons de l'orage. We shall have a thunder-storm. Il tonne. Il fait des éclairs. It thunders. It lightens. Avez-vous entendu tonner? Did you hear the thunder. Quel bel arc-en-oiel! What a beautiful rain-bow!

٢ Il gèle. It freezes. Il a gelé cette snuit. It has frozen last night. Ibginit gitteeant ..... It is slippery. Il neige; il tomboude ba neiger : It snows. Il fait du soleilute an est The sun shines. he soleil se couche. The sun sets. Il fait clair de lune. The moon shines. Le soleil se leve magnifiquement. The sun rises beautifully. 1. .... 5. A. 10. Gallicismes. French Idioms. Je wie Anglaie. I am an Englishman. It set Allemend. 'He is a German. Elle est Francaise. She is a Frenchlady. Il est Français de nution. He is a Frenchman by birth. Elle a plus de vingt ans. She is above twenty. Comment cela se peut-il? How can that be? Qu'avez - vous ? What is the matter with you? JA : MAN' TIAN. Nothing is the matter with me. J'ai mal à la tête. I have a head-ache. I have a sore finger. Jai mal au deiet. Avez-vous de fargent eur vous! 'Have you any money about you? Vous avez bonne mine. You look very well. Π fait nuit. "It is night. П fait grand jour. It is broad day-light. How are you pleased here? .. Comment vous plaisez-vous ici? (I am very much pleased with Ce cheval me plast beaucoup. this horse. A .... I like this horse very much. Il est l'heure du diner. It is time for dinner. Avez-vous mis le couvert? Have you laid the cloth? Le couvert est mis. The cloth is laid. Otez le convert (desservez). Take away the things. Where did we stop? Où en sommes-nous restés? I have heard from him. J'ai reçu de ses nouvelles. Il vient d'arriver. He has just arrived. 11. \* That will do you good. Cela vous fera du bien. I have broken may leg. Je me suis cassé la jambe. I had nearly fallen. J'ai manqué de tomber. · Somebody asks for you. Quelqu'un vous demande. 28\*

- Je vous attends. Attendez-moi un peu. Prenez garde. Avez-vous changé d'opinion? Avez-vous fini? Jai fini de dîner. Charles s'est fait soldat. Je suis enrhumé. J'ai gagné un rhume. Cela va sans dire.

Je me suis fait arracher une dent. Aurait-il pu faire autrement? J'en doute. fortune. Vous n'en viendres jamais à bout. Dites-moi ce qu'il y a. Mettez-vous à votre aise. Faites ce que vous voudres.

Quoi qu'il en soit.

Aimez-vous le café? Je préfère le thé? Aves-vous soif? Jai faim et soif. Je meurs de fain. Je m'en doutais. Je m'en rapporte à vous. En tous cas. Combien vaut : l'aune ? Envoyez le chercher. Elle était sur le point de ... Vous pouvez aller. seul. De part et d'autre. Savez-vous monter à cheval? Je sais nager. Dix heures sont sonnées. Il a plus qu'il ne lui fout. Je suis à votre service.

I am waiting for you. Wait a moment for me. Look about you. Have you changed your mind? Have you done? I have done dinner. Charles has become a soldies. I have caught a cold. That is understood (a matter of course). . . I have had a tooth extracted. Could he have done otherwise? I doubt it. Il a perdu la moitié de ca He has lost one half of his fortune. You will never be able to do it. Tell me what is the matter. Take your ease. Do as you wish., Be that as it may.

. .

### 12.

Do you like coffee? · I prefer tea. Are you thirsty? I am hungry and thirsty. I am almost starved. I thought so. I refer to you. At any rate. How much a, yard? Send for him. ..... She was going to .... You may go by yourself. On both sides. Can you ride? I can swim. It has struck ten. He has more than he wants. I am at your service.

## 13. Some French Proverbs.

.

Après la pluie le beau temps. Contentement passe richetste. C'est là où git le lièvre. Charité bien ordonnée commence - par soi-méme.	After the storm comes a calm. Content goes before wealth. That is the point. Charity begins at home.
Chien qui aboie ne mord pas. Faire d'une pierre deux coups, Il faut battre le for quand il est chaud.	Barking dogs seldom bite. To kill two birds with one stone. Strike the iron while it is hot.
Il n'y a point de feu sans , fuméo. Il vaut mieux, tard que famais. Nécessité n'a point de lois.	Where the smoke is, there is the fire. Better late than never. Necessity has no law.
Paris n'a pas été fait dans un jour. Mauvaise herbe croît toujours. L'homme propose et Dieu dis- pose.	Rome was not built in a day. Ill weeds grow apace. Man proposes and God disposes.
Pauvreté n'est pas vice. Il n'y a point de roses sans épines. L'occasion fait le larron.	Poverty is no disgrace. No rose without a thorn. Opportunity makes the thief.
L'aisiveté est la mère de tous les pices. Le bien mal acquis ne profite jamais. Mal gagné, mal dépensé.	Idleness is the root of all evil. Ill gotten goods never prosper.
Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or. L'exercice fait le maître.	All is not gold that glitters. Practise makes perfect. Assiduity makes all things easy.
On n'a rien sans poine. Un malheur ne vieni jamais seul. La fin couronne l'œuore.	No pain, no profit. Misfortunes never come singly. All's well that ends well.
Formall's an an sourced data of the state of the second state o	

## \* 基本公司委任 (4)公司

## Conversations familières.

## 1. La renconire.

Bonjour, mon ami. Monsieur, je vous salue. — Comment vous portez-vous? Très bien, je vous remercie; et vous? Tout doucement, comme à l'ordinaire. — D'ou venezvous donc? Je viens de la Bourse. — Et où allez-vous? Je vais à la Banque. — Je vous rencontre à propos, j'allais chez vous. Pour quelle affaire? — Je voulais vous demander des nouvelles. Des nouvelles! de qui donc? De votre oncle. — Lequel? vous savez j'en ar deux. Celui qui est actuelle! ment à Paris. — J'en attends ce soir; faites-moi le plaisir de passer chez moi demain matin, je vous ferai voir ce que j'aurai reçu. — Je vous remercie, je n'y manquerai pas. Bans adieu.

"2. La visite. A Marshare and Marshare

and the state of the second second second second second second second second second second second second second

< 33 (\* - )

1.1

Madame, je vous souhaite le bonjour. -- Que je suis bien aise de cette visite! Asseyez-vous, je vous prie. I y a bien longtemps que je n'ai eu le plaisir de vous voir; comment vous êtes-vous porté? - Assez bien; et vousmême? - A mon ordinaire, passablement. '- 'Je me suis présenté hier pour avoir l'honneur de vous saluer; vous veniez de sortir. --- Je regrette beaucoup de n'avoir pas été chez moi. Faites-moi le plaisir de diner avec nous. - Vous avez bien de la bonté; je ne puis m'arrêter plus longtemps, j'ai promis de me rendre à l'hôtel à cinq heures. -- Quoi, vous voulez déjà partir ! Restez encore un' moment.' -- ' C'est 'à regret que je vous quitte si tôt, je resterai plus longtemps une autre foia. - Quand -aurons - nous le 'plaisir' de vous revoir? — S'il est possible, je reviendrai demain. — Adieu, portez - vous bien. Au plaisir. portez-vous bien. Au plaisir, and the second second second second second second second second second second second second second second second

3. Theure.

· · · · · ·

Quelle heure est-il? Il est neuf heures ou neuf heures cinq. — Vous vous trompez, mon ami, il est neuf heures et un quart. — C'est vous qui avez tort, voyez la pendule. — Mon frère croit qu'il n'est pas encore neuf heures, qu'il est neuf heures moins un quart. — Écoutez! voilà l'heure qui sonne: un, deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf. Neuf heures! Partons, vite, à l'école! - A quelle heure arrivera le maître de français? A onze heures moins dix, et il restera jusqu'à midi et demi. Nous préparerons ensuite nos leçons d'allemand, et nous serons libres à deux heures et demie ou à trois heures au plus tard. 1.11.11 . . .

## 4. L'étude du français.

On m'a dit que vous apprenez le français. - Oui, je l'étudie depuis six mois. - Avez-vous trouvé cette étude difficile? je sais que vous êtes infatigable, que vous ne vous découragez jamais. - Il est vrai, ayant surmonté les principales difficultés, je commence à recueillir le fruit de mes travaux. Je vous prie de croire que cela n'a pas été sans peine; ce obsos de règles, d'exceptions, m'a si souvent embrouillé la cervelle que je me suis vu plusieurs fois à la veille de renoncer à mes projets. Il y a tant d'idiotismes, tant de tournures bizarnes que l'usage seul autorise. ana bien étonné que vous disiez cela. Cela me fait croire que vous ne vous êtes nes servi d'un bon livre. Il y a de nouvelles grammaines qui simplifient beaucoup les règles et facilitent par-là l'étude du français. - Si vous venez chez moj dans la soirée, je vous ferai voir les ouvrages dont it faut vous servir. --- Ce soir? Oui, ce soir.

A propos, quelle différence y a-t-il entre soir et soirée, manis et manie, jour et journée, après-midi et après dénée? ---Ces mots sont synonymes. /Le jour marque une époque, sans égard à la durée; la journée est une durée déterminée et divisible. Il en est de même des mots on et année, matin et matinée, soir et soirée, etc. Rémarquez les examples sui-Rapite: Je viendrai un jour; la journée est longue pour les gene oisifs. Sa terre lui apporte dis mills france par an; cotte felipse aura lieu, dans le courant de l'année: [- Je vous remercie de cette explication. 11 1. 1 1

For schulding a Competence of School and 1. . . . . 5.1 and the second s 11 The second second second second second second second second second second second second second second second se 1.4411 3.10 1 go a good and man and the contract of the contract

matter mathematical control of the state of the second of the

Dialogue sur l'Histoire d'Angleterre.

D. Combien y a-t-il eu de rois et de reines en Angleterre depuis Guillaume le Conquérant?

R. Il y a eu trente-et-un rois, et cinq reines.

D. Nommez-les dans l'ordre qu'ils ont régné, mettez en titre le nom de chaque famille, et après chaque roi, l'époque où il a commence à régner.

### Rois d'Angleterre. 8 Normands. Edouard V 1488 Guillaume I. le Cona. 1066 **Richard III** 1488 Guillanme II. le Roux 1087.57 5 Tudors. Henri I. 1100 .... Henri VII. 1486 Henri VIII 1 1509 Maison de Blois. 1547 · ·· · · Edouard VF · • • • Etienne -1185 Marie. 1558 8 Plantagenete. - Elizabeth 1558 Henri II. 1154 6 Stuarts. Richard I. Cour de Lion 1189 Jacques I. 1603 Jean sang terre . . . 1199 Charles I. 1625 Henri III 1216 Charles' II. 1660 Edquard I. 1272····Jacques IL 14 H. 1685 Edouard II. 1307 Guilleume III et Marie 1688 1327 Edouard III 1709 Anne. ٦. · . Richard II. 1877 \ 6 Brunnoicks. 1.00 ~ 0 8 Langastres. .... 'George' I. 1.11 1714 Henri IV. Herrich and A. 1400/ George II. 1727 Henri V ∴ • **1418** • ∴ George III 1700 Henri VI 1422. George IV 1820 3 Yorks. Gaillaume IV ʻ**T880** Victoire ..... , , , 1 TY897 Edouard IV 1461

D. Quels droits avaient à la couronne les premiers rois de chaque famille?

Guillaume, Duc de Normandie, occupa l'Angleterre à titre d'héritier d'Edouard le Confesseur, et prit celui de Conquérant.

Etienne de Blois s'empara du trône dans l'absence de Mathilde, fille de Henri Premier, et héritière légitime.

-

Henri Second, fils de Mathide, menta sur le trone à la mort d'Etienne, qui, pour mettre fin à la guerre civile, s'était engagé par un traité à lui laisser la couronne au préjudice de ses propres enfants.

Henri Quatre fut élevé sur le trône au préjudice d'Edmond Mortimer, ce qui occasionna de funestes divisions entre les maisons d'York et de Lancastre.

Edmond Quatre, de la maison d'York, qui se croyait héritier de la couronne, réussit à détroner Henri Six après une guerre civile.

Henri Sept, de la famille des Tudors, ávait du côté de sa mère tous les droits de la famille de Lancastre à la couronne, et du côté de sa femme tous ceux de la maison d'York.

Jacques Premier, roi d'Ecosse, était le plus proché parent d'Elizabeth, qui l'avait nommé pour son successeur dans son testament.

George Premier était sorti de la maison des Stuarts par sa mère, petite fille de Jacques Premier; la Reine Anne l'avait nommé son successeur.

D. Combien de rois ont eu une mort tragique?

R. Les six suivants: Guillaume le Roux, Richard Premier, Edouard Second, Richard Second, Edouard Cinq, et Charles Premier.

1. Guillaume le Roux, étant à la chasse, fut tué d'un coun de flèche tiré sans dessein par un de ses domestiqués. 2: Richard Premier, surnommé Cour de Lion, voulant obliger un Seigneur Limousin à lui rendre un trésor du'il quait trouvé. a'approcha du château de ce gentilhomme pour l'attaquer; il recut un coup de flèche dont il mourut. 3. Edouand Second fut déposé par le parlement, et enformé au château de Berkley où il fut cruellement assassiné. 4. Richard Second fut deposé par le parlement, et enferme dans le château de Pontefract où il fut inhumainement assassiné par l'ordre de Henri Quatre, chef des mécontents, qui fut elu à sa place. 5. Edouard Omy, et som frere le Duc d'York, furent enformée d'la Tour, st rensuite étouffés dans leur lit par l'endre du Duc/de Glocastér, qui prit de nom de Richard Trois quand il-fut monté sur le trône : 6: Charles Premier fut décapité par l'ordre du siarlement, le: 80 Janvier, 1649 ... son : file ... Charles: Second ... né monte sur le trône qu'en: 1660; onse ains après la morti de son père. and the second second

D.: L'Angleterre a -4-elle sui bien des guerres étrangères a soutenir? R. Oui, déjà du temps des rois Saxons, les Danois y firent des descentes fréquentes pendant plus de deux ceuts ans. Il y a en beaucoup de guerres entre l'Angleterre et la France depuis Guillaume le Conquérant, mais particulièrement depuis la Reine Anne; il y a eu aussi des guerres contre l'Espagne, contre la Hollande, et contre l'Amérique.

D. Y a-t-il eu plusieurs guerres civiles en Angleterre ?

R. Oui, et nous pouvons compter entre autres les quatre suivantes comme les plus mémorables. La première commença en 1135, quand Etienne de Blois monta sur le trône au préjudice de Mathilde, fille unique et légitime héritière de Henri Premier. La seconde arriva sous le règne de Richard Second, et finit par le déposer. La troisième fut suscitée par la maison d'York, et finit par mettre Edouard Quatre sur le trône à la place de Henri Six, qui fut déposé. La quatrième fut celle du parlement contre Charles Premier; ce prince malheureux fut vaincu et décapité.

D. Depuis quand les rois d'Angleterre prennent-ils le titre de rois de France?

A. Depuis Edouard Trois, qui avait épousé la sœur de Charles Quatre, qui mourut sans enfants: il était exclu de la couronne par la loi Salique; copendant il prit le tifre de roi de Françe, que ses successeurs ont conservé jusqu'en 1800,

D. Y a-t-il eu des rois d'Angleterre qui aient été couronnée rois de France?

R. Oui: Hearl Six encore enfant fut couronné roi de France dans l'église de Notre-Dame de Paris, l'an 1431.

R. Son père avait épousé Catherine, fille de Charles Six, Roi de France, qui l'avait reconnu pour héritier de sa couronne, au préjudice du Dauphin.

D. Y a-t-il eu plusieurs pestes en Angleterre?

R. Oui, et de très cruelles; il y eut une peste désastreuse en 1094, une seconde en 1349, une troisième en 1407, une quatrième en 1603, et la dernière en 1665.

D. Y a-t-il eu des incendies considérables à Londres?

R. Oui, particulièrement deux le premier arriva en 1132, et brûla une très grande partie de Londres; le second en 1666, il y eut quatre-vingt-neuf églises et plus de treize mille maisons brûlées.

D. Nommez-moi deux ou trois époques considérables de l'histoire d'Angleterre At the first

R. Les trois événements les plus intéressants sont : 1. La conquête de l'Angleterre par Guillaume, Duc de Normandie, en 1066. 2. La réforme que Luther commença en 1517. 3. La révolution que Cromwell et le parlement opérérent en Angleterre, et dans laquelle Charles Premier fut décapité.

D. En quoi consiste l'autorité des rois d'Angleterre?

R. Ils ont le pouvoir de faire la paix et la guerre; ils disposent des armées de terre et de mer; ils peuvent seuls convoquer, proroger, ou casser le parlement; les décrets passede dans les deux chambres n'ont pas force de loi sans leur consentement formel: fis donnent les places de l'état, disposent des charges de la magistrature, et nomment à tous les évêchés.

Sec. Sec. Sec. 4

11

·· · ·

.......

- N - 1

 $E \leq A$ 

1.1.1.1.1

. . 1

!..

1. 1. 1. 1.

1 8

. . . . .

· . ........

......

erei que la

. 7×

Met in the of the

Contraction and second second second

B. RILL BALL

INDEX.

۸.

A, prep. p. 153 & 323; — serves to form the dative p. 23, 6. Contracted with le and les into au and quux p. 23, 7; special use of à p. 250; à before an Infinitive p. 383; Verbs with à or de p. 387; à peine p. 357 and p. 385, §. 9.

Accents p. 4, §. 3 & 217.

Accusative after verbs p. 341. Acheter p. 85.

Active verbs p. 77, §. 1, 8).

- Adjective p. 65; its connord p. 67 D & 269; its feminine p. 65 A; its comparison p. 74; place of adjectives p. 70, 71 & 273; government of adjectives p. 274; adjectives of dimension p. 276; verbal adjectives p. 392; adj. with the Infinit. and de p. 380; — with  $\dot{\alpha}$  p. 384.
- Adjectives used as adverbs p. 312. Adverb, its formation p. 141; its comparison p. 142; — of place p. 145; — of time p. 145 & 318; its place with the verb p. 146
- & 314; of quantity p. 148; they require de p. 32, b).
- Afin de with the Inf. p. 381, 6; — que with the Subj. p. 371.
- Aller p. 194 & 377.
- Any, how to express it p. 28.
- S'aperçevoir p. 343.
- Apostrophe p. 3.

Apposition p. 240.

Apprendre p. 342; — with an Inf. and à p. 385.

1.1

Après with an Inf. p. 389,

Article, the definite p. 15, 1), 2, 2) and p. 236. Omission of the def. art. p. 240 & 242; the in; definite p. 16, 8); omitted p. 240; its declension p. 23; the gartitive - p. 28, 31 & 242; repetition of the -s p. 239.

Appeler, how conjugated p. 85. Assister qn. and à qn. p. 345. At, how to render it p. 829.

- Aucum, a p. 800. Aucum (15) Aussifet que with the Past apterior p. 357.
  - Autre, autrui p. 301.
  - Auxiliary verbs: avoir p. 38; Ere p. 41.
  - Avant devant p. 155 & 325.
- Avant de before the Inf. p 381, 6; — que with the Subj. p. 371 and Note.
- Avoir and fire with an Inf. p.386, 5; — in Idioms p. 409.

### B.

- Battre, its conjug. p. 96.
- Beaucoup de p. 32 & 148.
- Bien du, de la, des p. 148.
- Bien que, conj. p. 371.
- Both p. 303.
- By, prep. how to render it p. 329; — with the Part. pres. (Gerund) p. 396.

· :0,

- Capable de p. 380.
- Cases p. 21.
- Cardinal numbers p. 54; used in place of ordinal p. 59, 2) & 3).
- Ge, cst, ces p. 50; ce; pron. p. 108 and 109.
- Colui, celui-ci, celui-là p. 108.
- Cent, cents p. 55, 1.
- Cent moi, o'est vous etc. p. 100, 2.
- Ce qui, ce que p. 116, § 8
- Chacun p. 119. 299; chaque p. 62.
- Chiez; prep. p. 154 & 326.
- Ciel, cieux p. 19 & 232.
- Commencer de or à p. 387; par p. 396, Note.
- Comparative degree of adjectives p. 74 & 75; of adverbs p. 142.
- Compter with the Inf. p. 377, §. 4.
- Obacord of adjectives p. 269.
- Conditional p. 360.
- Conjugation, first p. 79; second p 89; third p. 94.
- Conjunctive personal pronouns p. 103 & 279.
- Conjunctions, simple p. 159; com-
- pound p. 163; with the Subj.
- Consentir à p. 385. [p. 371.
- Content de p. 274, §. 2 and 380, 2.
- Continuer de or à p. 887.
- il convient p. 368, §. 7.
- Correlative, pron. (celui qui) p. 294.
- Could have, how to render it, p. 561, §. 30.
- Countries, their names p. 255.
- Couvrir de p. 344.
- Craindre with the Subj. p. 367.
- de crainte que, conj. p. 371.
- Oroire, diff. governments p. 345, §. 8; — followed by an Inf. p. 377, §. 4.

## D.

- Dans, differs from on p. 155 & 324. Dative case p. 23; with adj. p. 275; with verbs p. 342.
- De, prep. p. 26 & 155; de le contracted into, du eto. p. 22, 3.

- De before adject. in the partitive sense p. 29; — with passive vects p. 124, Remark; special use of de p. 246; — before Inf. p. 379, §. 6; — or à before Inf. p. 387.
- De ce que with the Ind. p. 367, Note 2.
- Déclarer with an Inf. p. 377, §. 4. Declension p. 21.
- Defective verbs p. 198.
- Degrees of comparison p. 74 & 75.-
- se défier de p. 344.
- Demander p. 345; followed by the Subj. p. 365, §. 4.
- Demonstrative adjectives p. 50.
- Demonstrative pronouns p. 108.
- Dernier, Subj. after it p. 370, §. 10.
- *Désirer* p. 365.
- Devant, avant p. 325.
- Diaeresis, when used p. 4, 2.
- Difficile, il est -, p. 384; with the Subj. p. 368.
- Diqne de p. 274, §. 2.
- Dimension, adj. of -, p. 276.
- Disjunctive personal pronouns p. 99 & 208.
- Dont, Genitive of the relative pronoun p. 115, §. 4 and p. 293.
- Douter with the Subj. p. 367 & 321.
- Dû, Part. of devoir, invariable p. 402, §. 7.

## E.

- E accented p. 4 & 5.
- Echapper à and de p. 345.
- S'efforcer de or à p. 387.
- Empêcher p. 367 & 321.
- Emprunter p. 346, §. 9.
- En, prep. p. 153, 155 & 324.
- a supplying pronoun p. 109, 2 and 283; its place in the verb s'en aller p. 194.
- (in the year) p. 55, 4.
- with the Part. pres. (Gerund) p. 395.
- Enseigner p. 342.
- Entendre p. 347, §. 11.
- Entre, prep. p. 325.

Envers, vort, prop. p. 156 & \$26. Bepérer p. 85, 877 & 376, Note 1. Bet-ce que, when used p. 81 & 160. selowner with the Subj. p. 367. Enc, its conjugation p. 41;

with reflected verbs p. 128. *Etriger* (Subj.) p. 865; §. 4.

Faire p. 347 & 378, Note 2; idioms with faire p. 409. Fait, Part. past, invariable p. 402.

il fait (chaud), impers. p. 136.

Falloir, conj. p. 137, Subj. p. 368.

il faut from falloir p. 137, 368.

il faut from faillir, to want, p.138, 3.

Féliciter qu. dç qch. p. 344.

Feminine of adjectives p. 65, A.

Finir par p. 396, Note.

Fleurir p, 91.

Future tenses p. 359.

Genitive case p. 22; — of the partitive article p. 31, 2; after adjectives p. 274; - after vorbs p. 343.

Gender of subst. p. 223.

Government of adjectives p. 274; - of verbs p. 340.

H silent p. 8; aspirate p. 4. Habile à p. 275, §. 5 and p. 884.

*Hair* p. 91.

Hériter p. 847, 6. Hésiter p. 385.

Homonymous words p. 221.

- Hors, prep. p. 326.
- Hyphen, when used p. 9 & 216.

Il y a, impers. p. 196; prep. == igo p. 154; Subj. after it p. 368. Imparfait p. 352. Impersonal verbs p. 135; Subi.

Importe, il, p. 135 & 368.

after them p. 868.

- Indefinite art. p. 16, 3 and p. 240. - numerals pi/6231-preserves p. 119. 299-309.
- Infinitive used subst. p. 376; ....
- without a prep. p. 377; preeeded by de p. 379-882;  $\rightarrow$ with à p. 383-386: 44 with de or, a p. 387; - with other prepositions p. 389.
- Infinitive active instead of passiva p. 378, Note 2.
- Interjections p. 168.
- Interrogative form of vorbs p. 44, 81 & 130; - prenesas p. 111 and 287.
- Irregular verbs p. 170; an alphabetical list of them p. 200.

### T

Jeter, how conjugated p. 85. Jouer p. 345, 9; in idioms p. 410. *Jouir* p. 344.

Jusqu'à ce que, conj. with the Subj. p. 371.

L mouillé (liquid) p. 112 & 113.

Laissé, Part. past invariable p. 402, .8. 7.

Le, la, les, article, p. 15, 1; supplying pronouns p. 285.

Lequel, interrogative pronotin p. 111 & 288; relative pronoun p. 115, §. 5-6 and p. 293; when preferred to qui p. 116, §.7 and p. 293.

Leur, lui, their place p. 105, 8. Liquid sounds p. 12.

Lui-méme p. 281, §. 7.

L'un l'autre etc. p. 119, 803 & 804.

Madame, Mademoiselle p. 53, 4. Manger, its orthography p. 86. de manière que p. 871, Note. Manquer p. 846, 10 and p. 387. Mener, how to accent it p. 85, 2. se mettre à p. 385.

Mille, when spelled mil p. 56, 4.

Monsieur, Messihurs p. 53, 4. Moins with the comparative p. 75, 2; à — que, conj. p. 371. Most 💳 la plupart p. 300, §. 7.

- Nasal sounds p. 11 & 12.
- Ne, when used with aucua, per-
- sonne etc. p. 120, 3 and p. 149. Ne after craindre, douter ste
- p. 320, §. 3-6. Ne - plus and pas - plus p. 317.
- Ne que for only p. 150.
- Negation p. 149; Syntax of -s .p. 316-321; ne used in French and not in English p. 320.
- Negative form of verbs p. 44, 45, 81 & 131.
- Neuter verbs p. 125.
- Nier p. 320 & 321; followed by an Iuf. p. 377, §. 4.
- Ni non plus p. 150, 9.
- Nominative case p. 22.
- Nouns, their plural p. 18 & 232; their declension p. 21.
- Nuire à qn. p. 342, §. 6.
- Numbers, cardinal, p. 55; ordinal — p. 58.

Numerals p. 266.

- Obéir à gn. p. 342, §.6.
- s'occuper à and de p. 388.
- Eils, when used instead of yeux, p. 19, foot-note
- On or l'on p. 119, 1.
- Only (ne que) p. 150.
- Ordinal numbers p. 58.
- Ordonner followed by the Subj. p. 365, §. 4.
- Orthography p. 215-218 & 220.
- Oser with the Inf. p. 377, §.4;
- — without pas p. 318, §. 5.
- Ought to have, how to render it, - p. 861, §. 30.

Par, prep. p. 155; with passive verbs p. 124.

- Parfait see Perfect tense. 🗥 🦄 Parmi, prop. 9. 325. Ange weeted ١
- Part. 406- p. 404-406
- Parts past with fire p. 399; with avoir p. 400-4021

÷...

- - invariable p. 402:
- ---- of passive verbs agrees with the nominative to the verb p. 122 & 128. ÷. .
- Part. present declinable p. 392, §.1; - indeclinable p. 393, §.3; ---- used as a subst. :p. 393, §. <u>4</u>.
- — with en (Gerund) p. 395, §.7. Parts of speech p. 15.
- Pas, adv. of negation p. 149& 150; — omitted p, 318, §. 5-6; plus p. 317.
- Partitive article p. 28; its declension p. 31; is omitted p. 242, 2-4.
- Passive verbs p. 122-124.
- Payer, its orthography p. 86, 5.
- Penser with a p. 341 §. 5; with an Inf. p. 877, §. 4; - with the Subj. p. 366.
- Personal disjunctive pronouns 108 & 282; - conjunctive p. 103
- and 279; their place with respect to the verb p. 104-105.
- **Personne** p. **300**.
- de peur que p. 371; de peur de with an Inf. p. 381, 6.
- Place of adjectives p. 273.
- Placer, its orthography p. 86, 4.
- la phipart p. 119 & 300, §. 7.

Pluperfect p. 357.

Plural of nouns p. 18 & 282; of adjectives p. 67.

۰.

- Plus p. 817 & 820, §. 2.
- Plus plus p. 159.
- Present tense p. 350.
- Preterite or passé défini p. 855.
- Possessine adjectives p. 52 & 261.
- pronouns p. 1:14.
- Pour, prep. p. 163 & 155; conjunction with the Inf. p. 164 and 389, §. 10.
- que and peu que, conj. with the Subj. p. 371.

Pourvoir de p. 844.

- Pourvu que, conj. p. 871.
- Pouvoir p. 191; to express a wish (puissé-je) p. 372, §. 15; its Part. past p. 402, §. 7.
- Préférer with an Inf. p. 378, §. 5.
- Premier, Subj. after it p. 870, §. 10.
- Prendre p. 179; garde p. 318,
- §. 7; in idioms p. 410.
- Prepositions p. 153-156 and 323 -332.
- Près de and auprès de p. 154.
- Prét à p. 384.
- Profiter de p. 344.
- Prompt à p. 384.
- Pronoune p. 99-119 & 279-309.
- Pronunciation p. 3.
- Proper names p. 34 & 255.
- Proverbs p. 425.
- Punctuation p. 215.

### Q

- Quand, conj. p. 159, 160 & 356.
- Quatre-vingt, when spelled with an s p. 56, 2.
- Que, interrog. pron. p. 111, 112 and 289, §. 6; — accusative of the relative pron. p. 114, §. 3; — cannot be left out p. 115, NB. — conj. p. 159 & 160, 5; special use of que p. 384; — with the Ind. p. 324; — after attendre p. 337 & 372, §. 14; — instead of si p. 372, §. 18; — instead of si p. 572, §. 18; — instead of other conjunctions p.372, §. 12. Quel, quelle p. 50, 2 and p. 307.
- Quelque p. 62.
- Quelqu'un p. 300, §. 6.
- Quelque que, conj. p. 164 & 306. Qu'est-ce qui and — qae p. 288
- and 289.
- Qui que ce soit p. 308.
- Quoi, pron., when used p. 112, 8. and p. 294, §. 7.
- Quoi que ce soit p. 309.
- Quaique, conjunction with the Subj. p. 164 & 371.

- Bedoubler p. 347, 8.
- Reflected verds p. 128, 880 & 400, §. 5.
- se réjouir p. 128.
- Relative pron p. 114 & 292-295.
- Remercier qn. de qch. p. 344.
- Remplir de p. 344.
- Repondre p. 846, 11.
- *Réussir* à p. 386.
- *Rire* p. 96, 3.
- Rompre p. 96, 2.
  - S.''
- Sans, prep. p. 153; que, conjunction with the Subj. p. 164 and 371; — with an Inf. p. 389. Satisfaire p. 346, 12.
- Savoir without pas p. 318, §.6; — with the Ind. p. 366, Note 2; — followed by an Inf. p. 378.
- Self, how translated p. 100, 1.
- Servir p. 346, 18.
- S'en aller p. 194.
- Si, its distinction from quand p. 160, 2; — conj. p. 160 & 372.
- Soi, when used, p. 100, 3 and p. 281, §. 8 & 9.
- Soit soit or que p. 371.
- Some, how to express it p. 28.
- Sorte, de or en que p. 371, Note. Souffrir with the Subjunctive p. 365, §. 4.
- Subjunctive mood p. 363-373; after que p. 337; Conjanctions which govern the Subj. p. 164, 165 & 371; — after impersonals p. 368; — for the Imperative p. 337, §. 3; — after seul, premier etc. and after a superlative p. 270.
- Suffire with the Subj. p. 368; with the Inf. p. 380, 3.
- Superlative degree p.74 & 75; Subj. after it p. 370, §. 9.
- Sure, to be, with the Ind. p. 366, Note 2.
- Survivre à p. 342.

۰.

Tâcher de p. 381.

Tarder à and de p.388.

Tel, telle p. 301, §. 11; - que, p. 302, §. 12. Tenses; Formation of the tenses

**T.** : -

- Tenses; Formation of the tenses p. 78, §.3; with irregular verbs p. 171; use of the tenses p. 350-361; — in subordinate clauses p. 364.
- Than, rendered by que or de p. 314, §.4.
- There is or are (il y a) p. 136 and 368.
- Till, until, conj. p. 371.
- Toi, personal pron. p. 99; used for te p. 104, 5.
- Tout, e, its meaning and declension p. 63, Remark; — its use p. 804 & 305.
- Tout ce qui (que) p. 116, §.8 and p. 305, §. 10.
- que, conj. p. 305, §. 12.
- Tréma p.4.
- V.
- Valoir, irr. verb p. 191, Nr. 63. *il vaut mieux* p. 135, 2.

- Venir de or à p. 888; Idioms with venir p. 410.
- Werbs, regular, p. 77; irregular p. 170-198; - ending in -eter, -eler etc. p. 85; in -ger, -cer, -ayer, -oyer, -uyer p. 86.
- with the accusative p. 841, §. 4;
  with the dative p. 841, §. 5;
  governing the genitive p. 343;
  with different governments p. 345-347;
  in idioms p. 409
  410.
- Vowels p. 4-7.
- Want, to, rendered by *il faut* p. 138, 3.
- What, interrogative p. 112, 3 & 4 and p. 288; — in exclamations p. 50, 2; — relative pronoun p. 295, §. 12; — (sort of) p. 50, 2. Whatever p. 307-309.

Whoever p. 308.

- ¥.
- Y, a supplying promoun p. 109, 2 and p. 283; adverb of place p. 146; its place with an Imperative p. 80, foot-note.



### Printed by Julius Groos at Heidelberg.

Lately published by the same publisher:

## FIRST GERMAN BOOK

containing

introductory lessons to the study of the German language; with some Reading-lessons, a Vocabulary, and Select phrases for German Conversation

the Rev. Dr. Emil. Otto.

8. bound. Price: 2 s. or 21 Ngr.

## German Conversation-Grammar

new and practical method of learning the German language,

the Rev. Dr. Emil Otto.

8. bound in cloth. S. Edition. Price: 5 s. or Rthlr. 1. 20 Ngr.

## KEY to Dr. E. Ofto's Conversation-Grammar

with an Appendix containing select Phrases for German Conversation. 8. beand. Price: 2 s. or 21 Ngr.

## Italian Conversation-Grammar

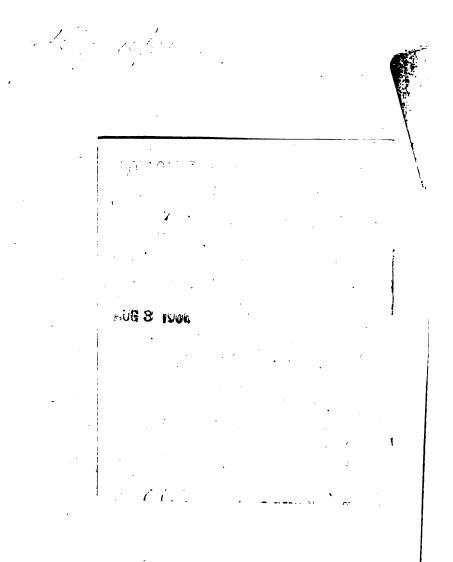
new and practical method of learning the Italian language,

# C. M. Sauer.

8. bound in cloth. Price: 5 s. or Rthlr. 1. 15 Ngr.

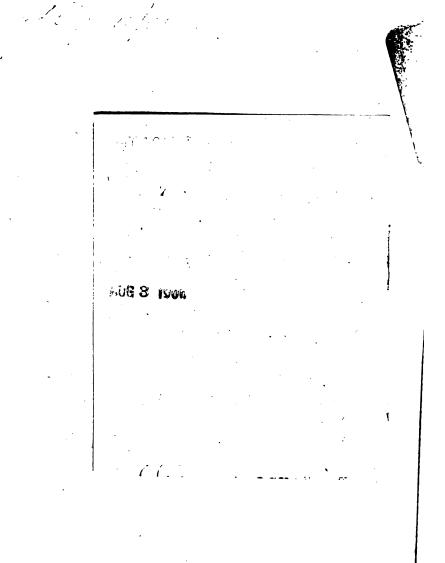
. . . . 

, • • · · · . •





, • . • • .



. 6

, •• • · · · · · •

